

# The mission of the HSRC

The HSRC is a non-partisan organisation that provides critical information to different roleplayers, whether in policy development, media analysis, advocacy or in debates, so that they can make informed decisions. It aims to be an instrument for providing independent information, free from political, religious and/or racial bias. The HSRC generates scientific knowledge through its research and analytical work in the social and human sciences.

# The vision of the HSRC

The HSRC intends to serve as a knowledge hub where public policy and discourse on current and future challenges for South Africa and the African continent are independently researched, analysed and informed, and where research-based solutions to human and social problems are developed.





Professor Jakes Gerwel

# Promoting human science research of the highest quality

## Message from the Chair of Council

The 2008/09 financial year has been an eventful one for the HSRC. The new Human Sciences Research Council act, 2008 (Act No 17 of 2008) was assented to in September and promulgated in December 2008. In terms of the new act, the governing body of the HSRC, previously known as the HSRC Council, would in future be referred to as the HSRC Board.

Act No 17 of 2008 also stipulates new requirements and a different process for the selection and appointment of members to the HSRC Board. The Minister of Science and Technology therefore requested the members of the HSRC Council, whose term of office was due to expire on 31 October 2008, to extend their

tenure to serve as the Board until such time as the new, duly constituted Board was inaugurated. The majority of serving Council members was able to oblige. It has, therefore, been my pleasure to serve as the chair of the last Council and first Board of the HSRC, the latter in the spirit of the new act.

The Board has continued Council's responsibility of exercising oversight over the functioning of the HSRC as a national public entity. The Board is grateful for the commitment, integrity and transparency of Chief Executive Officer Shisana and her senior staff that has underpinned interactions with the governing body.

The new act does more than simply restructure the organisation's governing body. The preamble articulates a broadened HSRC mandate with respect to its public purpose in line with the recommendations of the 2003 Institutional Review, and further mirrors the actual scope of work that the HSRC has carved for itself in recent years in order 'to promote human science research of the highest quality in South Africa [and] to engage with their colleagues elsewhere in Africa and the rest of the world through networks and joint programmes of research on pressing social issues relevant to human welfare and prosperity'. The act then continues to set down the objects of the HSRC, which include the obligation to:

- initiate, undertake and foster strategic basic research and applied research in human sciences relevant to developmental challenges in the Republic, elsewhere in Africa and in the rest of the world;
- inform the effective formulation and monitoring of policy and to evaluate the implementation of policy;
- stimulate public debate through the effective dissemination of fact-based results of research;
- foster and support research collaboration, networks and institutional linkages within the human sciences research community; and
- respond to the needs of vulnerable and marginalised groups in society by researching and analysing developmental problems, thereby contributing to the improvement of the quality of their lives.

All of these objectives are substantively embedded in the HSRC Strategic Plan, Business Plan and Shareholders' Agreement for the 2008/09 budget year. As reflected in its full report, the Board is satisfied that the organisation's performance has substantially met and, in some instances, exceeded the targets envisaged in these documents.

The act instructs the HSRC to 'respond to the needs of vulnerable and marginalised

groups in society by researching and analysing developmental problems, thereby contributing to the improvement of the quality of their lives'. The Board therefore noted with approval the fact that 97% of all research conducted by the HSRC in the period under review was concerned with developmental issues such as employment and economic development, education and training, service delivery, social development, and HIV and AIDS.

In fulfilment of the mandate to engage with colleagues elsewhere in Africa, 25% of all research projects with a budget of R1 million or more was conducted collaboratively with researchers from elsewhere in Africa. But, the HSRC also conducted scholarly research with output (as measured by the number of publications in scholarly journals) increasing significantly year-on-year.

The HSRC has achieved significant milestones with respect to the communication and dissemination of evidence-based knowledge and information to both the academic audience and the public-at-large. The HSRC Press, arguably the largest non-commercial academic publisher in Africa, publishes edited peer-reviewed books and monographs by researchers from both within and outside the organisation, and is a frequent co-publisher of scientific work with overseas academic publishers.

All print publications are also published electronically and are freely accessible online. In the period under review, the Press distributed over 30 000 copies of its print publications, whereas the electronic copies were browsed by nearly 500 000 readers, and downloaded by 129 888 internet users in 192 countries. Dissemination to the public-at-large is evident from the organisation's large presence – valued as equivalent to R65 million free exposure via news stories and reports – in both the print and electronic media in the form of news stories and reports.

None of these achievements would be possible without an enabling resource base. For this

## Message from Chair continued

reason, the 2008/09 Business Plan lists as one of the organisation's strategic priorities the objective to ensure the financial sustainability of the organisation, in part through increased Parliamentary grant allocations, and in part through externally-sourced funding in respect of which the HSRC has sought to 'prioritise funding sources that preferably offer large, multi-year grants' as opposed to small, short-term projects and commissions. Large multi-year grants impart a large measure of financial stability and predictability, while at the same time mitigating the pressure on senior researchers to allocate a disproportionate amount of their valuable time to fundraising. This is not to minimise the role and importance of shorter-term, needs-driven work that also has its place.

The HSRC increased its 2008/09 overall turnover by 24,4% compared to the preceding financial year, and in the process achieved the highest turnover in the organisation's history. Some of this growth derived from increases in the Parliamentary grant allocations. However, external research income – which constitutes the larger income contributor – grew by 34,4% year-on-year, with a robust 73,1% of all external income coming from international sources. Most of this funding is made up of multi-year commitments and will therefore be sustained well into the foreseeable future. Internationally sourced funding helps boost the science and technology research base for the country as a whole, and the Board warmly commends the CEO and her senior HSRC researchers for these remarkable

achievements in the face of a burgeoning global recession.

Although not without its challenges, this has been another successful year for the HSRC, and I would like to congratulate the CEO, the researchers and support staff on a job well done.

I must further thank my fellow Board members for their dedication and commitment and for their willingness to stand by the HSRC at this time of transition. Some of the members, including myself, have served for two terms. Our interest in, and commitment to, social and human sciences that can make a difference in the world we live in, motivated us to remain available over an extended period. Another Board member who served with us since October 2002, was Professor Wally Morrow, who passed away on 11 February 2009. His insightful contributions will be sorely missed.

As we depart to make way for the new Board, I want to wish my fellow and former Board members well. I would also like to thank them for their contributions, some of which are reflected on elsewhere in the formal report of the Board.

My final word of appreciation goes to the previous Minister of Science and Technology, Mr Mosibudi Mangena, to the incoming Minister, Ms Naledi Pandor, and to the Department of Science and Technology for their unstinting support during the tenure of the outgoing Board.



Dr Olive Shisana

# Contributing meaningfully to national and global knowledge creation

## Message from the CEO

During the past budget year, the HSRC achieved its best performance to date as measured by the objective indicators agreed to in the Shareholder's Compact with the Minister of Science and Technology.

The accomplishments are detailed in this report. In this foreword, however, I would like to touch on a few selected highlights.

The HSRC publication rate in internationally accredited journals has increased dramatically to 1,51 per senior researcher, exceeding the already high target of 1,3 set at the beginning of the period under review. Even more pleasing is

the publication rate among junior researchers, which, at 0,81, also exceeds expectations. This suggests that the fundraising strategy of focusing on multi-year projects has had the intended effect of reducing the distraction and burden of seeking multiple short term grants, thus allowing researchers more time to conduct consistent research and write journal articles. Raising the bar on the target for journal publications has had the result of challenging and stimulating the scientists to perform at their best level.

The past year has seen an increase in income made up largely of multi-year commitments, and this has to a large extent contributed to the



HSRC qualifying as a going concern. Our ability to raise internationally sourced funds is evidence of the confidence that donors globally have in the organisation. It has helped bring foreign exchange into the country while also contributing to growing the research and development resources for the country. This is critical to ensure that South Africa contributes meaningfully to national and global knowledge creation. In the coming years, the government contribution to the HSRC funds will also increase, and this will ensure sustainability of our humanities research.

The HSRC's ability to retain staff has improved significantly. Notwithstanding the challenges that still remain. I am pleased with the extent to which we have managed to reduce our attrition rate, keeping some of our best researchers in the organisation. We will nevertheless need to keep a watchful eye on this indicator as the present retention rate may in part be a reflection of the slowing down of the economy, resulting in some people holding on to their jobs for lack of opportunities to move elsewhere.

We have far exceeded our target for gender sensitivity training to arm our staff with the skills to eliminate prejudice in the manner in which men and women relate to one another within the organisation. We are now also beginning to train staff in the use of a gender tool in research data analysis and the writing of reports and journal articles. We are moving towards a position where HSRC publications will be vetted on whether or not the gender lens was used in the research and research write-up.

We are still struggling to appoint more black Africans in senior positions. We regularly advertise posts, but few apply, perhaps because the pool of qualified black African scientists has shrunk, in part because of improved remuneration at universities. However, we continue to prioritise 'growing our own timber' by creating increased opportunities for doctoral trainees and post-doctoral fellows, and promoting some of them to senior level positions as they become available.

Overall, the HSRC has achieved 11 out of 14 of the organisation's performance indicators, the highest achievement since these indicators were adopted. The activities of the research programmes are now well aligned with the objectives of the organisation as a whole. A staff of 450 conducted research activities, all of which were predominantly aligned with the vision and mission of the organisation. Beyond meeting the indicators for performance, much ground has been covered to further improve the functioning of the organisation and extend the role of the HSRC internationally.

In the past year, five-yearly external reviews were conducted in respect of some of the larger and older research programmes. To date, these have included the programmes concerned with Child, Youth, Family and Social Development; Democracy and Governance; Education, Science and Skills Development; and the Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health. Findings and recommendations from these various reviews were useful in identifying areas of excellence and areas needing to be strengthened. We have been

able to take stock of what we have achieved as an organisation, what tangible impact we have made, and to identify new areas of focus for our programmes.

During the period under review, the HSRC ensured that it met its public purpose mandate, not just by conducting research for public benefit, but also by interacting with various government ministries to ensure alignment of our work with the priorities of this country. These interactions, in turn, led to relevant research work at national, provincial and local level. Furthermore, much of the work done had directly relevance to improving the quality of lives of South Africans.

On the global front, the HSRC has had substantial engagement with international scholars. The HSRC hosted the International Social Science Council (ISSC) and the International Council for Philosophy and Humanistic Studies (ICPHS), which had their annual general meetings here in South Africa. The ISSC addressed key issues such as the World Social Science Report and the World Social Science Forum.

The HSRC and CODESRIA hosted a number of working sessions on topics such as poverty and evidenced-based policy. We followed this up with a symposium on knowledge and transformation, which was attended by eminent scholars and served to elevate the humanities in the social sciences in South Africa and the continent as a whole.

At national level, the HSRC has continued to engage in community outreach. On World AIDS Day the HSRC, together with its international and global partners, hosted a series of events with the theme, *Take the lead, get tested, know your status*, that reached some 30 000 people in Cape Town, Durban, Pretoria, Mthatha, Port Elizabeth and Sweetwaters (KZN). Through media interviews, the HSRC was able to reach the nation and contribute to World AIDS Day activities in the country in a meaningful way.

The work and achievements of the HSRC briefly sketched in this foreword and described in greater detail in this annual report could not have been realised without the guidance and support of the HSRC Board - particularly the crucial role of our Chair, Professor Jakes Gerwel; the Minister of Science and Technology (DST), Mr Mosibudi Mangena; the DST Director-General, Dr Phil Mjwara, and his staff; various other government departments; and our donor and client community.

Much credit must go to the research and corporate support staff and their executive leadership, who are the true architects of the success of the HSRC. To them, I am deeply grateful. We look forward to working with Minister Naledi Pandor who was recently appointed Minister of Science and Technology.

# The HSRC Board



**Professor Jakes Gerwel (Chair)**

*DLit et Phil, Vrije Universiteit te Brussel*

Chancellor, Rhodes University; Distinguished Professor, University of the Western Cape; Honorary Professor, University of Pretoria; Chair of the Nelson Mandela Foundation, the Mandela Rhodes Foundation, the Allan Gray Orbis Foundation, South African Airways, Brimstone Investment Corporation Limited, Aurecon, Life Healthcare, Media24; Vice Chair of the Peace Parks Foundation and Director of Naspers and Old Mutual.



**Dr Olive Shisana (CEO)**

*Sc.D, Johns Hopkins University*

HSRC CEO; former positions held: Executive Director of the HSRC's Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health research programme; Professor of Health Systems at the Medical University of South Africa; Executive Director, Family and Community Health at the World Health Organisation, Switzerland; Director-General of the South African Department of Health; Group Manager, South African Medical Research Council; and Acting Chief of Research and Statistics Division, District of Columbia (local) Government (USA).



**Professor Wally Morrow**

*PhD, University of London*

Prof. Morrow, who died on 11 February 2009, was a well-known academic, whose career as a teacher in South African faculties of education stretched from the early 1970s until the end of the century. During these decades he had a significant influence on the students he taught, and the colleagues with whom he worked.

He served as Professor of Philosophy of Education and Dean of Education at the University of the Western Cape; Dean of Education at the University of Port Elizabeth; and chair of the Ministerial Committee on Teacher Education. He was also a member of the Board of the South African Qualifications Authority, and an independent researcher serving on the research committees of the South African Qualifications Authority and Umalusi, and the accreditation committee of the CHE Higher Education Quality Committee. He received the EASA Honorary Medal for his invaluable contribution to education over the last 43 years.



**Mr Max Sisulu**

*MPA, Harvard University, USA; MA (Economics), Moscow*  
Member of NEC and NWC of the ANC, and the ANC Economic Transformation Committee; former member of SASOL's Group Executive Committee; Board member of NEAF, advisor to the Minister of Environmental Affairs, the Independent Panel for the review of the work of Parliament, Imperial Holdings, African Rainbow Mineral Resolve Group; and Chairman of Ukhamba Holdings, Londani Coal and African General Equity Logistics.





**Mr Sipho Pityana**

*MSc, University of London*

Executive Chairperson: Izingwe Holdings (Pty) Ltd; Non-Executive Director, AngloGold Ashanti; Independent Non-Executive Director: African Oxygen Limited; Chairman of National Students Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS); Non-Executive Chairperson: Onelogix Group Limited (ALTx); Independent Chairman: Munich Reinsurance Company of Africa Limited; Non-Executive Vice Chairperson: Aberdare Cables; Black Business Executive Circle; Black Management Forum; NEPAD Business Group Steering Committee, and Founding trustee of the Business Trust.



**Professor Edward Webster**

*PhD, University of the Witwatersrand*

Professor Emeritus in the Society, Work and Development Institute, University of the Witwatersrand (Wits); Past President of the Research Committee of Labour Movements for the International Sociological Association; Board member of the Development Bank of Southern Africa; Top-rated National Research Foundation sociologist. Senior Fulbright Scholar, US Research Foundation sociologist.



**Dr Pumla Gobodo-Madikizela**

*PhD, University of Cape Town*

Associate Professor, Psychology Department, University of Cape Town; Chair of the Board of Trustees for the Association for Education Training; Board member of International Alert (London), the Centre for Conflict Resolution, and the Institute for Justice and Reconciliation; Director of Human Dialogue and Leadership.



**Mrs Phumelele Ntombela-Nzimande**

*B. Soc.Sc (Hons), University of Natal*

Chief People Officer, SABC; formerly Deputy Director-General, Department of Communications, Postal Policy; Council member of the University of KwaZulu-Natal and Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA).



**Ms Nomboniso Gasa**

*BA, University of the Western Cape*

Chairperson, Commission on Gender Equality; Board member of the Development Bank of Southern Africa; A feminist-activist, essayist, writer and researcher who has published on a number of issues, especially democratisation in sub-Saharan Africa; National Gender Machinery and Masculinist Representations of African Cultures.



**Mr Enver Motala**

*MPhil, University of Warwick, UK*

Independent researcher and research co-ordinator for institutions such as the Education Policy Consortium, the Centre for Education Policy Development and the Nelson Mandela Foundation, Chairperson of the Nelson Mandela Institute for Education and Rural Development.

# Executive Directors



**Dr Anil Kanjee**

DEd (University of Massachusetts Amherst)

Executive Director, Centre for Education Quality Improvement (CEQI)

Tel: +27 (0) 302 2302  
E-mail: akanjee@hsrc.ac.za

**Improving social and economic development through quality education for all**

With education being a national priority, the Centre for Education Quality Improvement (CEQI) was established to provide research support to government and other key role-players (teachers, parents, learners, NGOs, donors) to inform the decision-making processes for implementing relevant and effective strategies to improve education quality at all levels of the system.

The primary objectives of CEQI are to:

- develop relevant policy options that are costed and have demonstrated impact for improving education quality, particularly for the poor and disadvantaged learner;
- undertake policy-relevant research to enable and support policy-makers and key stakeholders at all levels of the system, make informed and evidence-based decisions about effective strategies for improving quality of education;
- engage in evidence-informed policy dialogue processes among different stakeholders, to share and disseminate information and ideas about good practice to improve the quality of education in South Africa; and
- facilitate the exchange of ideas among local and international experts and decision-makers working in the field of education quality.



**Dr Miriam Altman**

(PhD, University of Manchester)

Executive Director, Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth (CPEG), previously the Employment, Growth and Development Initiative (EDGI)

Tel: +27 (0) 12 302 2402  
E-mail: maltman@hsrc.ac.za

**Innovative employment strategies**

CPEG's central objective is to identify clear scenarios and strategies to halve unemployment and poverty by 2014 on a sustainable basis. Through roundtable dialogue, scenario building and thematic research, CPEG has successfully drawn together top decision-makers to concretise innovative ideas.

Our initiative deepens policy conceptualisation in terms of employment dynamics, and validates existing policies or identifies possible policy gaps by testing the potential employment impact of current policy thrusts.

It also supports decision-making in terms of employment promotion and poverty reduction as part of government's growth strategy, and deepens dialogue on employment policy among central decision-makers and in civil society. A number of research projects support the employment scenarios initiative.

Our central themes include:

- strengthening employment orientation of South Africa's growth and development path;
- developing methodologies and indicators to determine the long term structural path;
- strengthening network industries' contribution to growth and employment, with a special emphasis on transport and energy;
- employment oriented industrial strategies, with a special emphasis on services and newer industries, and on generating employment through procurement;

- labour market dynamics, currently with a special emphasis on youth and on migration
- food security and poverty reduction;
- public employment strategies;
- public employment programmes, with a special emphasis on early childhood development services aimed at children under five; and
- the contribution of the 'social wage' to ensure decent living standards of working people.



**Dr Udesh Pillay**  
(PhD, University of Minnesota)

Executive Director, Centre for Service Delivery (CSD),  
previously known as Urban, Rural and Economic Development  
(URED)

Tel: +27(0) 302 2502  
E-mail: upillay@hsrc.ac.za

### Rolling back poverty in southern Africa

CSD undertakes scientific research towards understanding and explaining the dominant trends in service delivery provision. Scientific research towards understanding and explaining the dominant trends in service delivery provision for human development is critical, as is analysing and generating practical solutions to problems of planning and administration. In formulating strategies - through a series of 'demonstration' projects - to help mitigate the service delivery problems in South Africa, CSD works to fulfil the following key objectives:

- to conduct scientific research into the nature of and key trends in South Africa's system of service delivery;
- to undertake action research to diagnose and address service delivery challenges;
- to undertake local case studies in which various approaches to improving service delivery are assessed,

modelled and alternatives considered through a number of pilot interventions; and

- to provide practical conclusions and solutions to the continuing problems of achieving universal access, sustainable services and quality services.

Working in multidisciplinary teams and using a systems approach, CSD will test multiple service delivery interventions in a series of localised pilot studies at 'demonstration sites', making possible evidence-based determinations of what works and what does not. Recommendations from the localised case studies will relate to, for instance, how inter-governmental relations need to be structured to optimise implementation; how budgets need to operate; how capacity development can be achieved and enhanced; and how the users (also called 'clients' or 'citizens') need to be understood and mobilised to optimise service planning and delivery.

CSD's research approach is 'implementation-oriented', in which the central research team works closely with multi-stakeholder reference groups and implementation networks. The work of CSD raises the prospects of partnerships with locally based research institutions, as well as research agencies in other parts of Africa.



**Professor Linda Richter**  
(PhD, University of Natal)

Executive Director: Child, Youth, Family and Social  
Development (CYFSD)

Tel: +27(0) 31 242 5544  
E-mail: lrichter@hsrc.ac.za

### Social science that maximises human potential and advances the rights of vulnerable populations

CYFSD promotes human and social development through high quality, interdisciplinary, applied research. We create knowledge to assist in the design, implementation and

# Executive Directors continued

evaluation of policies and programmes for a better life for all South Africans and the people of Africa.

Our research addresses challenges arising from inequality, poverty, violence, HIV/AIDS and other causes of distress and deprivation. We emphasise the ways in which context, policy and politics shape and distribute life chances. This involves protection from risk, vulnerability and deprivation through a range of interventions including social security.

Specifically, our research focuses on:

- **Childhood** – we stress economic, educational, biological, psychological and social determinants that demonstrate the importance of early childhood to personal and national development, especially in South Africa and other African countries. Our focus includes poverty, nutrition, early childcare, child maltreatment prevention, vulnerability associated with HIV/AIDS and indicators of early child development.
- **Youth** – we seek to develop an evidence-based approach to understand the needs of young people in South Africa and the continent more broadly. We research the resources available to young people, their openness to the future, their capacity to cope with rapid change and to participate in civic life, and challenges they face such as access to good quality work-oriented education, employment and health services.
- **Families** – we focus on ways of combining work and home for men and women; on caregiving, including interactions between services and home care; on fathering and on relations between generations. We also research families in the policy context, studying areas such as the impact and effectiveness of social grants and housing provision, and the importance of family-oriented services.
- **Social development and wellbeing** - we investigate factors associated with health and wellbeing, particularly maltreatment and abuse, crime and violence, mental health and substance abuse. We also focus on inclusion in wider societal processes and we seek to highlight and address issues that lead to exclusion whether it is through disability, stigma or other factors.
- **Excellence** - we strive to build excellence in our programme through our networks and partnerships and as consultants to national and international organisations. While we conduct most of our research in South Africa, we have an extensive network of long-standing national, regional and international collaborators, particularly in Africa. In addition, CYFSD researchers publish widely in peer-reviewed academic and professional journals as well as scholarly books.



**Dr Kwandiwe Kondlo**

(PhD, University of Johannesburg)

Executive Director, Democracy and Governance (D&G)

Tel: +27 (0) 302 2802

E-mail: [kkondlo@hsrc.ac.za](mailto:kkondlo@hsrc.ac.za)

## **Committed to democracy, justice and human rights**

Our established, reputable and evolving research programme examines the 'big questions' confronting democracy, not just in South Africa but the whole African continent and globally.

We aim to provide research, data and information that will enhance the developmental and socioeconomic impact of democratic advancement through a focus on the following thematic research thrusts: society, culture and identity; institutions and democratic transformation; economic development and social justice.

In delivering on the HSRC's broad mandate and to meet the demands of society, we employ diverse disciplines in an attempt to explain current issues, generate rapid responses, undertake longitudinal studies, achieve academic excellence, and leverage partnership networks.

As a key national resource for independent strategic thinking and as a knowledge hub, the focus areas of the programme consist primarily of research, analysis and advocacy that aims to achieve the following:

- monitor, evaluate and inform legislation, policies, strategies, and the efficiency and efficacy of public administration, service delivery, governance structures and systems;
- assess the practices of and intersection between the state, multilateral institutions, development agencies, private bodies and civil society; and
- inform robust public debate.

The programme's research interests are driven by a normative commitment to the values of the South African Constitution, namely citizenship, democratic ethical standards in public life, equality (in terms of race, gender and class) and overcoming the apartheid legacy. This includes basic, theoretical and historical research that speaks to the nature of the state generally, and in particular to the South African state.



**Dr Vijay Reddy**

(DEd, University of Durban-Westville)

Executive Director, Education, Science and Skills Development (ESSD)

Tel: +27(0) 31 242 5426/8

E-mail: vreddy@hsrc.ac.za

**Research that skills the nation**

ESSD explores issues in and across the education, work and innovation system interface. Education and skills development promote individual, social and economic development. They are crucial to growth and the exercise of citizenship, whereas science and innovation is central to the knowledge society and to a functioning innovation system.

The programme works in the following areas:

- Education research covers primary, secondary and tertiary education with a specific focus on access, quality, relevance and equity in education. The research is conducted on all the dimensions of the education system to ensure that the capabilities of all are developed via the system right through to the world of work.
- The world of work consists of research into labour markets, skills and human resource development and in this way seeks to address the key imperatives of improved access to skills acquisition, raising employment opportunities and sustaining economic growth. The work of the unit assesses the impact of active labour market strategies and recommends alternatives to change and shape the existing legislative, institutional and policy implementation frameworks.
- Science and innovation studies cover the link between technology, innovation and economic development. The themes of work have evolved in the last two years, and include national, provincial and city–region systems of innovation; university–industry linkages, determinants of innovative activities, R&D capacity nationally and in key sectors, and technology platforms such as ICT, biotechnology, and materials.



**Professor Demetre Labadarios**

(PhD, University of Surrey)

Executive Director, Knowledge Systems (KS)

Tel: +27 (0) 21 466 7802

E-mail: dlabadarios@hsrc.ac.za

**Harness organisational information to do new things**

Knowledge Systems cuts across all other research units and conducts primary and secondary research on socioeconomic and governance issues generally, and the national system of innovation specifically, enabling evidence-based decision-making by our users. The unit works both with external users and the research programmes of the HSRC, and builds complementary expertise in Africa through various networks. Our key areas of research comprise the Centre for Science, Technology and Innovation Indicators (CeSTII), Socio-Economic Surveys (SES) and Geographic Information Systems (GIS).

The principal activities of these sections involve:

- designing, implementing and analysing quantitative and qualitative data including the annual Research and Experimental Development (R&D) Survey, the Innovation Survey and other specified empirical data gathering exercises that generate country science and technology indicators for planning and international benchmarking purposes;
- compiling spatial data sets to provide a comprehensive picture of South Africa’s first and second economies;
- large scale social surveys aimed at monitoring and understanding the dynamics of the changing socioeconomic and cultural landscape in South Africa and the region;
- project, programme and strategic evaluations for external clients and promotion of monitoring and evaluation within the organisation. Development and application of indicators (from input to impact) and innovative participatory monitoring and evaluation methods;
- contributing to the knowledge management strategies of the HSRC; and
- working with peers across the African continent to promote social scientific research and capacity building.

The development and maintenance of good practice in knowledge management contributes to organisational effective and efficiency. Through peer-to-peer and official networks, the unit works with partners across the continent to grow capabilities and share knowledge and experience across our fields of expertise.



# Executive Directors continued



**Dr Temba Masilela**  
(PhD, University of Iowa)

Executive Director, Policy Analysis and Capacity Enhancement (PACE)

Tel: +27 (0) 302 2080  
E-mail: tmasilela@hsrc.ac.za

## Creative solutions for policy implementation

In 2008/09 PACE consisted of four cross-cutting units, namely Policy Analysis, Gender and Development, Capacity Development Unit and the Centre for Africa's Social Progress, which will be consolidated into a single cross-cutting programme in the 2009/10 financial year.

The work agenda of PACE is primarily informed by the policy agenda of government as expressed in its programme of action. We endeavour to bring research evidence to bear upon policy debates, initiate broad-based and inclusive policy dialogues, engender policy activism, accelerated programme implementation, and foster the assessment and evaluation of programme impacts.

PACE aims to bring innovation and excellence into social and economic policy analysis and provide evidence-informed policy advice that improves the quality of life of all the people on the continent.

Our mission is to:

- perform a brokerage role between policy research and evidence-informed policy making;
- perform a synthesis role in providing systematic reviews of policy related research on identified topics and conducting secondary data analysis;
- perform a capacity building role in enhancing the research competencies of staff and enlarging the pool of humanities and social science researchers in the country
- convene seminars/forums and stimulate policy dialogue and contestation around key policy issues; and
- disseminate policy research information through, among other channels, HSRC Policy Briefs and a research-policy nexus portal ([www.pan.org.za](http://www.pan.org.za)).

In 2008/09 Gender and Development committed itself to providing a framework for a coherent and thematically-linked research programme that includes the development of localised African theories of gender and gender inequality; a comprehensive audit of gender research and expertise in South Africa; the pioneering of alternative research methodologies

that create spaces for women to deliberate and articulate experiences and issues; and the praxis of research as a catalyst of social change.

The mandates of Policy Analysis and Capacity Development are determined by the Department of Science and Technology in terms of ring-fenced allocations through the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF).

The consolidation of PACE in 2009/2010 is intended to create a more enabling environment for value-adding collaborative policy projects across the HSRC, and to strengthen collegiality, and lower overall administrative costs.

Our work activities will cover the following thematic areas: social protection (including National Health Insurance and impact assessment studies); gender and poverty reduction; developmental state; social innovation; culture, identity and social cohesion; and capacity enhancement.



**Professor Leickness Simbayi**  
(DPhil, University of Sussex)

Executive Director (acting), Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health (SAHA)

Tel: +27(0) 21 466 7910  
E-mail: lsimbayi@hsrc.ac.za

## Research to inform HIV/AIDS prevention, care and impact mitigation

SAHA undertakes innovative research on the social aspects of HIV/AIDS and health that goes beyond medical interventions and strives to address health problems at their source.

Our research has three primary goals: to conduct research that is policy relevant and responds to current challenges facing South Africa; to conduct assessment, monitoring and evaluation of programmes that aim to improve the lives of all South Africans; and to foster collaboration in multi-country research as well as promote the dissemination of scientific information among various stakeholders throughout sub-Saharan Africa.

The programme undertakes cutting-edge, scientifically sound, innovative research that contributes to public policy formulation and programme development.

The major areas of research focus include:

- second-generation HIV surveillance at national, community and economic sector level including looking at epidemiological trends;

- applied epidemiological and social and behavioural research including development and evaluation of theory-based behavioural interventions to inform both national and regional responses to the HIV epidemic;
- health promotion through theory-driven, efficient and culturally-competent health promotion research-based interventions;
- programme evaluations;
- qualitative research using ethnographic and focus group methods; and
- social determinants of health in general especially of non-communicable or lifestyle diseases and among the elderly.

The programme is actively participating in regional initiatives in southern Africa by working closely together with the SADC HIV/AIDS unit and UNAIDS. Other important partnerships are with local and international funders such as national and provincial departments, the Nelson Mandela Foundation, the South African Red Cross Society, and the US President's Emergency Plan for AIDS Relief, and with local and international universities and/or research organisations such as the South African Medical Research Council and the University of Connecticut, USA.

consolidating and integrating salary and human resource systems;

- adopting and revising policies in accordance with good governance principles, spearheaded by the chief financial officer with the approval of the HSRC Board;
- improvements in the IT infrastructure by trebling, and in some cases quadrupling, bandwidth between the offices, deploying new file servers in the regional offices, improving network performance in the Pretoria office, and installing new software to maintain, manage and monitor network performance on a pro-active basis;
- infrastructure expansion and improvement in the Port Elizabeth and Umtata offices, and upgrading the office in Sweetwater; and
- rolling out data curation throughout the organisation to improve the preservation and management of data collected during research endeavours.

SS provides a springboard for the initiation of the re-engineering and definition of new business processes to facilitate the design of an integrated business architecture model that will promote organisational performance and enhance delivery.



### **Ms Audrey Ohlson**

(BTech, internal auditing, University of South Africa)

Executive Director (acting), Support Services (SS)

Tel: +27 (0) 12 302 2612

E-mail: [ajohlson@hsrc.ac.za](mailto:ajohlson@hsrc.ac.za)

### **Supporting the research activities of the HSRC**

Support Services contributes to the mandate of the HSRC by providing the required physical and institutional infrastructure and accompanying services in a timely, effective, cost-efficient and user-friendly manner.

It comprises the following directorates: Finance, Supply Chain Management, Human Resources, Information Technology, Information Services, Legal Services, Risk and Compliance and Operations.

The year under review heralds the further consolidation of these components and has achieved continuous improvement in all its activities through the implementation of various projects aimed at integrating processes and systems.

During the 2008/09 financial year, SS achieved the following:

- improving human resource-related electronic systems by

# Specialist researchers



**Dr Vincent Agu**  
*DrPH, University of Texas*

SAHA: Development assistance, partnerships and alliances, programme design, monitoring and evaluation, advocacy, regional integration.



**Dr Bongani D. Bantwini**  
*PhD, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, USA*

ESSD: In-service professional development of science education teachers, student learning of science, trends, science curriculum reforms (national and international), and science curriculum development and theory.



**Mr William Blankley**  
*MSc, MBA, University of Cape Town*

KS: Science and technology (S&T) policy analysis, S&T indicators, research and development (R&D) and innovation surveys, strategic planning, feasibility studies, public understanding of science.



**Mr Henri Carrara**  
*MPH, University of Umeå, Sweden*

SAHA: Infectious disease epidemiology and HIV-prevention research, analysis of survey data, HIV surveillance among MSM, epidemiological methods and biostatistics.



**Mr Fabian Arends**  
*MBA, University of KwaZulu-Natal*

ESSD: Education management information systems, general and further education and training policy analysis, educator supply and demand analysis, design and analysis of education indicators, statistical analysis and modelling.



**Prof. Arvin Bhana**  
*PhD, University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, USA*

CYFSD: Youth risk and resilience, adolescent risk-taking behaviour (including HIV/AIDS), substance abuse and other youth-related problem areas, fatherhood and protection/ care of children, mental health.



**Dr Mignon Breier**  
*PhD, University of Cape Town*

ESSD: Higher education, professional education, medical, nursing and teacher education, recognition of prior learning, curriculum in higher education.



**Mr Jonathan Carter**  
*MScAgric, University of Stellenbosch*

PACE: Public finance, governance, social complexity, policy construction.



**Dr Jeremiah Chikovore**  
*PhD, University of Umeå, Sweden*

CYFSD: Gender and masculinity, family wellbeing and health, adolescent sexual and reproductive health, health-seeking behaviour, tuberculosis.



**Dr Linda Chisholm**  
*PhD, University of the Witwatersrand*

ESSD: Comparative education, teacher education and development, policy, curriculum, gender, migration.



**Mr Michael Cosser**  
*MA, University of the Witwatersrand*

ESSD: Higher education, teacher education, teacher supply and demand, quality assurance, human resources development profiles and strategies, student tracer studies, SAQA and NQF, literary stylistics, discourse analysis.



**Dr Pelisa Dana**  
*PhD, University of KwaZulu-Natal*

SAHA: HIV/AIDS intervention research.



**Prof. Ivor Chipkin**  
*PhD, Ecole Normale Supérieure*

D&G: Questions of the state, nationalism, development and democracy.



**Ms Allanise Cloete**  
*MA, University of the Western Cape*

SAHA: HIV/AIDS intervention research, intervention research for people living with HIV/AIDS, HIV among MSM, qualitative research methodologies.



**Ms Catherine Cross**  
*MA, University of Michigan*

CPEG: Migration, environment and settlement, urban and rural development, housing, poverty, homelessness, informal sector, micro finance, rural home farming.



**Mr Yul Derek Davids**  
*MA, University of the Western Cape*

KS: Poverty assessment, data management, statistical analysis and modelling.



# Specialist researchers continued



**Mr Adlai Davids**  
*MSc, ITC (The Netherlands)*

SAHA: GIS applications for health system research and injury surveillance.



**Dr George Frempong**  
*PhD, University of British Columbia. Vancouver, Canada*

CEQI: Education, curriculum studies, large-scale assessment and evaluation, multilevel data analysis.



**Mr Tim Hart**  
*MPhil, Stellenbosch University*

CPEG: Agricultural and rural development, food security, indigenous knowledge, participatory research.



**Dr Gregory Houston**  
*DPhil, University of Natal*

D&G: Political history, democracy and governance.



**Dr Nolutho Diko**  
*PhD, Indiana University, Bloomington, USA*

ESSD: International education, education policy, gender, teacher education, monitoring and evaluation, schools and culture.



**Dr Adrian Hadland**  
*PhD, University of Cape Town*

D&G: Media policy, journalism, ethics, skills development, governance, political institutions, social cohesion and xenophobia.



**Dr David Hemson**  
*PhD, University of Warwick*

CSD: Public service delivery, water and sanitation, rural development, implementation research, policy impact assessment.



**Dr Peter Jacobs**  
*PhD, Fordham University (New York)*

CPEG: Poverty and rural development.



**Dr Omano Edigheji**  
*PhD, Norwegian University of Science and Technology, Norway*

PACE: Comparative political economy, developmental state, development, governance and democracy in Africa, social policy and poverty reduction.



**Dr Gerard Hagg**  
*DLit et Phil, University of South Africa*

D&G: Infrastructure development in the arts sector, community participation in development, community arts centres and arts service delivery, identity and cultural diversity in conflict in Africa.



**Dr Charles Hongoro**  
*PhD, University of London*

PACE: Policy-oriented research, health economics and systems, policy analysis, HIV and AIDS.



**Mr Sean Jooste**  
*MA, University of the Western Cape*

SAHA: Research design and methodology, design of research instruments.





**Dr Mbithi wa Kivilu**  
PhD, University of Alberta,  
Edmonton, Canada

KS: Educational and psychological assessment, data management, statistical analysis and modelling.



**Dr Rendani Ladzani**  
PhD, University of Limpopo

SAHA: Dietary practices throughout the life cycle, with special emphasis on the prevention of non-communicable diseases and the prevention of mother-to-child transmission of HIV.



**Dr Monde Makiwane**  
DPhil, University of the Witwatersrand

CYFSD: Social science research using quantitative and demographic techniques.



**Dr Innocent Matshe**  
PhD, University of Manchester

CPEG: Labour migration, poverty reduction and unemployment, with a special emphasis on agricultural policy, health, household dynamics and micro-macroeconomic linkages.



**Prof. Mukole Kongolo**  
PhD, Potchefstroom University

PACE: Developing scientists and scientific leadership in the social sciences.



**Prof. Suzanne Leclerc-Madlala**  
PhD, University of Natal

SAHA: Anthropological approaches to health and illness, HIV prevention, culture, gender and sexuality.



**Dr Mokhantso Makoae**  
PhD, University of Cape Town

CYFSD: Social science research, HIV and AIDS care, chronic illness care, vulnerability assessment, child-maltreatment prevention, child protection.



**Ms Ntombizodwa Mbelle**  
MA ELT, Thames Valley University, MPH, Medical University of South Africa

SAHA: Project and finance management, project planning, tracking and reporting, evaluations.



**Dr Glenda Kruss**  
DPhil, University of Ulster

ESSD: Higher education policy, higher education and innovation, university-industry interaction, innovation and development in sub-Saharan Africa.



**Prof. Jo Lorentzen**  
PhD, European University Institute

ESSD: Science, technology, and innovation.



**Ms Vuyiswa Mathambo**  
MPH, University of Umeå, Sweden

CYFSD: Family and community responses to the AIDS epidemic.



**Prof. Thobeka Mda**  
PhD, Ohio State University

PACE: Research capacity development; teacher development; equity issues: education for diverse learners/ social cohesion, language equity in education; curriculum studies.

# Specialist researchers continued



**Dr Carol Metcalf**  
*MBChB, University of Cape Town MPH, University of Washington, Seattle, USA*

SAHA: HIV and STI prevention, HIV and STI epidemiology, infectious disease epidemiology, HIV surveillance, HIV among MSM, HIV behavioural and biomedical intervention trials, HIV testing and counselling, epidemiological methods, public health, international health.



**Dr Peliwe Mnguni**  
*PhD, Swinburne University of Technology, Melbourne, Australia*

D&G: Action research, eco-social sustainability (including using agriculture as a vehicle for rural development and community renewal), leadership and group dynamics, intra- and inter-organisational collaboration.



**Ms Percy Moleke**  
*MA (Economics) Georgia State University*

ESSD: Labour market analysis, education and work, labour market training/skills development.



**Ms Shirin Motala**  
*MA, University of KwaZulu-Natal*

CPEG: Children, early childhood development, advocacy, poverty, social sector employment.



**Dr Darlene Miller**  
*PhD, University of Johns Hopkins*

D&G: South African companies and their African expansion, labour in southern Africa, social theory, the political economy of the retail sector in Africa and the sociology of work.



**Ms Matseliso Mokhele**  
*MEd, University of Pretoria*

PACE: Capacity building and teacher professional development.



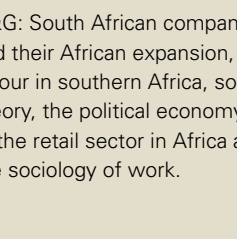
**Prof. Relebohile Moletsane**  
*PhD Indiana University, Bloomington*

PACE: Gender, sexuality, gender-based violence, HIV and AIDS, education, youth, girlhood.



**Dr James Muzondidya**  
*PhD, University of Cape Town*

D&G: Migration, citizenship and identities.



**Dr Zitha Mokomane**  
*PhD, The Australian National University*

CYFSD: Qualitative research, family formation and dissolution patterns, adolescent sexuality, children, youth and HIV/AIDS.



**Dr Neo Molotja**  
*PhD, University of Cape Town*

KS: Science and technology (S&T) policy analysis, S&T indicators, R&D and innovation surveys.



**Dr Mcebisi Ndletyana**  
*PhD, University of the Witwatersrand*

D&G: The history of African intellectuals, memorialising South African history, the formation of national identity.



**Dr Tshilidzi Netshitangani**  
*DEd, University of South Africa*

ESSD: Educational management and gender, teacher education, qualitative research methods.



**Dr Saadhna Panday**  
*PhD, Maastricht University (The Netherlands)*

CYFSD: Tobacco use, adolescent risk behaviour, youth development, health promotion.



**Mr Suren Pillay**  
*MA, Columbia University*

D&G: Violence in contemporary South Africa, the role of South Africa in relation to the Middle East, citizenship and democratic theory in Africa.



**Dr Cas Prinsloo**  
*D Litt et Phil, University of South Africa*

ESSD: Factors influencing school functioning and learner performance, literacy and language acquisition, education evaluation, assessment theory, research methodology, psychometrics.



**Dr Peter Njuho**  
*PhD, Kansas State University, USA*

SAHA: Statistical modelling, design and analysis of large survey studies, research methods, meta-analysis, measurement errors, mixed models.



**Prof. Karl Peltzer**  
*PhD, University of Hannover  
Dr Habil, University of Klagenfurt*

SAHA: Social aspects of public health, health behaviour, behavioural health, psychology applied to health, culture and health.



**Dr Victoria Pillay-Van Wyk**  
*MPH, PhD, University of Cape Town*

SAHA: Biostatistics, infection disease epidemiology, public health, quantitative research methods, evidence based medicine.



**Prof. Vasu Reddy**  
*PhD, University of KwaZulu-Natal*

PACE: Discursive histories of sexualities, genders, identities, social cohesion, social, cultural, behavioural and programmatic aspects of HIV/AIDS, service provision in development, critical policy analysis, pedagogies, higher education, knowledge production.



**Dr Thabi Ntombela**  
*PhD, University of KwaZulu-Natal*

PACE: Teacher education, issues of social and curriculum exclusion in education, school development, learner support, psychology of education.



**Prof. Nancy Phaswana-Mafuya**  
*PhD, University of the North*

SAHA: Social aspects of public health, HIV/AIDS, injury prevention, substance use and misuse, social work applied to health.



**Dr Kathleen Pithouse-Morgan**  
*PhD, University of KwaZulu-Natal*

PACE: Education, gender, HIV and AIDS, qualitative research methods.



# Specialist researchers continued



**Prof. Thomas Rehle**  
MD, University of Munich  
PhD, University of Antwerp

SAHA: Infectious disease epidemiology, tropical medicine, HIV/AIDS-intervention research, survey design and analysis, programme evaluation and impact assessment (including modelling).



**Ms Marguerite Schneider**  
MA, Reading University, UK

CYFSD: Disability and health, development and poverty in relation to disability.



**Dr Pearl Sithole**  
PhD University of Cambridge, UK

D&G: Gender and governance, local government and development, traditional leadership, land and local economic development in rural areas, indigenous knowledge systems.



**Dr Sharlene Swartz**  
PhD, University of Cambridge

CYFSD: The sociology of youth, especially in the context of poverty, youth moral, spiritual and social development, peer education.



**Mr Benjamin Roberts**  
MSc, University of Natal

CYFSD: Quantitative analysis of poverty and inequality, subjective well-being, changing social and political attitudes, food security and nutrition, poverty reduction strategy, social protection.



**Prof. John Seager**  
PhD, University of Wales

SAHA: Social, environmental and economic determinants of health, well-being in poor communities.



**Ms Judith Streak**  
MComm, University of the Witwatersrand

CYFSD: Child poverty and child socio-economic rights indicators, income and social welfare service interventions to support children at risk, early childhood development, and government budgeting for child rights in South Africa.



**Dr Cily Tabane**  
PhD, University of Pretoria

SAHA: HIV and AIDS and cultural practices, clinical social work applied to health, HIV voluntary counselling and testing.



**Mr Julien Rumbelow**  
BSocSci, MBA, University of Cape Town

KS: National R&D Survey – business sector, R&D and innovation studies.



**Prof. Geoffrey Setswe**  
DrPH, University of Limpopo

SAHA: Systematic reviews, behavioural interventions for reducing HIV risk, monitoring and evaluation of HIV/AIDS, public health interventions.



**Ms Jarè Struwig**  
MA, University of Pretoria

KS: Tourism and the environment, data management, statistical analysis and modelling.



**Dr Virginia Tilley**  
PhD, University of Wisconsin-Madison

D&G: Comparative ethnic and racial politics and conflict, racial politics of tourism, development strategies, Middle East conflict, Latin American indigenous peoples.



**Dr Heidi van Rooyen**  
*PhD, University of KwaZulu  
 Natal: Pietermaritzburg*

CYFSD: HIV/AIDS prevention, counselling and testing, intervention studies, ethics of working in resource-poor communities.



**Ms Mariette Visser**  
*BA Hons, University of Pretoria*

ESSD: World of work, surveys, database development, data analysis and indicator development, higher education, learnerships and skills development.



**Ms Gina Weir-Smith**  
*MA, University of Stellenbosch*

KS: Socio-economic applications in GIS, spatial aspects of unemployment, spatial and accessibility modelling.



**Mr Johan van Zyl**  
*BA Hons, University of Pretoria*

SAHA: Survey methodology, population projections and applied demographic analysis.



**Dr Njeri Wabiri**  
*PhD, University of Cape Town*

SAHA: Statistics, geostatistics and fuzzy spatial GIS modelling, strategic research partnerships and alliances.



**Dr Khangelani Zuma**  
*PhD (Statistics), University of  
 Waikato, New Zealand*

SAHA: Statistics, survival analysis, survey methodology, Bayesian simulation methods and modelling infectious diseases, HIV/AIDS.



**Ms Jocelyn Vass**  
*MA, University of Manchester*

ESSD: HIV/AIDS impact on economic sectors and the workplace, labour market vulnerabilities and employment equity.



**Dr Priscilla Wamucii**  
*PhD, Ohio University*

D&G: Civic participation, communication and development, human security.



**Ms Nompumelelo Zungu-Dirwayi**  
*MA (Psych), University of Cape  
 Town*

OCEO: Research psychology, social aspects of HIV/AIDS, HIV/AIDS and traditional healing, social and behavioural aspects of AIDS vaccines.



# Making a difference through research

## A synopsis of the HSRC's activities in 2008/09

During 2008/09 the HSRC undertook 188 different projects and was involved in a number of other activities, all with one common purpose: to do research that intends to make a difference to the lives of the people of South Africa, the South African Development Community (SADC), and other countries on our mother continent.

Ongoing concerns of the organisation involve themes that are of great relevance to government policy development, development agencies, poverty alleviation and the social wellbeing of our nation and countries in the rest of Africa.

In this section you will find a selection of some of the most significant undertakings of the HSRC in the 2008/09 financial year, grouped together under six themes:

Democracy, government and society

Education and science

HIV, AIDS and health systems

Poverty and development

World of work

Youth and children

**The full range of HSRC projects and outcomes is available on [www.hsrc.ac.za](http://www.hsrc.ac.za)**

# Governance and Society



Empowering society through our  
commitment to democracy, justice and  
human rights

# Crime and violence

Crime and violence are constant challenges for South Africa and therefore important areas of research for the HSRC. Our studies on crime and violence have deepened the common understanding of the incidence of violence in certain spheres of South African life.

Our initiatives have resulted in:

- Developing a better understanding of violent crime in societies in transition;
- Identifying factors that lead to xenophobic violence; and
- Publishing much needed information on gender-based violence and homophobia.

## Societies in transition: an international comparative study on violent crime

Our study aimed to find new and fresh ways to understand and conceptualise the problem of violence and to develop innovative directions that could guide our understanding and response to crime and violence.

It analysed the nature and causes of crime in countries that have undergone political transitions, as well as the measures that have been implemented to address the particular challenges of violent crime in a rapidly changing social environment.

A successful workshop, involving the United Cities and Local Governments for Africa (UCLGA), was attended by delegates from Latin America, India and Africa. The workshop was followed by a visit by Professor Antanas Mockus, the former mayor of Bogota, Colombia, in March 2009. While mayor, Mockus presided over significant homicide reductions. He shared his experiences and leadership lessons in addressing problematic

cause and effect relationships of violent crime in a developing and transitional urban context.

A national and provincial platform was established in South Africa for dialogue and debate with Mockus. The platform generated high-level government representation, including national and provincial ministers of Safety and Security, the mayor of Johannesburg, Business Against Crime, and the Cape Town mayoral committee member for safety and security.

The HSRC team that was involved in organising above events will be visiting Brazil and Colombia to study the initiatives that the two countries have implemented to combat violent crime. The team also aims to further consolidate a collaborative research plan for 2009 - 2011.

*Democracy and Governance programme*

## Study of violence and xenophobia in South Africa

The 2008 xenophobic violence and social unrest that left 50 people dead and thousands of others displaced, forms the backdrop to this study.

Our study aimed to inform policymakers, identify areas where more research is needed, and to think through the prevention of further outbreaks in the future.

Given the urgency of the problem, the study entailed a rapid solicitation of the views of South Africans. It was completed within a two-week period in some of South Africa's poorest



communities where xenophobic attacks against foreign nationals were most acute.

The rapid response and interventionist nature of the report that the HSRC compiled, has contributed meaningfully to making the xenophobia issue a priority on the national agenda. This includes the identification of related and interlinked research foci for deepening the national understanding of xenophobia through the formulation of research questions on:

- the links between xenophobic attitudes, gender and male violence; and
- the role of religion in xenophobia South Africa.

The research outcomes of our work have been positively reported on by the media and have enjoyed the interest of civil society, government and the international community.

*Democracy and Governance programme*

## Human trafficking

As a destination, transit, and country of origin for human trafficking, South Africa is exposed to the various negative consequences of this global phenomenon, such as sexual exploitation, forced labour, illegal adoptions and the extraction of body parts and organs.

Primary source countries in Africa include Angola, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Zimbabwe, Mozambique, Malawi, Lesotho and Swaziland. Trafficking victims who are brought into South Africa are primarily found in Johannesburg, Durban, Cape Town, mining communities and other isolated areas such as commercial farms. The South African phenomenon is also characterised by substantial in-country trafficking of rural women and children.

At the end of 2004, South Africa adopted the Palermo Protocol, an international protocol to prevent, suppress and punish trafficking in persons, especially women and children. A national task team consisting of government departments, international organisations and NGOs, has been established. The team is working on a national action plan to establish policy and allocate departmental responsibility to

ensure that South Africa meets its legal and moral commitments.

As part of the process, the European Union is funding a large-scale programme to assist the South African government. The research component of the programme - aimed at providing research services to deepen knowledge and understanding of human trafficking and to provide assistance to victims of crime - was awarded to the HSRC in December 2008.

Through its active involvement with this pioneering study, the HSRC is providing valuable research services that should ultimately benefit a range of stakeholders in addressing the human trafficking phenomenon in South Africa.

*Democracy and Governance programme*



## Gender-based violence and homophobia

A report based on a roundtable of stakeholders and victims of violence on the subject of gender-based violence, black lesbians, hate speech and homophobia, is being prepared to appear as a book.

Violence against black lesbians is often overlooked in the broader debates about rape of women and children. In partnership with OUT LGBT, the Durban Lesbian & Gay Community & Health Centre, and the Gay and Lesbian Archives of SA, the study shows how crime and violence have deep-seated gender dimensions in a patriarchal and hyper-masculine environment.

The book will be published towards the end of 2009.

*Policy Analysis and Capacity Enhancement unit*



# Democracy and governance

The HSRC investigates contributions to and constraints on democratisation processes and evaluates legislation, policies, strategies and the efficiency of public administration. Our research in this area seeks to inform public debates, policy development and implementation, and to assess the practice of the state and private bodies in strengthening democracy and accountability.

Our initiatives have resulted in:

- Establishing a knowledge base for research and capacity building of traditional governance systems in KwaZulu-Natal;
- Assisting the Free State provincial government in mapping a way forward in terms of meeting its social and economic targets;
- Measuring the efficiency and effectiveness of the IEC voter registration process;
- Informing cabinet on the effectiveness and efficiency of the presidential *Izimbizo* programme;
- Investigating progress towards a democratic, developmental state;
- Coordinating and hosting an international symposium on *Knowledge and transformation: social and human sciences in Africa*;
- Disseminating wide-ranging sets of social attitudes via the annual South African Social Attitudes Survey (SASAS).

## Review of the presidential *Izimbizo* programme

The *Izimbizo* programme is one of the mechanisms introduced by the South African government to facilitate regular interaction and dialogue between the three spheres of government and members of the public.

As community participation forums, *Izimbizos* are intended to provide members of the public with opportunities to receive direct communication

about government programmes; and to hold government leaders accountable for service delivery. *Izimbizos* simultaneously afford government leaders the opportunity to receive direct feedback on government performance, both generally and on specific programmes. Programmes that aim at improving people's lives are of particular interest in the *Izimbizo* context.

The HSRC review of the *izimbizo* programme assessed the extent to which the programme has so far been effective in meeting its objectives.

The research outcomes provide valuable information that can be used in future research on other forms of public participation in decision-making and governance, at central, provincial and local government level. The review report was submitted to the Presidency in December 2008.

*Democracy and Governance programme*

## Constructing a democratic developmental state in South Africa

Building on an ongoing policy dialogue on the concept of a democratic developmental state for South Africa (conceived in 2007), the HSRC





hosted an international conference in partnership with the Development Bank of Southern Africa in June 2008.

Titled *The potentials for and challenges of constructing a democratic developmental state in South Africa*, the conference was attended by South African government representatives and some of the world's leading scholars in the field, including Professor Peter Evans from the University of California, Berkeley, USA; Dr Thandika Mkandawire from the United Nations Research Institute for Social Development, Geneva; Professor Ha-Joon Chang from the University of Cambridge, UK; Professor Izumi Ohno from the National Graduate Institute for Policy Studies, Tokyo, Japan; and Professor Jonathon Moses from the University of Science and Technology, Norway.

The conference arose out of recognition that although the concept of the developmental state has received considerable attention among South African academics, the ruling ANC party and the media, there was a lack of clarity and a common understanding of its meaning, policy orientation and institutional characteristics.

Important issues emerging from the conference included the following:

- The goal of a developmental state in South Africa should be the enhancement of human capabilities and improving the wellbeing of all South Africans, which requires paying greater attention to social policy.
- The state has to be both developmental and democratic - unlike the Asian authoritarian developmental state - and should therefore be founded on democratic principles.
- The social policy orientation is as important as its economic policy; what matters is ensuring that social and economic policy work in a complementary manner, with the ultimate goal of enhancing the wellbeing and livelihoods of all South Africans.

The conference led to intensive dialogue, generating a much firmer conceptual platform from which the nationally important project of understanding the developmental state in

South Africa has begun to emerge. It also drew attention to the capacity problem of the South African state; highlighted some institutional reforms that need to be undertaken to enhance the capacity of the state; and made proposals on how to address the implementation problem facing the state.

The HSRC Press will be publishing a book based on the conference recommendations, titled *Constructing a democratic developmental state in South Africa: potentials and challenges*, later this year.

*Policy Analysis and Capacity Enhancement unit*

## Free State 15-year Review

The attainment of democracy in 1994 presented government with twin challenges: significant institutional transformation and introducing new policies; dealing with the legacy of apartheid while at the same time facing new challenges of integrating the country in a rapidly changing global environment.

Similar to the review of the first decade of democracy and freedom at a national level, the Free State 15-year Review focused on the capacity of the provincial administration and its limitations.

It measured the performance of the Free State on the basis of its efficiency and effectiveness in realising certain policy objectives. The review investigated whether certain objectives were beyond the scope of direct state intervention.

The review of the Free State's performance in meeting certain social and economic targets paid specific attention to the system of governance as it operates in the province.

The review included results from a survey of 500 households, conducted by the HSRC Centre for Socio-Economic Surveys. The final report was presented during the Free State provincial cabinet *lekgotla* in January 2009.

*Democracy and Governance programme*



## History of traditional leadership

The KwaZulu-Natal (KZN) Department of Local Government and Traditional Affairs (DLGTA) has engaged the services of the HSRC until January 2011 to establish a knowledge base on the history of various traditional governance systems, as well as to record cultural practices associated with each *ubukhosi* in that province. The department aims at preserving cultural and customary practices that strengthen the institution of traditional leadership.

The research is already providing various stakeholders in the province with information that helps to support effective traditional leadership in the province, including the DLGTA, the Zulu Royal House, various government departments, traditional leaders of the province, and researchers.

*Democracy and Governance programme*

Dr Mbithi wa Kivilu, head of Socio-Economic Surveys (SES) at the HSRC (left) and Mr Yul Derek Davids, present their findings from a national survey on voter perceptions at a media conference in Midrand. The survey was commissioned by the Independent Electoral Commission before the 2009 general elections.



## Voter participation in 2009 elections

The Independent Electoral Commission (IEC) commissioned the HSRC to conduct a national survey on voter perceptions of, and behaviour towards, the 2009 national and provincial elections ahead of the said elections.

The study comprised a survey among voters, focus group discussions, and a desktop review. The study covered 18 focus groups drawn from Gauteng, Western Cape, Free State, KwaZulu Natal, Limpopo and North West Province. Information was gathered from the following special groups: youth, women, men, persons with disability, local government officials, and community leaders.

The report, which was submitted to the IEC in March 2008, found that over 73% of those interviewed were registered and that the majority found the registration process easy and efficient. Over 97% of those interviewed had the green bar-coded identification document, but 8% of young people aged between 18 and 24 did not have an ID document. Of those, 97% indicated that they intended applying for ID documents.

Asked whether they were registered, 73% of participants said yes, with the Northern Cape (82%) and the Eastern Cape (81%) reporting the highest proportion of registered voters.

Of those interviewed, the overwhelming majority (97%) found it easy to register and were provided with proof of registration. About 20% said that registration took approximately five to 10 minutes, while 16% spent more than 30 minutes on the registration process. Overall, voters were pleased with the performance of the IEC.

*Knowledge Systems unit*

## The South Africa and Middle East project

Between May 2007 and May 2008, the HSRC conducted a project that assessed political developments in the Middle East and that provided an independent research and analysis arm to the South African government during its

tenure as non-permanent member of the UN Security Council.

The multiple conflicts and related instability in the Middle East were deemed to have a negative impact on South Africa and the rest of Africa as evidenced by rising oil prices, deteriorating security, an insecure investment climate, and the 'war on terror' as it spilled into Somalia and surrounding territories.

The HSRC research project provided South Africa and the UN with valuable support in seeking constructive approaches to the above-mentioned challenges in the interest of the continent and the entire international community.

Research themes included the ideological, economic, social and political obstacles to peace; salvaging the two-state solution in Israel-Palestine; lessons from South Africa's transition to democracy; assessments of policy options for diplomatic relations with the Palestine authority; and Israel's declaration of the Gaza strip as 'hostile territory'.

In May 2009, an international conference of jurists and scholars assembled in London to discuss the research findings of the project and their political implications. This was followed by the *Re-visioning Israel/Palestine* conference held in Cape Town.

*Democracy and Governance programme*

## International symposium on knowledge and transformation

The HSRC, together with the International Social Science Council (ISSC), the International Council of Philosophy and Humanistic Studies (ICPHS) and the National Research Council hosted a landmark symposium on 27 and 28 November 2008, titled *Knowledge and transformation: social and human sciences in Africa*.

The symposium was the scientific highlight of the joint general assemblies of the ISSC and ICPHS and prepared the way for the production of the 2009 World Social Science Report, commissioned by Unesco and to be produced by

the ISSC, and the 2009 Unesco World Report on research in philosophy.

The scientific agenda of the symposium focused on the production of knowledge by Africans and the production of knowledge on Africa; and the contributions of human and social science to innovation and development in Africa.

The symposium was attended by prominent African scholars, such as Prof Bernard Magubane, director of South African Democracy Education Trust; Professor Adebayo Olukoshi, the executive secretary of CODESRIA; Pierre Sane, assistant director-general, Unesco, Paris; Dr Adama Samassekou, executive secretary of the African Academy of Languages; and Professor Paul Tiyambe Zeleza, head of the Department of African American Studies, University of Illinois, Chicago.

Sessions were held on topics that included the African Diaspora; gender, social policy and democratic development in Africa; reflexivity, learning, and quality education in Africa; health, society and the African public space; and food security, migration and climate change in Africa.

The symposium was of particular significance in the light of the statement in the South Africa government 15-year Review, that 'The government and the totality of the country's leadership need to improve South Africans' understanding of the conditions of people on the continent and our humanist role and obligations. More broadly, there is need to attend to the trend

Mr Adama Samassekou, executive secretary, African Academy of Languages (ACALAN) in Bamako, Mali (left) and Dr Olive Shisana, CEO of the HSRC, listen to a presentation at the international symposium in November 2008 in Stellenbosch on *Knowledge and transformation: social and human sciences in Africa*.





in some African countries for some prominent individuals increasingly and openly to question South Africa's credentials as a champion of the African cause'.

The papers presented at the symposium will be published by the HSRC Press in a book entitled *Knowledge and Transformation: Social and Human Sciences in Africa*.

*Policy Analysis and Capacity Enhancement unit*



## South African Social Attitudes Survey (SASAS)

SASAS is a nationally representative, cross-sectional survey that has been conducted annually by the HSRC since 2003. The survey charts and explains the interaction between the country's changing institutions, its political and economic structures, and the attitudes, beliefs and behaviour patterns of its diverse populations.

Designed as a time series, SASAS is providing a unique, long-term account of the speed and direction of change in underlying public values and the social fabric of modern South Africa. SASAS represents a notable tool for monitoring

evolving social, economic and political values among South Africans. It holds promise as a predictive mechanism that can inform decision- and policy-making processes.

The SASAS analysis disseminated wide-ranging sets of findings during the 2008-2009 financial year, covering themes such as fear of crime, xenophobia, attitudes to the 2010 FIFA World Cup, homosexuality, local government service delivery performance, youth apathy and the role of religion in politics. Some of the salient findings from these analyses include the following:

**Fear of crime** - The study confirmed that deep-seated fears about personal and community safety continue to be shared by a sizable contingent of South Africans across the socioeconomic and demographic spectrum. This fear was found to exert an influence on confidence in the police force, the demand for public safety, social cohesion, personal wellbeing and, to a limited extent, satisfaction with the democratic system. Identifying, testing out and evaluating strategies for reducing fear of crime should be recognised as a priority alongside that of reducing crime itself.

**Xenophobia** - In the context of the wave of xenophobic violence that occurred in Alexandra and other poor urban communities across the country in May 2008, analysis of SASAS data on attitudes to foreign migrants was undertaken to inform the HSRC's rapid response study. In late 2007, approximately a third (32%) of South Africans expressed the view that they would not welcome any immigrants in South Africa. Another third indicated that they would be receptive to the presence of some immigrants, with only 34% unconditionally accepting foreign migrants to the country. Between 2003 and 2007, xenophobic sentiment tended to fluctuate within a relatively narrow range. Of especial note was the rapid escalation of xenophobic sentiment among those residing in the country's urban informal settlements between 2003 and 2007, which seemed to presage the ensuing conflict against foreign nationals in these areas.

**Homophobia** - Despite guaranteed constitutional freedoms, the survey demonstrated that South African society is still largely prejudiced in favour

of same-sex relations. The negative attitudes reported suggest that despite policy shifts and legal reform within the Bill of Rights, cultural prejudice remains strong. As the incidences of gay bashing and hate crimes against black lesbians attest, the victory of constitutional equality clearly has not guaranteed the end of social discrimination. The analysis suggests that there is much work remaining at the level of public education on diversity, including understanding same-sex issues.

**Youth apathy** - In the lead-up to the 2009 general elections, the study found that young South Africans are committed to the democratic process. A sizable majority of young people consider it a duty to vote while a smaller share holds the view that voting ultimately makes a difference.

Without even considering non-electoral forms of participation, young South Africans emerge as being as interested, aware and engaged in political matters as their elders. There are, however, significant racial differences in attitudes among the younger generation, with African youth expressing more positive attitudes towards voting than other population groups. This reflects heterogeneity in the historical background and

contemporary situation of young people and highlights the need for targeted interventions to encourage civic and political participation.

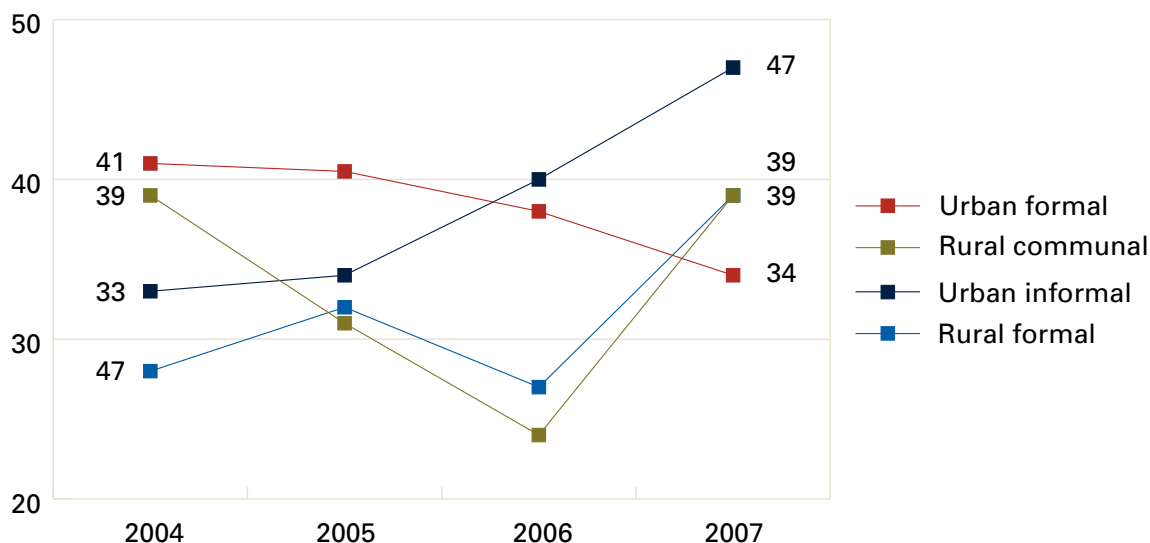
There are encouraging signs that the messages coming from SASAS are reaching decision-makers and are beginning to shape policy choices. Results emanating from the first six rounds of the survey (2003-2008) have been widely cited and discussed in the local print media and on radio. This is partly attributable to a dissemination strategy that focuses not only on formal academic publications, but also makes strategic use of the dedicated SASAS space that was introduced in the *HSRC Review* news magazine in 2007.

Nine of SASAS related articles were published in the *HSRC Review* during the financial year under review.

The attitudinal evidence from SASAS is also increasingly quoted by policymakers and featured in official documentation.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*

**Figure 1: Xenophobic sentiment: percent of South Africans saying they welcome no foreigners to the country, by geographic location, 2003-2007**





## Data curation

A baseline funded project aimed at capturing all the SASAS data and other outputs to the NESSTAR platform. So far all the data and other documents on SASAS project from 2003 to 2007 have been captured. The next phase will involve capturing of data and related documents for both baseline and client funded projects.

*Knowledge Systems unit*

## Participation, reconciliation and social cohesion

Following the release of *A nation in the making*, the Presidency's review of macro-social trends in South Africa, the South African government has placed the question of 'social cohesion' on the national agenda. In the context of growing inequality in South Africa, the issues of reconciliation, participation and social cohesion have become especially important.

The HSRC report has tried to gauge the degree to which reconciliation has taken place in South Africa by measuring a host of indicators. This is a welcome intervention as violence and/or resistance is not a spontaneous consequence of either poverty or inequality. Instead, what matters is the presence/absence of institutions and discourses that produce cross-cutting solidarities

(of class or race) that off-set or aggravate potential antagonisms.

Working from this hypothesis, our project sought to build on the Presidency's work in two ways: moving from a description of social trends in South Africa to an analysis of what is behind them; and proposing interventions to further promote reconciliation by developing the social fabric.

Given that the working of democracy and the functioning of governments and markets depend on the social relations in which they operate, it then follows that:

- There is a need to understand what kinds of relations are conducive to these practices;
- It is necessary to consider the state of social relations in South Africa today; and
- It will be important for any scenario planning exercise to consider how government might encourage and strengthen socially valuable institutions and transform, contain or dissolve those that are not.

The research included a desktop study, reviews of existing literature, and interviews with experts in the field. The report findings were presented to a high-level audience, including members of government departments and the Presidency.

*Democracy and Governance programme*

A close-up photograph of a microscope lens, showing the intricate details of the glass and metal components. The lens is positioned on the right side of the frame, with a blue ring visible on its barrel. The background is a soft, out-of-focus blue. A large, semi-transparent red circle is overlaid on the left side of the image, containing the title text.

# Education and Science

We monitor, evaluate and encourage  
access to, and quality in, education

# Education

Education is key to development and is central to how and whether economies grow, citizenship is exercised and social cultures are valued. South Africa continues facing fundamental challenges relating to access, equity, quality, and relevance across critical areas of the education system. Our research explores issues in and across the education system, with a specific focus on the monitoring and evaluation of educational progress at the primary, secondary and tertiary levels.

Our initiatives have resulted in, among others:

- Gaining insight into the literacy difficulties experienced at primary schools in the Limpopo province;
- Identifying ways how the teacher education system in South Africa can be improved on an ongoing basis;
- Highlighting the role of technical and vocational training institutions in the country;
- Showing how a selected sample of female university students succeeded in male-dominated fields of study;
- Developing a national framework for the assessment of learner achievement;
- Developing a classroom assessment resource system for teachers to improve their learning and teaching practices; and
- Helping the KwaZulu-Natal Department of Education plan infrastructure in the most cost and time efficient way.

## Literacy in primary schools in Limpopo

The HSRC research project offered valuable insights into the literacy difficulties experienced in junior primary classrooms in the Limpopo province. It was a complex project due to the linguistic and community diversity in the province, as well as the high incidence of rural and multi-grade classrooms.



Our key findings were:

- Learners did not reach the desired levels of literacy and language proficiency because their school work did not involve enough challenge, pace and volume;
- Children did not read and write enough during school hours or at home;
- Literacy instruction was neither specific nor good enough in both the pre-school period and the foundation phase, suggesting problems with the relevance and quality of teacher training;
- Learning materials and learning contents were not in synergy across grades and learning areas; and
- High levels of poverty and illiteracy at home and in the community eroded the support that is required from a home environment for successful literacy achievement at school (also reported on page 86).

*Education, Science and Skills Development (ESSD) programme*

## Getting youth into science

The Department of Science and Technology commissioned the HSRC to track and evaluate the success of its national youth-into-science strategy. The strategy was launched in 2007 to enhance participation, performance and career selection of school-going youth in the fields of science, technology, engineering and mathematics.

We kick-started the study by conducting a national survey of Grade 11 and 12 learners who take mathematics and physical science. The survey has shown that not only do learners have high career aspirations but 90% of them want to continue their studies after Grade 12. The career preferences in order of popularity are medicine, engineering, nursing and social work; with a small but significant proportion (5%) indicating they want to become teachers.

The study is ongoing.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## Teachers and gender equality in maths and science education

The HSRC assessed the impact of gender policies and interventions on the commitment and attitude of teachers towards achieving the Millennium Development Goal 3 (MDG3). The MDG3 aims at achieving gender equality and empowerment with specific reference to girls' access to participation in maths and science education.

Initial results suggested that teachers believed in equal access for both girls and boys to science and mathematics subjects and to careers in science, engineering and technology (SET); and that all learners, irrespective of gender, should be equally encouraged to pursue these subjects in school.

We found, however, that gender inequality is still rife in classrooms across the country and that girls continue to be underrepresented in these



subjects. There are overt and hidden curricular policies and practices causing women to be underrepresented in maths and science at tertiary level and in SET careers.

We believe classroom policies and practices should be investigated and interventions should include knowing what to do with the knowledge gained from research and the implementing of research recommendations.

*Policy Analysis and Capacity Enhancement unit*

## Teachers, teaching and teacher education

Research relating to teachers and teacher education is critical if we are to improve the quality of education and learner performance in our country. To support quality education, the HSRC has, during the past few years, undertaken research on the capacity of the teacher education system.

We have worked with a consortium consisting of the Centre for Education Policy Development, the South African Institute for Distance Education and the University of Pretoria, supported by the Royal Netherlands Embassy.

The consortium aims to make a significant contribution to the resolution of key obstacles to the effective functioning of the teacher education system. Key achievements of the research so far include:

- Important contributions to the Department of Education's national policy framework for teacher education and development (2007).
- Differentiated analysis of trends in supply and demand data for teachers necessary to plan the teacher education system.
- Providing the research necessary for the Department of Education to develop a systematic national teacher upgrading plan, including piloting a process to obtain useful data on teacher qualifications.
- Providing in-depth, original information about the impact of restructuring teacher education, and especially the teacher education curriculum; suggesting a moratorium on institutional change; and deepening relationships between universities nationally as well as between universities and education departments.

A second phase of research, building on findings so far and taking up questions that have arisen during the first phase, will begin later this year. The central problem to be addressed by the proposed suite of new projects relates to the ongoing difficulties of addressing the poor quality of schools in South Africa.

Unlike research that looks to the capacity of learners or of schools for explanation, the proposed programme will examine the capacity of the teacher education system to support quality



teaching. The processes, practices and outcomes of teacher education will be investigated.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## Technical and vocational education and training

Since 2002, the HSRC has undertaken research on the role of technical and vocational education and training (TVET) in formal and non-formal settings. The Danish International Development Agency (Danida) Support to Education and Skills Development Programme has provided support to develop further education and training (FET) colleges in South Africa.

The HSRC continues to monitor and evaluate seven of these colleges.

In addition, we have extended our model to undertake baseline studies at two new sites, Mnambithi College in KwaZulu-Natal and West Coast College in the Western Cape. These evaluations involve all college constituencies and have had a strong formative dimension over time.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## Gender, success and institutional culture

Funded by the Carnegie South Africa scholarship programme, this project examined the success and experience of selected female Carnegie scholarship recipients. The study looked at factors such as academic and social integration of these female students at three different South African universities.

With few exceptions, the participants had all broken gender boundaries by entering fields of study common for male but not female students. How the young women in the study negotiated their success and their gender identities is considered important given that the society they live in does not support gender boundary-crossing.



The case studies revealed that the students' perceptions of success were facilitated by a number of factors: the financial support from the scholarship programme, the informal support of family and friends, the students' personal efforts, their religious convictions and their belief in themselves. They did not experience institutional culture as negative and sought a future that would combine personal and public fulfilment in equal measure.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*



## The consolidation of public schools across KwaZulu-Natal

The KwaZulu-Natal (KZN) Department of Education estimated in 2006 that it had a backlog of about 11 400 classrooms across the province. The backlog included a lack of new infrastructure and additions required to existing infrastructure. This meant that schools with smaller enrolments, typically less than 140 primary and 200 secondary learners, could be deemed economically unviable as the costs to provide all required teaching resources and learning spaces to such schools would put an inordinate drain on available resources.

We collected data regarding the location of schools (education supply), learners aged 6-18 (education demand) and the road network connecting learners' place of habitation to the available education facilities. The data was used to conduct a regular catchment area analysis as well as a threshold distance analysis to calculate which schools should be consolidated across the province.

A total 11,7% of primary schools were found to be unviable while the figure for secondary schools was 10,5%. A list of these schools was provided to the department, enabling the department to make final decisions about consolidation. The HSRC research helped the department plan infrastructure for the future and to consider the demand and supply factors that impact such planning.

*Knowledge Systems (KS) unit*

## Assessment system to improve teachers' learning and teaching

In an effort to determine the current understanding and use of classroom assessment by teachers across the different grade levels and school types, this ongoing project involves developing a classroom assessment resource system for teachers to improve their learning and teaching practices.

Our project will attempt to answer questions on how teachers use assessments to provide relevant and timely feedback to learners to improve their performance; what are the appropriate ways in which assessment information should be reported to parents; and how teachers can use the information to improve learner performance.

From this, a pilot study based on randomised experimental trials will follow. The trials will include a computerised and a paper/pencil version of a classroom assessment resource system to support teachers in improving their analysis of learner strengths and weaknesses.

The study also intends to test the quality of feedback and to develop a process of tracking and monitoring learner performance levels and will include the development and costing of an implementation strategy for scaling up effective classroom assessment practices and lessons to improve learner performance.

*Centre for Quality Education Improvement (CEQI)*

## National assessment of learner achievement

Tools and systems to conduct an assessment survey of Grade 9 learners entailed developing and piloting a national indicator framework that could inform policies for education quality improvement at school level. Our project also identified factors affecting learner performance.

During 2008/09, the test assessment instruments for the Grade 9 systematic survey were collected from all provinces and the data coded, captured, cleaned and analysed. The HSRC then submitted a technical report, *The development and pilot application of Grade 9 English FAL, mathematics and natural science assessment items*, to the Department of Education and reached an agreement on survey methods to be used in the future.

Information from the data analysis was used to review and improve existing items. Curriculum experts were commissioned to review the table of specifications and to map existing test items against the assessment standards in the learning area of the National Curriculum Statements (NCS) document. Additional items were developed and collated into a booklet for mathematics and two booklets each for natural sciences and languages respectively. The newly developed items covered all assessment standards (80 English items, 60 maths and 100 natural sciences).

The new items were piloted at 11 schools in the Mpumalanga, North West and Gauteng provinces. Following the piloting of Grade 9 assessment items, we developed the final assessment instruments for English FAL, mathematics and natural sciences.

*Centre for Quality Education Improvement*

## Review of assessment systems

This ongoing project aims at providing a detailed analysis of current assessment policies and practices and an audit of available systems and structures in schools, districts, and provinces nationwide.

It entails clarifying roles and rules and engaging in critical dialogue to develop a framework of education quality in South Africa. The study should ultimately help develop the capacity and skills of the personnel involved with education assessment in South Africa at various locations and levels.

So far, a framework for the development of assessment instruments to collect data on teacher classroom assessment practices in schools in South Africa has been fleshed out. A review of teacher classroom assessment practices has also been conducted at eight schools in the provinces of Gauteng, Mpumalanga and North West.

Furthermore, a forum on policy was held to share international and national experiences and to facilitate dialogue among practitioners, researchers and policy makers. Research findings of the project on *Improving assessment systems* was discussed, which is presently providing support to the national and provincial departments of education in strengthening the national assessment system in South Africa.

*Centre for Quality Education Improvement*

## Assistance to the UN Relief and Works Agency in Palestine

The UN Relief and Works Agency for Palestine Refugees in the Near East (UNRWA) commissioned the HSRC to provide technical assistance in the development of a monitoring learning achievement system for UNRWA schools across its five field offices.

During the first phase of the project, the HSRC assisted UNRWA education staff to develop relevant instruments, review pilot results and establish systems for the administration of the Monitoring Learning Achievement surveys.

The second phase will focus on the analysis and reporting of the results, and the establishment of effective strategies for the dissemination and utilisation of the results for improving learning in all UNRWA schools.

*Centre for Quality Education Improvement*

# Science and Knowledge

The link between innovation and socioeconomic development is the subject of much of the research undertaken by the HSRC. The variety of studies conducted in this area reflects the global movement of economies to a more knowledge-intensive orientation. Among these are research and experimental development (R&D) and innovation activities, which need to be measured and monitored to understand their dynamics in terms of human resources, expenditure and focus areas in relation to economic growth.

Our initiatives have resulted in:

- Providing data on the relationship between knowledge and competitiveness;
- Producing national indicators that provide input for the formulation of national research, development and innovation policies;
- Designing an innovation strategy for the Limpopo province; and
- Discovering how waste reutilisation may lead to economic growth in the future.



## The relationship between knowledge and competitiveness

The HSRC was commissioned by the European Union to research the relationship between knowledge and competitiveness in the enlarging European Union, abbreviated as U-Know. Our study has pioneered the concept of 'network alignment' both as a tool to understand 'knowledge' in its varieties in the EU and in 'catch-up' economies such as South Africa.

Through various interactions with policymakers, both in Europe and in South Africa, the value of the concept for policy practice was demonstrated by this project. However, it was also acknowledged that data access problems in

South Africa, especially with respect to innovation and research and development data, impedes sound evidence-based policymaking to advance the knowledge society.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## Impact of networks and globalisation in interaction with EU strategies

We are working on another research project funded by the EU. The project, which involves 15 partners from 11 countries, including China, Brazil, and India, is one of the Management of Social Transformation (MOST) international projects in the EU Framework Programme 7 suite.

The consortium analyses the emerging geography of knowledge-intensive activities in the global economy. Researchers from South Africa were instrumental in drafting the project proposal, which received the single highest score in a very competitive evaluation. The HSRC is represented on the consortium's executive committee.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## National R&D surveys

The HSRC undertakes regular national research and development (R&D) and innovation surveys on behalf of the Department of Science and Technology to produce national indicators that provide inputs for policy makers and a basis for international comparisons. We have so far completed four full R&D surveys. The methodology and data provided in the 2006/07 R&D survey report were approved by Statistics South Africa and were awarded the seal of approval by the statistician-general.

The key users of this work are various government departments and agencies, especially the Department of Science and Technology, the Department of Education, the National Treasury, the National Advisory Council on Innovation, and the Presidential Commission on the Information Society and Development. The work assists government in meeting its strategic imperatives such as those contained in the South African R&D strategy to help promote effectiveness and efficiency, attain greater competitiveness and create employment

opportunities. Of particular significance is the way in which the research is increasingly finding its way into the deliberations of relevant policy-makers.

*Knowledge Systems unit*

## Innovation survey

The HSRC designs innovation surveys to measure the extent of innovation in the business sector of a country, as well as to estimate the expenditure on various innovation activities. The surveys help to inform higher education planning, business policy and trade practice, and to provide policymakers and planners with essential and comparative data.

The majority of NePAD countries that submitted R&D surveys - and/or innovation survey questionnaires - have based their questionnaires on the HSRC's CeSTII/South African questionnaires that were made available to them.

Our first official innovation survey, carried out on behalf of the Department of Science and Technology, has been published in a book titled *Main results of the South African Innovation Survey 2005*.

*Knowledge Systems unit*

## The changing role of the developmental university in the south

This project involved a global consortium comprising five Asian (Korea, China, Malaysia, India, Thailand), three African (South Africa, Uganda, Nigeria), and four Latin American (Brazil, Costa Rica, Mexico, Argentina) partners, funded by the International Development Research Centre (IDRC) in Canada.

The consortium essentially looked at the determinants of links between universities and industries in the southern hemisphere. The African regional study highlighted variance in the





scale and forms of university-firm interactions in countries at distinct stages of development, and set out the implications for universities in each trajectory.

In a similar project the Southern African Regional Universities Association (SARAU) commissioned the HSRC to assist in laying the foundation for a research network on higher education in SADC countries.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## University-business interactions and economic development in SADC

We analysed the interactions between universities and enterprises, and found that the relations between universities and firms in 13 SADC countries is limited.

Our study cautions against the uncritical adoption of models from the developed world, and tries to lay a basis for developing differentiated strategies that take each country's level of development and higher education system into account.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## Microeconomic development strategy

The HSRC has been advising the Western Cape Department of Economic Development and Tourism on industrial policy for a number of years. During the past year, its activity focused on a five-year review of this policy experiment, which, at provincial level, is unique in South Africa.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## Integrated innovation strategy for Limpopo

In this project, commissioned by Department of Science and Technology, the HSRC developed an integrated innovation strategy for the Limpopo province. This was the first commission to

design an innovation strategy for a South African province, in partnership with the department's manufacturing and local innovation unit and the office of the Limpopo premier.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## Waste reutilisation

A multi-year project was developed in partnership with the director-generals of the Economic and Employment Cluster, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, and the Department of Science and Technology, to look at how the waste reutilisation sector may offer opportunities for dynamic economic growth and employment for the future.

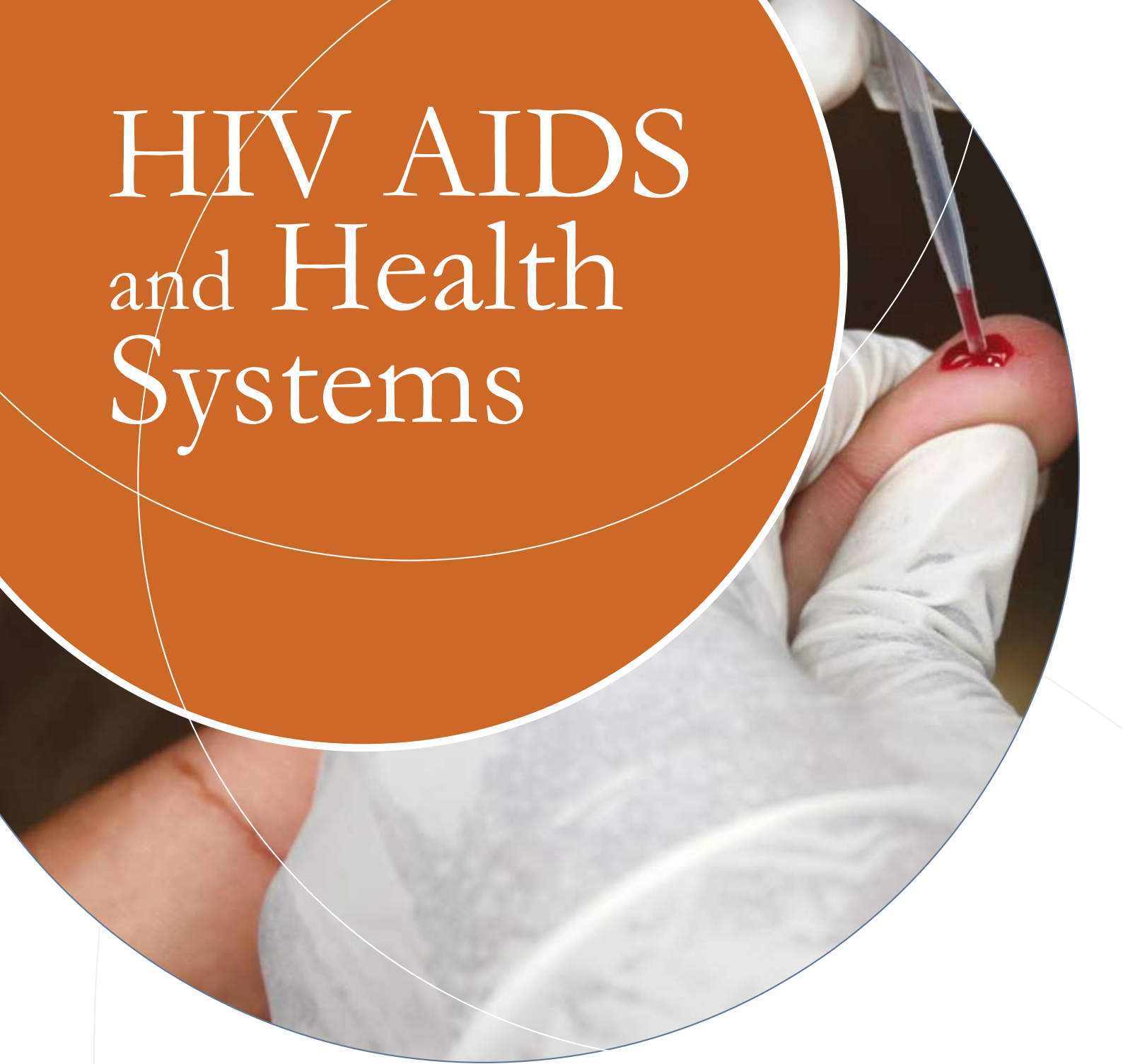
The project works from the premise that material re-use will necessarily become the next technological wave as 'peak oil' is reached and non-renewable resources become scarcer. It is believed that countries that identify opportunities at the beginning of the curve will benefit from what is known as the 'cyclical' economy, where industrial technologies are developed to reprocess materials into new uses.

An industry survey, completed in 2008/09, determined the current status of technology in respect of waste reutilisation and developed an industry database. The survey offered an initial insight into technology futures in waste reutilisation with implications for South African technology and industrial policy.

*Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth*







# HIV AIDS and Health Systems

We demystify behavioural and social  
aspects of living with HIV and AIDS

# HIV and AIDS

It lies in our hands as a nation to change the status of the HIV/AIDS epidemic. The HSRC contributes towards achieving the desired change by undertaking research that leads to a better understanding of HIV/AIDS.

We are home to a multitude of large, policy-relevant research projects on the behavioural and social aspects of the HIV epidemic - from studies that aim at drawing global attention to the need for better policies to address the plight of children, to investigating programmes that may contribute to prevention of infections in the young and in vulnerable groups such as orphans, gays and men who have sex with men (MSM), as well as the health of older people. Our studies also focus on public health systems and how these can be improved.

Our initiatives have resulted in:

- Presenting a plenary paper at the XVII International AIDS Conference in Mexico City;
- Mentoring HIV-positive mothers regarding their wellbeing and that of their babies;
- Understanding the value that HIV sufferers attach to traditional complementary and alternative medicines; and
- Filling the information gap regarding HIV among men who have sex with men.

## Plenary on children at International AIDS Conference, Mexico City

For the first time in its existence, the XVII International AIDS Conference invited a South African expert to present a plenary paper on the wellbeing of children affected by HIV and AIDS. The honour fell to Professor Linda Richter of the HSRC who focused her paper on the neglect of children in global responses to the epidemic, on wrong turns taken over the last two decades, and on strong recommendations to move the field forward.

According to Unicef, by 2007 there were an estimated two million children living with HIV - 90% of them in sub-Saharan Africa (see Figure 1).

Richer argued that programmes have failed children in four respects: prevention of HIV infection through parent-to-child-transmission; roll-out of treatment to children that lags significantly behind adult access; an almost exclusive focus on orphans; and neglect of the families and extended kin – many living in extreme poverty – who are largely left to support



affected children with little or no funding, nor assistance from governments.

In particular, the much-used term 'AIDS orphan' has led to considerable confusion. While the term is used in epidemiological and demographic projections to refer to children who have lost one or both parents, 88% of children called orphans have, in fact, a surviving parent.

Professor Linda Richter addresses the plenary of the XVII International AIDS Conference in Mexico City on the wellbeing of children affected by HIV and AIDS.

In many cases, this surviving parent is at high risk of being infected, has lost livelihood and social support, and is in critical need of assistance to be able to care for his or her children.

The main recommendations contained in Richter's plenary presentation were:

- Policies, programmes and funding must be redirected to provide support for children through their families.
- A dramatic rethink in policies is needed to develop comprehensive and integrated family-centred services.
- Much greater attention must be given to social protection, given that the backdrop to much of the impact of the AIDS epidemic on children is extreme poverty.
- The use of income transfers, which have demonstrated impressive results in supporting poor and vulnerable families including those affected by HIV and AIDS, should be expanded.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*

## Traditional complementary and alternative medicines for HIV patients in KwaZulu-Natal

As many reports have indicated that the use of traditional medicine is common among people with moderate and advanced HIV disease, our Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health (SAHA)



research programme decided to conduct a cross-sectional study to assess the use of traditional complementary and alternative medicines (TCAM) for HIV patients before they start using antiretroviral therapy.

Using systematic sampling, we selected and interviewed 618 HIV-positive patients from outpatient departments of three public hospitals in KwaZulu-Natal.

The study found that the use of TCAM was common among study participants with HIV (317, or 51,3%). Some of the participants used only herbal therapies (183, 29,6%). The use of micronutrients (42,9%) was excluded from TCAM since health facilities provided vitamins. Herbal therapies were the most expensive, costing on average R128 (US\$16) per patient per month.

Most participants (90%) indicated that their health care provider was not aware that they were taking herbal therapies for HIV (90%). Herbal therapies were mainly used for pain relief (87,1%) while spiritual practices or prayer were used for stress relief (77,6%).

The study concluded that outpatients on HIV treatment at public health facilities commonly used traditional herbal therapies and TCAM. Healthcare providers should routinely screen patients for use of TCAM when initiating ART and also during follow-up and monitoring, keeping in mind that these patients may not fully disclose other therapies.

The study was done in collaboration with the Centre for the Study of Sexual Health and HIV at the Homerton University Hospital's NHS Foundation Trust in London, UK, and the HIV/AIDS Pharmaceutical Care.

*Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health programme*

## Project Accept shifts access

Project Accept, a large scale, four-country community randomised trial funded by the National Institutes of Mental health, is completing almost three years of intervention, delivering mobile voluntary counselling and testing services, coupled with community mobilisation and post-test psycho-social support to communities in a rural community just outside Pietermaritzburg.

Close to 10 000 people in four intervention communities have been tested so far. Significantly, 77% of those we've tested are between 16 and 32 years of age, with 47% being male and 53% female (read further under Demonstration Projects on page 83).

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*

## Mentor mothers programme (Masihambisane)

Project *Masihambisane* is a randomised clinic trial to test the effectiveness of health information materials and a clinic-based peer-support and mentoring intervention to improve the health and wellbeing of HIV-positive mothers and their babies during pregnancy and the early post partum period.

This HSRC study is funded by a grant from the National Institute of Health (NIH).

*Masihambisane* focuses on teaching HIV sufferers how to disclose their status and the importance of making such disclosure. Data from the current sample suggests that about 40% of the women (239 of 565) feel that they are able to tell someone their HIV status. (read further under Demonstration Projects on page 84).

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*



## Johannesburg/eThekweni's Men's Study

The Johannesburg/eThekweni's Men's Study (JEMS) study was one of three groundbreaking studies carried out in South Africa to provide preliminary information on the epidemiology of HIV among men who have sex with men (MSM). JEMS focused on men living in Johannesburg and eThekweni (Durban), and also reviewed the availability of health programmes and services for MSM at these two major cities.

The study used respondent-driven sampling to recruit 285 men from Johannesburg and Durban for the survey. Those who consented to participate completed a questionnaire and provided blood specimens for anonymous HIV testing in a laboratory. Participants who did not know their HIV status were offered free onsite voluntary counselling and testing (VCT). The survey was also complemented with qualitative interviews with 32 key informants and approximately 150 men who participated in focus group discussions.

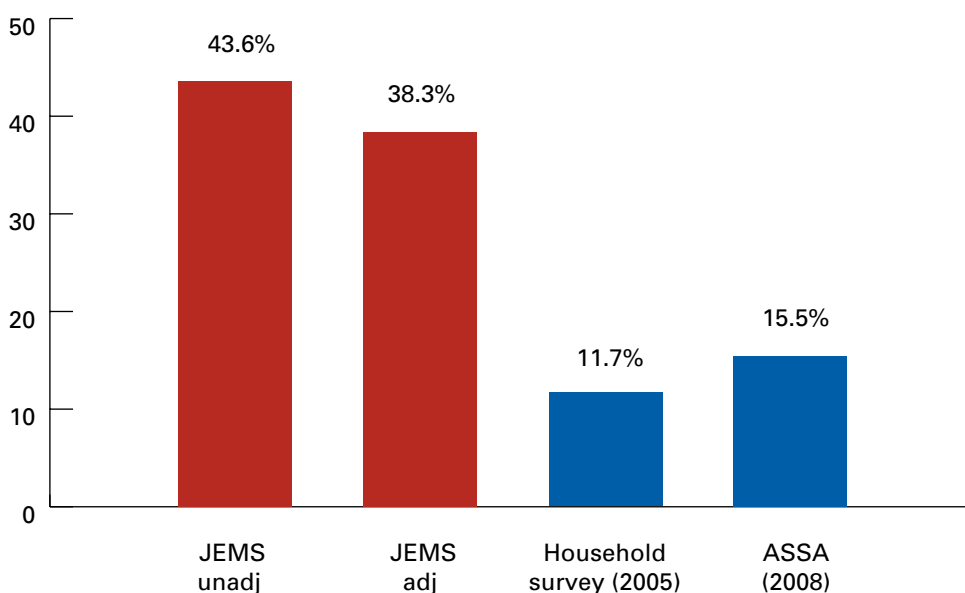
The study found that all men in the survey had had sex with at least one other man in the previous year. Their ages ranged from 18 years to 61 years, with an average age of 24 years; the majority were black Africans (88%), under 25 years of age (67%) and identified as being homosexual or gay (78%). Of the 266 men tested for HIV in the survey, 44% were HIV-positive.

Professor Laetitia Rispel, former executive director of the Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health programme at the HSRC, presents the findings of the Johannesburg/eThekweni's Men's Study (JEMS) study on men who have sex with men at a breakfast meeting at the 4th South African AIDS Conference in Durban.

This is more than double the estimates of HIV prevalence estimates among men in the general population (Figure 2). Of those men who were

HIV positive, 80% reported that they had never had sex with a woman.

**Figure 2: Unadjusted and adjusted HIV prevalence estimates among JEMS participants (on left) compared to HIV prevalence estimates for men in the general population (on right)**



Although the study results cannot be generalised to all MSM in South Africa or in the two cities, the findings raise concern that there is a ‘hidden epidemic’ of HIV among MSM in South Africa, as is the case in many other countries with generalised HIV epidemics. The findings suggest that MSM in South Africa may be experiencing an HIV epidemic in parallel with the HIV epidemic in the general population, with limited overlap between the two epidemics. The preponderance of black Africans in the survey dispels the misconception that men having sex with men is a white Western practice and that it is ‘unAfrican’.

The JEMS results address an information gap noted in the *National Strategic Plan on HIV&AIDS and STIs, 2007 – 2011*. Using the experience gained from JEMS, HSRC researchers are planning a larger national study of HIV among MSM, in consultation with senior government officials as well as with key stakeholders in the lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transgender (LGBT) sector.

The findings are also being used to help motivate for funding to increase HIV prevention, care and support services and programmes for MSM.

The study was conducted by the HSRC in collaboration with the Medical Research Council and the Centre for Health Policy at the University of the Witwatersrand.

*Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health programme*

### The Joint Learning Initiative on Children and AIDS (JLICA)

The HSRC is a founding member of the JLICA, a global network of policy-makers, practitioners, community leaders, researchers, and people living with HIV that meet and work to mobilise research and discussion on children affected by HIV/AIDS.

The activities of JLICA are divided into four groups: strengthening families; community action; expanding access to services and



protecting human rights; and social and economic policies.

In February 2009, JLICA released a comprehensive report – supported by four integrated learning group reports and more than 50 detailed systematic reviews - on its activities and findings.

The world's leading general medical journal *The Lancet* carried an editorial describing the report as laying out a new agenda for children affected by HIV and AIDS.

Since the launch of the final report, members of the JLICA steering committee have participated in a number of dissemination activities, including:

- presenting JLICA recommendations to UNAIDS and its partners the Unicef, WHO, and the Global Fund;
- briefing congress in Washington;
- addressing the African First Ladies health summit held in Los Angeles;
- addressing a symposium on the impact of HIV/AIDS and poverty on children in sub-Saharan Africa held at Stanford University; and
- addressing the annual meeting of the Dutch Working Group on Children Affected by AIDS held in Amsterdam, in the Netherlands.

A South African launch of the report is being planned jointly with Unicef, South Africa.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*

## Evaluation of psychosocial needs of caregivers in South Africa

The HSRC carried out an evaluation of the psychosocial needs of community-based people who care for orphans, vulnerable children (OVC) and people living with HIV/AIDS.

This was one of the first projects to concentrate on the psychological, social and other needs of



volunteers who deal with ill and dying people on a daily basis.

One of the most significant findings was that most caregivers felt they were getting the necessary help and instructions to cope with their caring tasks for people with chronic illnesses (78,4%), including HIV/AIDS. A total 73% said they were getting instruction or education about caring for people's medical conditions, treatment, medication and other needs.

Against expectations, about 83% of carers said they had freedom to interact with friends and family on a social level, and 81,5% said they were able to have peace of mind - described as freedom from excessive anxiety about the people they cared for.

As Table 1 shows, participants felt they were they were being valued and respected as individuals (75,7%) and the same proportion said they had a sense of shared responsibility, both practically and emotionally.

When it came to a question of whether they had a sense of satisfaction or achievement, 74,5% agreed; 73% said they were informed, prepared, confident, skilled, equipped, or trained for the caring task; and 68,3% said their care-giving needs and expertise were being recognised.

Professor Linda Richter (left), team leader of learning group 1: strengthening families, of the Joint Learning Initiative on Children and HIV/AIDS (JLICA) at the preparation phase of the project. On the right is Dr Scott Drimie, a group member.

Our study concluded that, in general, there was a low level of psychosocial distress among carers and a great passion for the care-giving role.

Caregivers and stakeholders indicated that their wellbeing could be improved if they were given transport to patients who stay far away; if their stipend was standardised to at least R1 000 per month; if they received structured and consistent training and re-fresher courses; if they were given psychosocial support through professional counsellors who do not necessarily work in

the same organisation; and protection against exposure to infectious diseases.

The findings of this study will contribute to the new government policy on task shifting in the health and HIV/AIDS sector, which is being discussed at the South African National AIDS Council (SANAC).

The South African Red Cross Society collaborated in the research and funded the study.

*Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health programme*

**Table 1: Psychosocial needs of carers in South Africa**

<b>PSS needs</b>	<b>Percent</b>
Getting help with caring tasks for people with chronic illnesses, including HIV/AIDS	78,4
Getting instruction or education about the care for people's medical conditions, care needs, treatment and medication	73
Getting help with household tasks as a care giver	57,1
Have freedom to interact with friends and family on a social level	83
I have peace of mind (freedom from excessive anxiety about the people cared for)	81,5
Received information on emergency telephone numbers for ambulance, hospital and other services where you can refer your patients	80,3
In trying to achieve quality of life, have positive morale, emotional and mental health	79,5
I am being valued and respected as an individual	75,7
I have a sense of shared responsibility, both practically and emotionally, with services including emergency access to help	75,7
I have a sense of satisfaction or achievement in providing care to others	74,5
I am informed, prepared, confident, skilled, equipped, or trained for the caring task	73,0
My care-giving needs and expertise are being recognised	68,3

*Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health programme*

# Health Systems

Our research also focuses on public health systems and how these can be improved for the benefit of the entire South African population.

Our initiatives have resulted in:

- Developing and evaluating the efficacy of interventions for HIV/AIDS and sexually transmitted infections (STIs); and
- Better understanding of the health status of South Africa's older population.

## Men, wisen up

Over the past seven years, the HSRC has been running a series of studies into theory-based behavioural interventions, known as *Phaphama* (meaning 'wisen up' or 'be wise').

Our studies aim to reduce the risk of sexually transmitted infections (STIs) and/or HIV infection among various target groups such as both male and female patients with repeat STIs at public health care clinics (original *Phaphama*, *Phaphama 1 Alcohol* and *Phaphama 2*); men who engage in gender-based violence (*Phaphama Men*); both men and women who drink in informal alcohol serving establishments such as shebeens (*Phaphama Community Alcohol*); and people living with HIV/AIDS who are aware of their HIV-positive status (*Phaphama* positive prevention).

The National Strategic Plan for HIV/AIDS and sexually transmitted infections (STIs) has highlighted the need of such evidence-based interventions as a national priority.

Indeed, the HSRC's Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health programme is among the few research programmes in South Africa that have been developing and evaluating the efficacy of such interventions.

*Phaphama Men* is a community-based gender violence and HIV prevention intervention for men in their social networks. It is based on Social Action Theory, the concept of intervention, and advocacy-skills training.

A quasi-experimental field-intervention trial to determine efficacy, found that the intervention reduced negative attitudes toward women in the short term (see Table 2) and reduced violence against women in the longer term.

Men in the intervention group also increased discussions with sex partners about condoms and were more likely to undergo HIV testing. There were, however, few differences in risk-reducing behavioural outcomes such as condom use and number of sexual partners.

This is one of the few South African studies that demonstrate a high level of efficacy in changing some gender social norms. Further research will examine the potential synergistic effects of alcohol use, gender violence, and HIV-prevention interventions.

The HSRC has been conducting this work in collaboration with the University of Connecticut at Storrs, in the USA, and the University of the Western Cape.

*Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health programme*

*Table 2: Comparison of intervention communities on behaviours in the previous month*

Variable	Gender Violence		Alcohol & HIV/AIDS		OR
	N	%	N	%	
Did not lose temper with a woman among men who had at baseline					
1-month	53	23	27	13	0.5**
3-month	43	18	32	15	0.7
6-month	52	23	29	14	0.5**
Hit or pushed a woman in the past month					
1-month	54	23	40	19	1.3
3-month	84	36	62	29	1.2
6-month	72	31	124	61	0.3**

*Note: All analyses were controlling for age and baseline scores, \*p<.05, \*\*p<.01*

## Survey on global ageing and health (SAGE study)

South Africa has a higher proportion of older people in its population than any other sub-Saharan African country. Our older population rate also grows at a much faster tempo (2,60%) than the total population (1,28%). The projected increase of the number of people 50 years and older is 14,3% (6.8 million) in 2005 to 18,4% (8.9 million) by 2025, and those 60 years and older from 6.8 (3.2 million) in 2005 to 11,5% (5.6 million) by the year 2025 (UN Population Division, 2005).

The survey on global ageing and health (SAGE) study, initiated by WHO in selected countries (South Africa, China, Ghana, India, Mexico and Russian Federation), intended to get an empirical understanding of the health state of older people's morbidity and mortality, and an equitable system to address their needs. The countries were selected to give a broad representation across different regions, taking into consideration population and health characteristics in South Africa to allow cross-country comparisons.

The goals of SAGE were to promote a better understanding of the effects of ageing on wellbeing, to examine the health status of individuals aged 50 years and older, and the changes, trends and patterns that occurred over time.

Over the past two years, the HSRC's Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health research programme has been conducting South Africa's first ever nationally representative study on ageing and health. Our study involved 5 044 participants (558 individuals aged 18-49 years and 3 838 individuals aged 50+ years).

An important groundbreaking methodological contribution was the use of direct health examinations (anthropometric and performance measures) to determine the health status of the elderly population and then cross-validate the self-reported information by objective measurements. The measurements included height, weight, and body-mass index.

Our study indicated that there was a need for health promotion to improve the health status of the elderly, especially in addressing obesity and the associated risk factors.

*Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health programme*



**Table 3: Percentage of underweight, overweight and obese respondents by age, sex, u/r, marital status**

Characteristics	Prevalence of			Normal nutritional status (%)	Mean BMI
	Underweight (%)	Overweight (%)	Obesity (%)		
Sex					
Male	6,0	61,5	33,1	29,0	29,0
Female	4,3	73,9	47,4	32,6	32,6
Age group					
18-49	5,9	62,2	35,1	30,5	30,5
50-59	4,0	71,6	44,5	31,9	31,9
60-69	4,7	70,6	46,1	31,2	31,2
70+	6,4	68,0	36,9	30,3	30,3
Residence					
Urban	4,7	72,8	44,9	31,7	31,7
Rural	5,6	63,5	35,5	30,1	30,1
Characteristics	Mean systolic blood pressure	Mean diastolic blood pressure	Mean pulse Rate	No. of respondents	
Sex					
Male	141.61	94.46	74.94	1231	
Female	146.96	95.16	77.12	2224	
Age group					
18-49	132.01	89.98	76.49	401	
50-59	142.71	96.37	77.12	1356	
60-69	147.21	95.90	75.99	989	
70+ -79	148.30	94.17	75.63	521	
80+	145.74	91.82	74.31	188	
Residence					
Urban	143.57	94.51	76.24	2910	
Rural	145.02	76.32	76.32	1494	

# Poverty



We seek to make a contribution towards alleviating poverty through research and development

# Poverty and development

All research done by the HSRC has the eventual aim to contribute towards alleviating poverty, but some of the research is directed towards interventions that could directly influence the dire situation of the poorest of the poor.

Our research has resulted in:

- A series of papers that scope the state of knowledge concerning household food security in South Africa;
- Establishing a new set of official poverty lines for Namibia;
- Developing a social policy framework that has been endorsed by the African Union; and
- Informing the Mozambique government on ways how that neighbouring country's agricultural sector can achieve optimal growth.

## Improving household food security

We believe that reducing household food insecurity is critical to halving poverty by 2014. At present, however, South Africans are experiencing high rates of household food insecurity, higher than the norm in a middle-income country.

Food insecurity is exacerbated by a number of factors such as rising food and fuel prices, poor access to land and support, and unemployment and low income. A team of researchers from a variety of research bodies, including the HSRC Knowledge Systems unit and Programme for Land and Agrarian Studies (PLAAS), is investigating what contributes to South Africa's food insecurity; identifying policy options; and monitoring and evaluating food security status. This is being done in partnership with the Department of Agriculture, in support of the Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme Task Team, and with financial support from the ComMark Trust and the HSRC.

We have produced a series of papers to scope the state of knowledge in respect of household food security in our country. While many insights have been gained, it is clear that the monitoring of household food security and own production require much deeper attention.

*Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth*



## Strategies to support smallholders

Papers on strategies to support smallholders formed part of a project led by the Institute for Poverty, Land and Agrarian Studies (PLAAS) and funded by the Second Economy project at TIPS/ComMark.

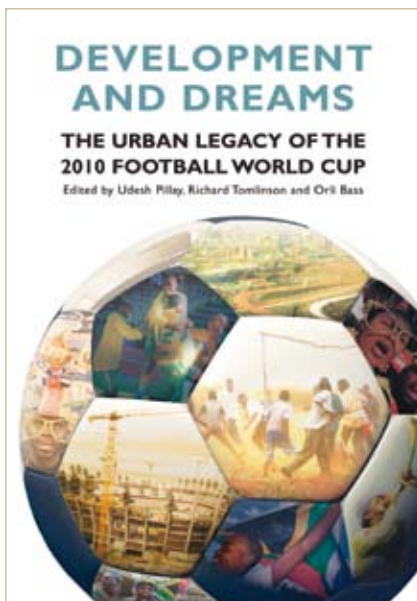
The core of the exercise entailed identifying successful South African smallholders active in different settings and examining the factors that contribute to their success; whether these are personal, contextual or institutional.

In the process of conducting the smallholder case studies (and in combination with extensive literature review), we also investigated the

efficacy and relevance of different intervention and support strategies. Some of the key findings include the following:

- Group-based projects tend to show less evidence of adaptability than individual entrepreneurs.
- Most of the commercially successful farmers are men (or, more accurately, male-headed households) while women are predominant among subsistence-oriented farmers.
- Current policy places excessive emphasis on commercially oriented smallholders, seemingly predicated on the belief that household production is not a route out of poverty, nor is it even developmental. Yet, household production can, for relatively little investment, make a meaningful difference to the lives of many in a manner that is relatively low risk.
- Despite the widespread subscription to the idea that farming at one level serves as a means of developing skills upon which one can prepare to move to the next level, there is little in current policy that makes it tangible.

*Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth*



## The urban legacy of hosting the 2010 FIFA World Cup

Hosting the 2010 Fifa World Cup is expected to affect the South African economy, the country's infrastructure and its cities, as well as influence how African culture and readiness is projected to the rest of the world.

The HSRC 2010 Research Project, currently in its fifth year but drawing to a close

with the publication of the book *Development and Dreams*, has interrogated some of the key assumptions in relation to the 2010 FIFA World

Cup. In the process, the project unravelled the complex interplay of relationships between these objectives as they relate to the potential to foster urban and economic development in particular. It has asked some difficult questions along the way.

The overall conclusion, based on sound, rigorous impact assessment research, is that the contribution of the event to economic development, including tourism, job creation and poverty mitigation, has almost certainly been overstated. The wider urban development benefits are also likely to be rather circumscribed, with little evidence of infrastructural, service and facilities provision beyond the lifespan of the event.

The event's contribution to GDP is also being questioned in recent modelling exercises. Furthermore, in a country like South Africa where disparities among the rich and poor are among the highest in the world, inequality may even be exacerbated as a result of what many consider to be a failure to prioritise expenditure in a developing economy.

On the other hand, the host cities and the economy in general may benefit considerably from investment in transport and information and communication technology and the 2010 FIFA World Cup will no doubt contribute to the design and implementation of an integrated public transport system in our major urban conurbations.

The groundbreaking research project represents the largest consolidated body of independent research on the subject and includes a balanced and largely unsentimental mix of assessments of South Africa's future prospects.

*Centre for Service Delivery*

## Gender and poverty reduction: voice, dialogue, targeting

The HSRC produced a gender analysis of national poverty reduction strategies, which was presented to NGOs and policy-makers in a consultative workshop in December 2008.



Some of our key findings and recommendations included the following:

- Social assistance grants and old-age pensions are the most effective current form of poverty alleviation and impact on women's quality of life. Available statistics in key areas (such as life expectancy, unemployment, being HIV positive, among others) suggest that African women - particularly those living in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, and KwaZulu-Natal - are the worst off in the country.
- Further research should be conducted on land reform, especially in terms of women's access to land.
- There is a need to understand urban and peri-urban poverty better, especially as far as gendered issues of security, space, and migration between rural and urban areas goes.
- Informal trading, an area heavily dominated by women, is largely unrepresented in dominant literature on poverty and inequality.
- There is a need to understand better the impact of social assistance grants – beyond who it is (men or women) who receives them, but how such income plays out in terms of sustaining households.

*Policy Analysis and Capacity Enhancement unit*

## Namibia national poverty line

This multi-year project, funded by the UN Development Programme Namibia, focused on providing technical assistance to colleagues from the Namibian Central Bureau of Statistics (CBS) in establishing a new set of official national poverty lines for the country, using the 2003/04 Namibia Household Income and Expenditure Survey (NHIES).

The HSRC was also part of the team that prepared the first comprehensive government report on poverty and inequality in Namibia based on the data and using the new poverty lines.



Ovahimba women in Kaokoland, Namibia

The project culminated in the launch of the poverty and inequality report by the Namibian Central Bureau of Statistics during Africa Statistics Day commemorations held at the National Planning Commission in Windhoek on 18 November 2008.

The report has led to the adoption of a new national poverty line in that country. The methodology used to produce the report relies on the cost-of-basic-needs (CBN) approach, which has become one of the international standards in poverty measurement. The approach has also become the norm for poverty monitoring in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) and in other developing countries.

The new poverty lines were used to provide a detailed profile of poverty in Namibia. Some of the results have clear potential for enhancing geographic targeting in the design of anti-poverty policies and interventions.

Clear findings emerged about the inverse relationship between poverty and educational attainment, thus affirming the importance of educational investments, especially in expanding access to secondary education.

Useful insight is offered on social protection and the salient contributory role that pensions play for poor households that rely on this source as a main form of income. Our report also illustrates

the social exclusion of certain socio-demographic groups such as the San community.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme.*

## Mapping of agricultural expenditure in Mozambique

The HSRC undertook a study of the agricultural sector in Mozambique to assess the effectiveness and efficiency of public expenditure in that sector. Seeing that its economy is largely dependent on agriculture, the country aims at ensuring that investment is optimised to achieve the best results.

Our study found that rates of poverty declined substantially in the periods 1996 to 1997 and 2002 to 2003. The goal of reducing poverty by 60% by 2005 - as set out in the action plan for the reduction of absolute poverty - has, in all likelihood, already been achieved.

However, the study found no evidence of rural poverty reduction (despite comments made to the contrary by the Mozambique ministry of planning and financing).

The poverty headcount is the highest in Inhambane (81%) while the lowest poverty headcount is in Sofala with 34%. The provinces situated further north (Tete, Niassa, Cabo Delgado, Nampula) have the highest percentages of adults active in agriculture.

The HSRC proposed that money should be invested in maize production, as the main agricultural activity, to increase work opportunities and improve skills. At the same time, investment in other successful crops should encourage diversification so that there is not a sole dependency on maize.

Furthermore, the HSRC report pointed out that certain provinces are more vulnerable due to socioeconomic conditions and therefore need to be targeted as priority investment areas. The

Regional Strategic Analysis and Knowledge Support System and the World Bank will oversee the final implementation of the recommendations contained in the HSRC report.

*Knowledge Systems unit*

## A social policy framework for Africa

This HSRC project, commissioned by the African Union (AU) Department of Social Affairs, endeavoured to develop a social policy framework (SPF) for Africa, a notion that emanated from the first session of the AU Labour and Social Affairs Commission held in Mauritius in 2003.

At this meeting the ministers requested the development of such a framework to assist AU member states in their quest to address the compelling and pervasive socioeconomic challenges facing the continent.

The draft social policy framework was presented to the first session of the AU Conference of Ministers in charge of social development in Windhoek, Namibia in October 2008, with the title *Towards a sustainable social development agenda for Africa*. The ministers adopted the framework in its entirety and expressed a willingness to implement its strategies.

The framework formed part of the Windhoek Declaration on Social Development, which renewed the commitment AU Member States to invest in development, and particularly in the continent's social sector. The SPF was further endorsed by the AU Executive Council of Ministers, and Assembly of Heads of States and Governments, which took place in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia at the end of January 2009.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*

# Service delivery

Post-apartheid policy in South Africa has focused on the effective and efficient delivery of services to its citizens, particularly to rural inhabitants and those historically deprived of basic essential services such as water and sanitation, housing, electricity and health facilities.

Scientific research towards understanding and explaining the dominant trends in service delivery for human development is critical, as is analysing and generating practical solutions to problems of planning and administration.

Our initiatives have resulted in:

- Improving energy services in the poverty stricken community of Imizamo Yethu in Cape Town;
- Recommendations on the pricing of electricity, which have been adopted by the National Energy Regulator and Eskom; and
- Developing a settlement typology that enables estimates to be made of the number and type of housing needed for different types of communities.

## Measuring service delivery in southern Africa

This multi-country assessment in selected southern African countries, titled the *Southern African Trust* (SAT) project, explores the challenges in meeting key service delivery targets implicit in the Millennium Development Goals (MDG).

The project, which is funded by SAT and implemented by the HSRC, supports progress by undertaking country studies, constructing tools of analysis and drawing out lessons for assessment, policy and practice.

The HSRC is managing the entire research process and cooperates across countries via methodological and report-back workshops. The country workshops serve to set up implementation networks between government, civil society and researchers, to carry forward ideas and strategies arising from the research.

Up to now, the project has had a diffused impact through the implementation networks initiated during and following its workshops. High impact is anticipated in the final stage when reports will be drawn together and the full range of networks activated.

*Centre for Service Delivery*



## The impact of electricity pricing and rationing on the SA economy

In a project funded by the ComMark Trust, the HSRC worked with the Presidency and the National Electricity Response Team to help identify an approach that would optimally balance the need to reduce electricity consumption; meet the financial needs of Eskom; and minimise negative impacts on the economy, employment and low-income households.

In 2008, the biggest impact of this work was to offer critical guidance to the key stakeholders in the multi-year electricity price determination. Our recommendations were largely adopted by the National Energy Regulator of South Africa and set expectations in the market and for Eskom.

Our work established a methodology for setting the electricity price in a way that addresses Eskom's commercial needs and meets the growth and employment imperatives of the economy.

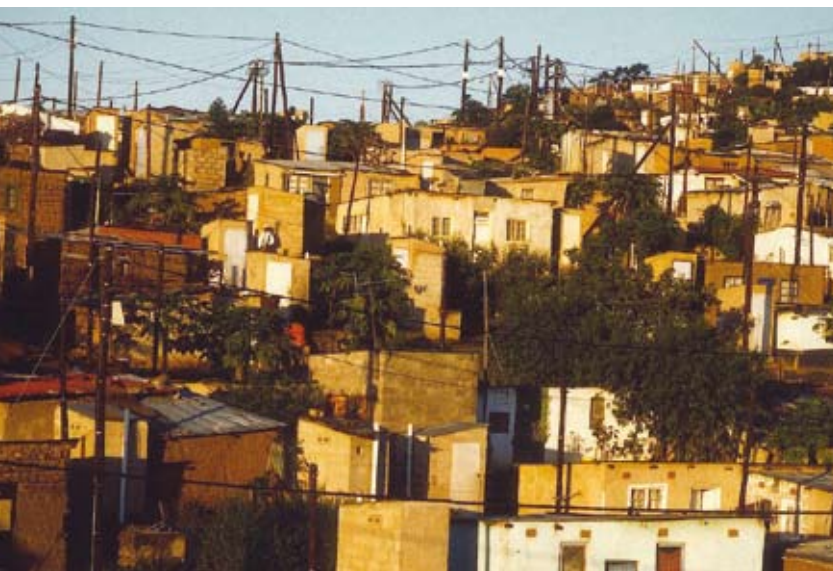
*Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth*

## A household perspective of electrification

The Department of Minerals and Energy funded a national survey study to investigate the impact of the electrification programme on people's livelihood.

The study found that almost all low-income households surveyed by the HSRC used pre-paid meters. Although free basic electricity is aimed primarily at assisting poor households, only a third of the households in the study indicated that they receive it. The vast majority (85%) of households felt that the electrification programme had benefited them.

*Knowledge Systems unit*



## Alleviation of poverty through energy services

The HSRC has been involved in addressing energy-related challenges in the City of Cape Town metropolitan area. These energy related challenges include: improving energy for basic household needs; reducing dangers and hazards from unsafe energy use; addressing energy problems of under-serviced marginal informal settlements; and using pro-poor (and equitable) approaches to electricity/energy conservation.

We are working in collaboration with members of the Cape Town project team involved in the alleviation of poverty through provision of local energy services (APPLES), international APPLES project partners, and the Energy Research Centre (ERC) at the University of Cape Town.

The HSRC's involvement in the project in the poverty-stricken community of Imizamo Yethu in Cape Town has led to improving local energy services through:

- the collection, recording and analysis of community level data and information regarding local energy services for poverty alleviation;
- raising community awareness by focusing on energy use and energy safety;
- bringing together community stakeholders and local energy service providers to consider the best ways of improving local energy services for poverty alleviation for the benefit of the local community; and
- presenting the initiative to the Parliamentary Portfolio Committee on Minerals and Energy.

Under the thematic focus of the project, the HSRC envisages continued participation and involvement in the APPLES initiative.

*Democracy & Governance programme*



## Social networks and service delivery

Our research project on the degree of fit between social solidarity and government service delivery explored some of the issues raised in *A nation in the making*, the Presidency's review of macro-social trends in South Africa.

We concluded that social networks could provide individuals with access to opportunities and resources that are not available to people outside of these networks. Our study sought to understand how these networks operate, what influences them and how they can be used to improve the efficiency of government service delivery.

*Policy Analysis and Capacity Development (PACE) unit*

## Growth and development in the Limpopo province

In partnership with the Limpopo provincial government, the HSRC has initiated collaboration on the progress that has been made in implementing the Limpopo Provincial Growth and Development Strategy 2004 – 2014.

The collaboration consists of three process and outcome evaluation projects. The University of Limpopo is a partner in some of the projects and the intention is for the HSRC develop the university's expertise in programme evaluation.

*Policy Analysis and Capacity Development unit*

## Service delivery in the Municipality of Tshwane

The aim of this project is to conduct multi-layered, action research in an attempt to produce evidence-based knowledge leading to local interventions through pilot 'demonstrations' that will help accelerate service delivery in the municipality of Tshwane. The idea is to build a more effective delivery system in the municipality through interventions that combine better

planning, training and implementation (more detail available under Demonstration Projects on page 84).

*Centre for Service Delivery*

## Futures research

Futures research at the HSRC has been initiated by the collection of 27 key development indicators over a period of 20 or more years, their analysis and use in projections into the future.

The main output so far has been the first State of the Future Index Report (SA-SOFI), which has been widely circulated and well received.

The second round of research builds on the validation of these variables and focuses on the future of the water and energy sectors.

Explorations are being made with the Presidency regarding the alignment of the 27 variables with those maintained by monitoring and evaluation in the Presidency to build a parallel set of past, current, and future indicators.

*Centre for Service Delivery*

## Citizen report card

The World Bank commissioned the HSRC to do a consultative community report card survey in the municipalities of Tshwane in Gauteng and OR Tambo in the Eastern Cape.

It is interesting to note that in spite of the differences in geography and settlement types in the two municipalities, both experienced the same problems in terms of service delivery. Participants not only tabled their opinions but also provided suggestions on how to improve the process of service delivery. The problems noted in service delivery were:

- ineffective consultation/participation;
- ineffective communication channels;
- ineffective community structures (e.g. ward committees);

- lack of capacity concerning councillors and community leaders; and
- lack of awareness of government policies.

The results suggest that government needs to adhere to and intensify the implementation of the *Batho Pele* principles, which aims to enhance the quality and accessibility of government services.

*Knowledge Systems unit*

## Integrated planning, development and modelling

Phase 1 of this project, funded by the Department of Science and Technology and implemented in partnership with the CSIR, aimed to develop an online facility for local government delivery planning to speed up delivery of housing, infrastructure, transport and other government benefits to communities.

Delivery at local level has been slow relative to the urgent need, partly because there has been no available planning data for municipal planners to use in estimating the volume and character of the need for housing, which comes with the

Dr David Hemson of the Centre for Service Delivery, tastes the ground water at a borehole in the Eastern Cape; people do not drink this water because it is brackish.



need for linked delivery of transport and other infrastructure.

The HSRC contribution is to draw together empirical data on migration, economic activity, housing and transport as the base for the developing of a model. To this end, a pilot survey of the Sekhukhune-Gauteng migration corridor was completed.

The HSRC has also developed a settlement typology for poor communities. The typology allows estimates to be made of the number and type of housing needed at community level for all different types of communities. The settlement typology is available online in a prototype format as a planning instrument and has drawn interest from several government departments as well as from the Development Bank of Southern Africa.

The specific findings of the HSRC project component – documenting the sudden explosion of quality self-build housing and the probability that traditional housing is now disappearing – have been presented to the Parliamentary Budget Committee (October 2008) and several enquiries have been received from committee members.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*

## Accelerating sustainable water service delivery

This project, in which the HSRC is acting as the project manager to implement rural water schemes in the Eastern Cape, is unusual in the sense that it explores the relation between the 'hard' and 'soft' sciences of project implementation in deep rural areas.

Our project is designed to produce concrete results - through innovation and scientific intervention - to accelerate the provision of safe drinking water to poor communities (also reported under Demonstration Projects on page 85).

*Centre for Service Delivery*

# Social inclusion and exclusion

The HSRC studies factors that lead to the social exclusion, alienation and disenfranchisement of certain groups of people in the South African society. Our research investigates the plight of people with disabilities, the elderly, women, orphans and vulnerable children, and of teenage fathers.

Our initiatives have resulted in:

- A report that provides insight into the plight of teenage fathers in impoverished communities; and
- The recent launch of a study that will shed light on the complexities of intergenerational relations.

## Teenage Tata: young fathers in impoverished communities

The HSRC conducted a study on the plight of impoverished young South African men who became fathers during their teenage years.

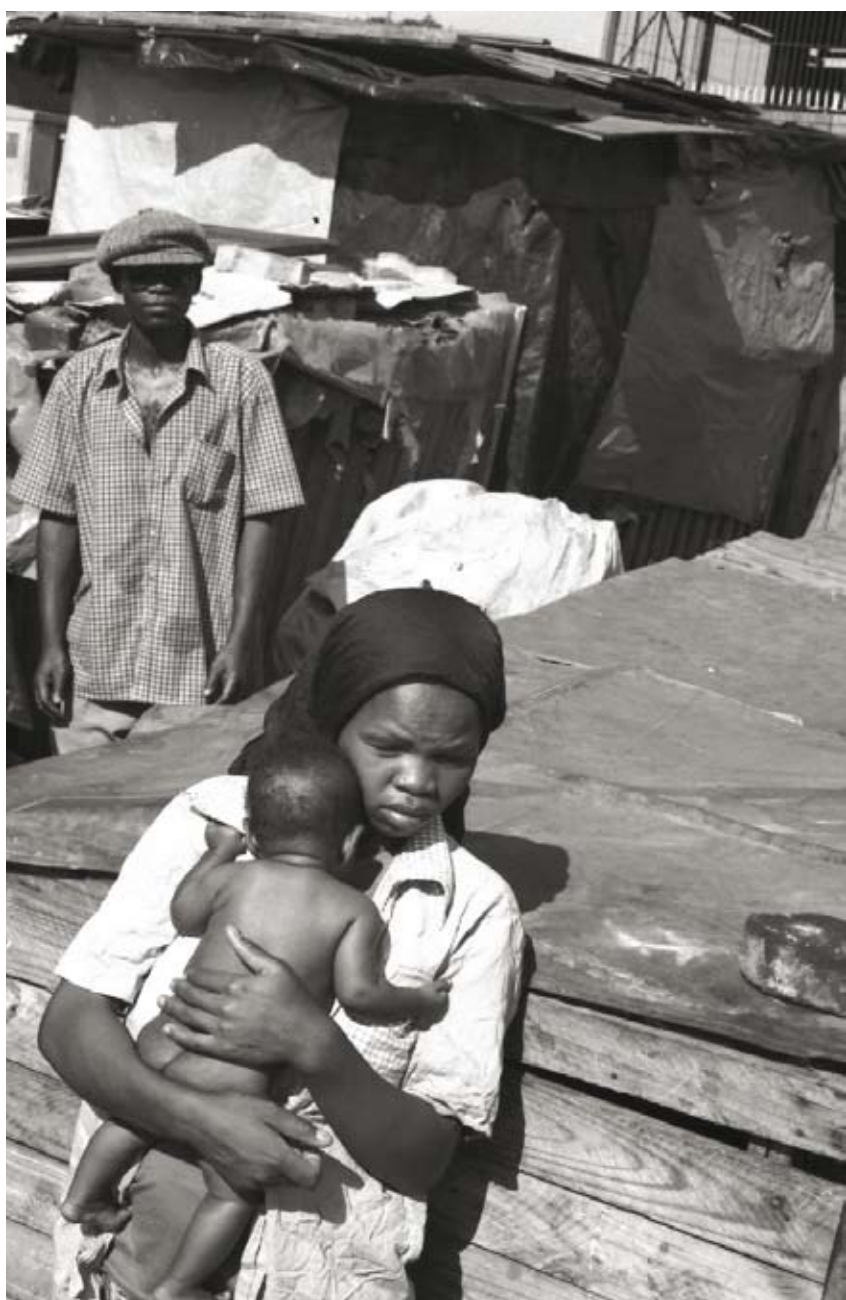
The research design was qualitative and employed a set of interviews with 27 young men from Langa and Bonteheuwel in Cape Town and Cato Manor, Bonella and Mayville in Durban.

The main findings of the study are distilled into ten factors that either hinder or encourage young men's sexual health and participation in the fathering of their children. Among these are:

- the cultural measure of money being equated with responsibility;
- high unemployment rates;
- multiple concurrent partnerships (MCP) among young men;
- ignorance about basic biology and contraception;
- the way in which parents commandeer young fathers' responsibilities ; and (please insert)
- the widespread failure of services and sex education for these young men.

The study was funded by the Swedish organisation Save the Children.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*





## Relationships between generations in South Africa

It is believed that rapid social changes in Africa have resulted in high intergenerational disjuncture on the continent. In spite of the importance of intergenerational relations in African societies, very little attempt has been made to understand this phenomenon. The HSRC has thus commenced a research project to fill the gap in information on this important aspect of African societies.

The project studies the two main aspects of intergenerational relations, namely the direction

of intergenerational flow of economic resources and the patterns of co-residence. We aim to show how older persons are disadvantaged on these fronts and to investigate the level of conflict (of which abuse is the extreme form) as well as the level of solidarity and detachment between the existing generations.

The HSRC research is intended to lead to the formulation of a manual that will assist communities to forge intergenerational solidarity.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*





# The World of Work



Skills and knowledge to remain relevant  
in the global economy

# Skills and employment

Our research in this area encompasses studies into the labour market, employment creation, and skills and human resources development. It seeks to address the key national imperatives to improve equitable access to skills acquisition, sustainable economic growth and employment strategies using scenario projections.

Our initiatives have resulted in:

- Publishing four monographs on the professional labour market and the professional milieu in South Africa;
- Compiling a considerable number of reports and proposals on how skills development strategies can be improved;
- Identifying critical choices in the allocation of national budget for initiatives aimed at halving unemployment by 2014; and
- Producing a number of proposals on how to enhance the employability of youth.

## Study of the professions and professional education

We examined education programmes through two theoretical lenses: the professional labour markets (local, international and markets of competing professions) and the professional milieu. In the professional milieu, we considered factors such as the multiple socioeconomic and political conditions, structural arrangements and professional and educational discourses that shape what it means to be a professional in a particular field, as well as what professional behaviour entails at a particular juncture in history.

Some of the key issues that have emerged in the professions study are:

- the rate of transformation in professions appears to be out of sync with the rate of changes in the education system;
- the 'feminisation' of enrolments has not translated into 'feminisation' of professions;
- the migration of professionals is of increasing concern, whether it is migration out of the profession, the sector (public to private) or the area (rural to urban), and/or emigration overseas;
- there is a need to recognise that professions are part of the global market and to plan accordingly; and
- there have been changes in South African curriculum and pedagogy following overseas trends towards problem-based learning. The question is whether they are effective.

Furthermore, the study found that the professions under investigation were facing major challenges in terms of the efficiency of throughput at further and higher education, while also meeting equity targets in terms of designated groups. The project has led to the publishing of four monographs.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*



## Critical research projects for the Department of Labour

The key research mandate from the Department of Labour (DoL) was to undertake applied research to measure the impact of labour and skills legislation on social processes in the labour market and economy. This included the extent to which workers acquired skills, unemployed youth were trained and employed, and designated groups benefitted from the Department of Labour's employment equity programmes.

The DoL research consortium project probably constituted the largest research initiative on labour market and skills development dynamics in the post-apartheid period since the release of the 1996 report on labour market by the International Labour Organisation (ILO).

These studies were groundbreaking in providing comprehensive impact assessments of key post-apartheid labour market legislation (such as the Basic Conditions of Employment Act, and the National Skills Development Act and Employment Equity Act) on equity and efficiency in the South African labour market.

Close to 50 researchers from the consortium were involved in the project and the project generated 45 research reports.

The *sector skills study* provided insightful analysis on the complexities of attaining alignment between the skills development strategies and micro-economic priorities in 14 key subsectors in the economy. The research reports commissioned for this study are listed in the research output section of this publication.

Another in the series, the *National Skills Survey 2007*, provided insight into progress made in the field of skills development. It investigated the propensity of private sector employers to train, the performance of the Sector Education and Training Authorities (SETAs), and the progress in training provision since the previous survey conducted in 2003.

Interestingly, the study showed that while the volume of training doubled, real expenditure on training has declined for small and medium-sized employers, when compared to 2003 expenditure.

The *scarce and critical skill study* contributed towards the development of a model for the identification and verification of vacancies and scarce skills in the economy, as well as for 12 critical occupations such as engineering and artisan trades. It concluded that there are definitely skill shortages in certain occupations and raised questions regarding the effect of affirmative action policies in dealing with apparent skills shortages.

The *multi-sector tracer study* on the impact of learnerships evaluated the external effectiveness of learnerships under the National Skills Development Strategy II (NSDS II). The key finding was that the learnership experience is not linear, and though it didn't benefit all, it benefited most learners. Those who completed their learnerships were more likely to have a positive labour market outcome, including finding employment.

The *employment equity sub-studies* provided insight into the rationale for the apparent lack of advancement of designated and historically disadvantaged groups in the labour market. One sub-study showed that while there had been important and positive shifts in the post-school qualifications profile of designated groups, this was highly differentiated. While the supply of African undergraduates often grew at the fastest rate, they continued to qualify in traditional study fields such as education but seldom in engineering and science. On the other hand, whites tended to qualify in business and engineering, which often resulted in their continued employment in scarce skill occupations.

Results from selected studies were cited by Minister of Labour Membathisi Mdladlana in his budget vote speech on 15 May 2008. The minister referred to the studies on progress towards employment equity targets, national

training rates (NSS 2008) and the impact of learnerships on employment: 'We are investing more in the education and training of our people and training more and more workers in accordance with NQF standards. Employers are spending two times more than what the levy system requires of them, and more employers are also claiming back from the system. These are the fruits of our labour which give us reason to celebrate (also reported on page 86).'

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## Employment scenarios

By creating employment scenarios, the HSRC can offer guidance for the formulation of policies aimed at halving unemployment and poverty.

The support for the scenario project was strengthened in 2008/09 by our hosting a number of presentations and workshops for stakeholder groups to debate findings. The research work has continually generated positive energy and momentum. Many top politicians in cabinet and Parliament are in the HSRC scenario group, including new Minister of Finance, Pravin Gordhan, and newly appointed speaker of Parliament, Max Sisulu.

The initial emphasis was on sources of employment creation. The next round of work, begun in 2008, focuses on labour market and poverty reduction questions, with emphasis on youth employability, household food security and migration.

The first scenarios were developed in 2007, but we have had to develop new scenarios due to the global economic crises in 2008/09. The new scenarios take into account the latest economic conditions and make it clear that special interventions will be needed to achieve the target of halving unemployment in South Africa by 2014.

While the scenario work continues, some of the successes so far include:

- Producing cutting-edge original research and thinking about the links between employment, growth and poverty.
- Setting expectations in respect of potential employment that could arise from key sectors of the economy. This has been particularly important in respect of both the private and public sectors.
- Drawing mental links between growth-inducing policies and employment creation, and helping policy makers understand the opportunity costs of their choices and of policy implementation delays.
- Identifying critical choices in the allocation of the national budget aimed at halving unemployment, to empower stakeholders to effectively engage in dialogue on resource trade-offs.

There has been continued success in drawing together top experts and decision-makers and in disseminating ideas. We have developed an innovative network model in scenario building that operates like a hub and spokes: it has a core employment scenarios group and various links to major stakeholder networks and decision-making forums.

The *HSRC Employment Scenarios* are generally regarded as major documents that need to be read in respect of South Africa's economic future.

*Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth*

## Employment scenarios and monitoring and evaluation

In partnership with the Department of Trade and Industry (dti), the HSRC has moved the employment scenarios into a second phase, focusing on monitoring and evaluating the development path.

We have identified three possible long-term paths leading to 2014 and 2024. The indicators help to show what path the economy is on and enable us to give a picture of future trends.



The research includes:

- Producing a new leading indicator of employment for South Africa.
- Structural path analysis that models the path through which investments impact on economic outcomes. In this project, we collaborated with experts from the University of Copenhagen.
- Identifying how employment responds to economic growth based on four developing country case studies, namely Argentina, Thailand, Chile and Brazil. This was prepared in partnership with experts at the University of Toronto.
- The 'productivity conundrum' whereby productivity is a key contributor to economic growth, dynamism and ultimately enables real wage growth and rising living standards. However, in the short run, productivity growth reduces the rate of employment growth relative to GDP. In the context of high unemployment, there may be trade-offs that need attention.
- The impact of the global economic crisis on employment and incomes in South Africa. This includes insights into strategies adopted by other developing countries and the impact on industrial sectors.

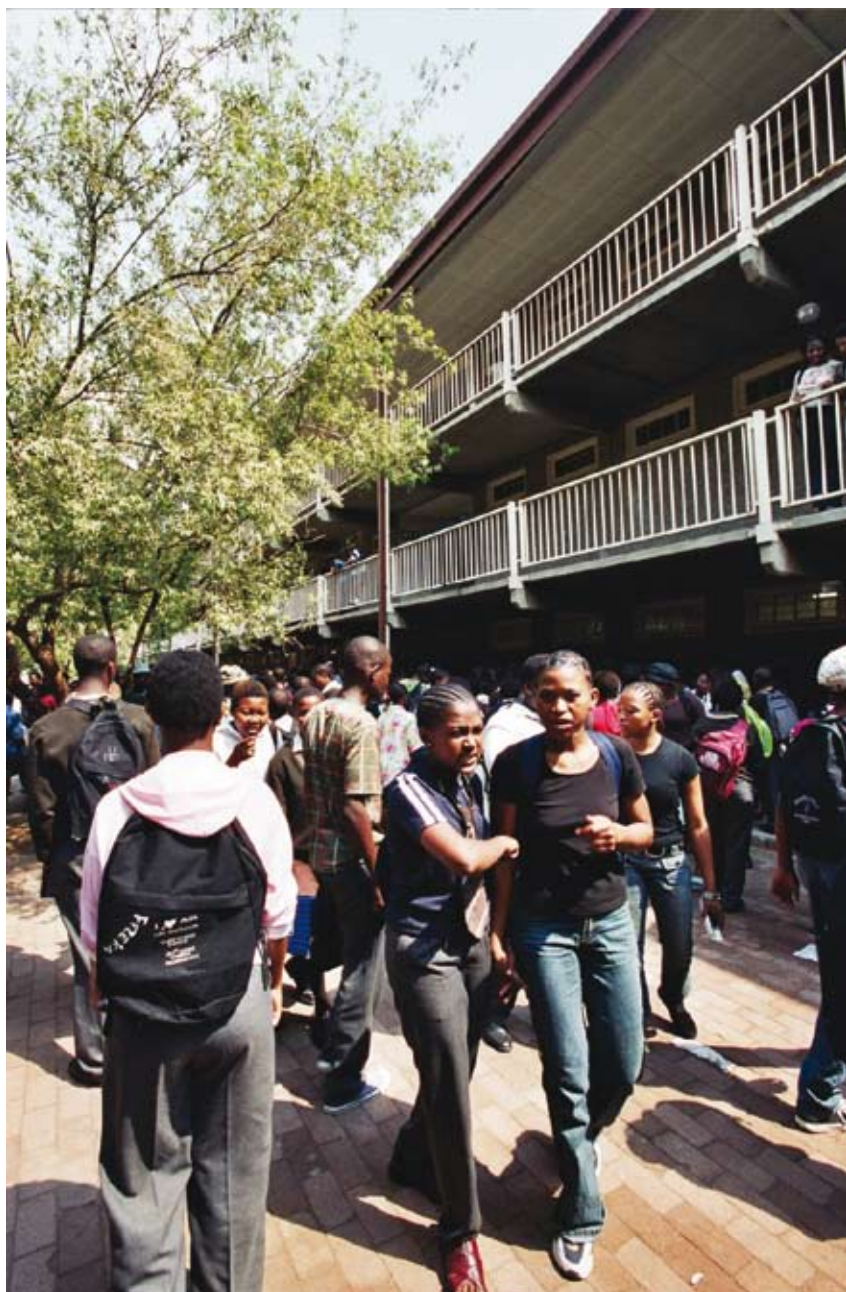
To fully realise the results of this work, the HSRC hopes to further develop these capabilities in 2009/10.

*Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth*

## Employment through procurement

In South Africa, where there is a high level of industrial concentration, small enterprises find it difficult to enter the business arena. The procurement by large corporations may be one of the main strategies to promote local economic development, small business and related employment opportunities.

The HSRC project involves promoting innovations in private procurement and supplier development.



It aims to identify innovations, work with implementing agents to test the innovations, and then share these findings with a knowledge network.

The Codes of Good Practice on Black Economic Empowerment issued under the Black Economic Empowerment Act and the sector transformation charters have provided strong incentives for companies to achieve specific procurement targets. However, many companies are not sure how to procure in order to achieve these targets and there is a need to develop the knowledge base on procurement approaches in this regard.

The project is still running and our project partners are the National Business Initiative, the WK Kellogg Foundation and the Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality.

*Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth*

## Enhancing the employability of youth

At present, school leavers have less than 50% chance of finding work before the age of 24, and even less so if they are black. This is true for matriculants and non-matriculants.

Approximately 500 000 learners leave school annually and every year a large percentage of them end up joining the group of long-term unemployed youth. Given the global economic crisis, the problem is likely to worsen and lead to further social and economic consequences.

To address the situation, the HSRC project focuses research on the majority of school leavers who are unlikely to go into tertiary education. The main concern is how to rapidly reduce the unemployment rate of school leavers entering the labour market over the coming years.

A series of research papers, funded by the Department of Trade and Industry and by the Second Economy project at TIPS/ComMark, have been produced to explore approaches related to the education system, post-school education, non-formal education, and improved entry level job opportunities in the public and private sectors.

The research papers were produced by a range of experts and debated in a series of workshops that drew in top education and labour market experts and key stakeholders involved in youth development, education, labour policy, job placements and the private sector. A number of proposals have also been developed so far.

Furthermore, the HSRC has signed a memorandum of understanding with the Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality whereby both parties agree to establish a centre of excellence on employment creation. A major area of work will involve identifying, implementing and testing scalable innovations to enhance the employability of school leavers.

*Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth*



# Capacity development

In 2003 the HSRC embarked on an internship programme. The programme has culminated in the launch of a new researcher development programme that commemorates the life and achievements of Es'kia Mphahlele, the international award-winning writer, quintessential teacher and tireless fighter for the revival of African consciousness.

Our initiatives have resulted in:

- Improving the capacity of HSRC researchers and in particular of black and disadvantaged researchers and scientists; and
- Developing capacity of researchers outside the HSRC realm, in the rest of the country and of the continent.

## Developing the capacity of HSRC researchers

The HSRC offers young scientists cutting-edge opportunities that are rarely available in similar organisations and aims at contributing to a broader transformation of the South African society by developing scientists who can take positions in the HSRC, or in similar research organisations, and assume leadership roles.

The new Human Sciences Research Council Act, 2008 (Act No 17 of 2008), which came into operation on 5 December 2008, serves as further inspiration for our organisation to continue building research capacity and infrastructure for the human sciences.

The financial support of the Department of Science and Technology provides an impetus to increase the numbers of trainees and create a sustainable programme. The continued support of our development partners also contributes to our increasing the number of young researchers-in-training.

Through our researcher trainee programme, the HSRC offers support at various levels, including master's degrees, PhDs and post-doctoral fellowships, and to bring new researchers into the science system. These strategic commitments cut across the work of the HSRC.

Agreements with the Department of Labour have provided specialised research capacity support for research interns while higher education institutions provide for shared capacity development.

During the 2008/09 budget year, the HSRC provided opportunities for 30 master's and 30 PhD interns under the mentorship of our most senior researchers and research managers. The organisation also nurtured ten post-doctoral fellows from South Africa and other parts of Africa.

During the last financial year, research interns either authored or co-authored eight peer-reviewed articles in professional journals and submitted another four for publication; authored or co-authored eight books or chapters in books, published four articles in non-peer reviewed journals, presented 20 conference papers, and contributed to 10 research reports.

*Policy Analysis and Capacity Enhancement (PACE) unit*

## Developing capacity beyond the HSRC

Various projects at the HSRC also include developing capacity beyond the organisation and beyond South Africa's borders.



In the project *Measuring service delivery in southern Africa* (SAT), research capacity was developed in four southern African countries through full partnership participation, commenting on drafts, editing and preparing for publication (more information under the theme Poverty Development, on page 59).

In the project on accelerating sustainable water service delivery in the Eastern Cape (reported on page 62), the Centre for Service Delivery has undertaken the social mobilisation of the community to prepare community structures to oversee and then manage the implementation of safe drinking water technology.

A task team was elected and trained to oversee decisions in relation to the appropriate technology to be used in the project, write a municipal community partnership agreement, and direct and implement the health promotion campaign.

*Centre for Service Delivery*

The elders of Mnxekazi village in the Eastern Cape at the public meeting held to elect a Community Task Team to implement the project on accelerating sustainable water delivery.

## Capacity in education quality

In a capacity building exercise aimed at educators working in the field of improving education quality, Dr Anil Kanjee was appointed by the Tshwane University of Technology as professor extraordinaire.

The programme will supervise students in a graduate programme that intends to foster the research and analytical capacity of education officials and policy makers; facilitate evidence-informed dialogue among people with a direct interest in education; increase the pool of experienced individuals working in the field of improving education quality, particularly black and disadvantaged researchers and practitioners; and develop an evidence base for projects, programmes and interventions to improve education quality in South Africa.

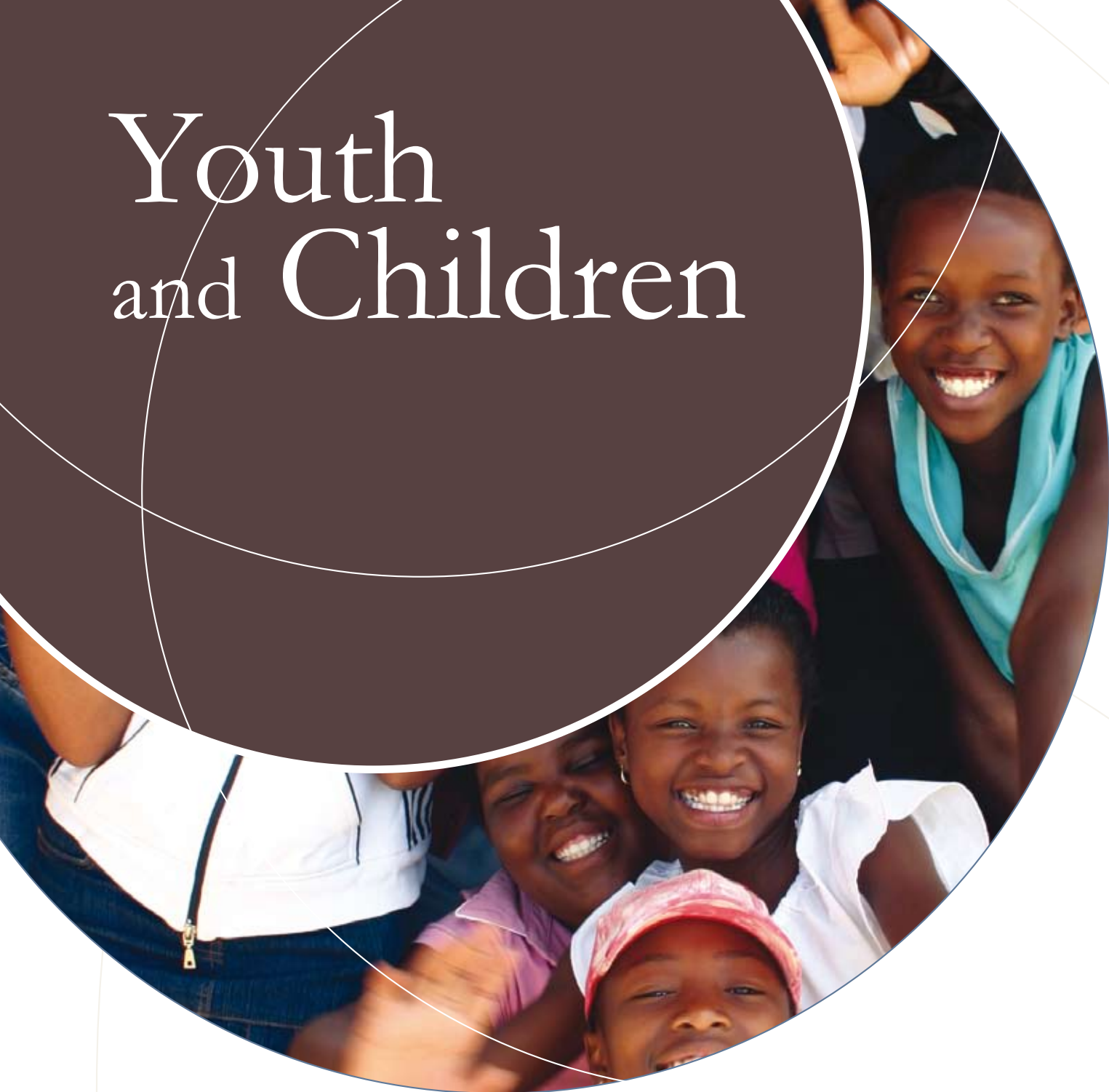
In line with an memorandum of understanding (MoU) signed between the HSRC and the Tshwane University of Technology, this programme will run for an initial period of five years, from 2009 to 2014.

*Centre for Education Quality Improvement*





# Youth and Children



We acknowledge the importance of  
youth and children

# Early childhood

HSRC studies on early childhood focus on data that demonstrates the importance of early childhood to individual and national development. We work tirelessly on developing and testing measures and interventions that contribute to the improvement of policy and programmes for early child development (ECD).

Our initiatives have resulted in:

- Identifying ways of overcoming obstacles to scale up the quality of ECD services to small children;
- Participating in a long-term study project (Birth to 20) to understand how the environment influences child and adolescent health and development; and
- Providing a set of recommendations on how childcare forums can better assist orphaned and vulnerable children.

## Scaling up the quality of ECD services to small children

Social development programmes offer the biggest opportunity to simultaneously create jobs and career paths for semi-skilled workers and to meet social delivery objectives. Over two-thirds of children in the 0-4 years age group live in poverty and are exposed to conditions which compromise their development.

The biggest service delivery gap, and therefore the main potential for job creation, lies in ECD (0-4 years of age) delivery. Estimates show that approximately 350 000 net new jobs could be created through this programme, which is

approximately 7% of the jobs needed to halve unemployment in South Africa.

Phase 1 of the HSRC programme analysed the state of ECD (children 0-4 years of age) so as to identify lessons learnt and challenges to be addressed to support scaling up. This phase has been completed.

Phase 2 focused on identifying and testing innovations in the approach to implementation that can enable a more rapid scaling up of quality services that improve child development.

In 2008/9, this project worked with the director-generals' Social Cluster aimed at scoping baseline information available on ECD for children under five. The research covers quality indicators, programme governance, budgeting, institutional delivery models and international case studies. The work is funded by the HSRC, the WK Kellogg Foundation and the Department of Education.

In another study, the HSRC is estimating the cost of different models of centre-based ECD. Some of the findings have already been presented at a workshop for key stakeholders.

The work offers key insights into associated costs, how ECD centres raise funding, and the conditions under which they operate. It also offers a financial model to be used for public



budgeting and for centre budgeting. This ongoing study is funded by the Second Economy Project at TIPS/ComMark.

Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth

## Birth to Twenty

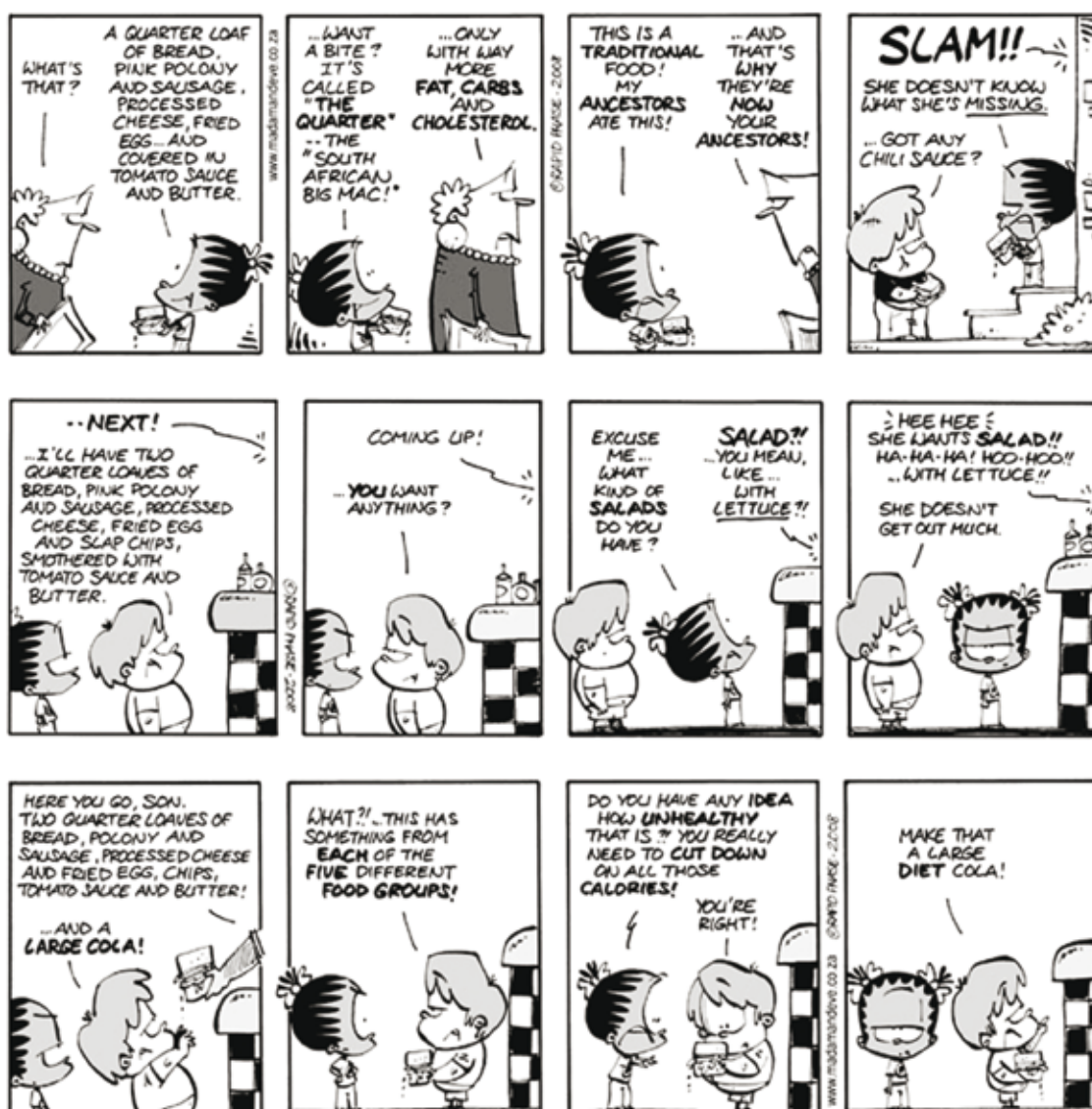
The Birth to Twenty (Bt20) study began in early 1990 when women in their third trimester of pregnancy in Soweto and Johannesburg were recruited into a long-term birth cohort study of children's health and wellbeing.

More than 2 300 families (74% of the original cohort) have been tracked for almost 19 years

and interviewed twice a year, every year, for the last five years.

A widely publicised set of findings regarding fast-food consumption among 17-year-olds is among the latest findings.

In a Bt20 sub-sample of 655 young people, it was found that most boys and girls ate fast foods several times a week. The most popular food is an *ikota*, followed by fried chips and *vetkoek*. A typical *ikota* consists of a quarter loaf of white bread, chips, a slice of cheese, Russian or Vienna sausages, polony, fried egg and sauces. *Ikota*, containing high amounts of fat, protein, carbohydrate and salt, contributes about 5 185 kJ



Madam & Eve, The Star, 20, 21 and 22 October, aptly illustrates the findings of the Birth to Twenty study

of the average 10 000kJ estimated daily energy requirement of a 17-year-old.

Starting five years ago, the programme began to enrol the children of Bt20 children, when the first Bt20 participant gave birth to her baby at the age of 14 years. Called 3G (the third generation), this new cohort of children is being enrolled into an intensive study of early growth as a determinant of adult health and wellbeing.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development (CYFSD) programme*

## Long-term consequences of poor health in early childhood

The Consortium on Health Orientated Research in Transitioning Societies (COHORTS) is a joint project to pool the data from the five largest birth cohort studies in low- and middle-income countries. The studies are based in Pelotas in Brazil, Guatemala, Cebu in the Philippines, New Delhi in India and our local Birth to 20 study.

A paper from the group, outlining the long-term consequences of poor growth in the first two years of childhood as a determinant of adult wellbeing and human capital development, was published in the leading medical journal *The Lancet's* special issue on Maternal and Child Under-nutrition.

Among others, the findings suggest that the effect of under nutrition spans at least three generations as suggested by the small but significant association between grandmothers' height and birth weight of children born to women from the five cohorts.

Birth to Twenty and COHORTS is funded principally by the Wellcome Trust.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*

## A national audit of childcare forums

In 2008, the HSRC and EduAction were commissioned and funded by the National Department of Social Development and the United Nations Children's Fund to conduct a national audit of childcare forums (CCFs).

The audit aimed to provide a comprehensive picture of these community-based structures facilitating access of vulnerable children to services in the community.

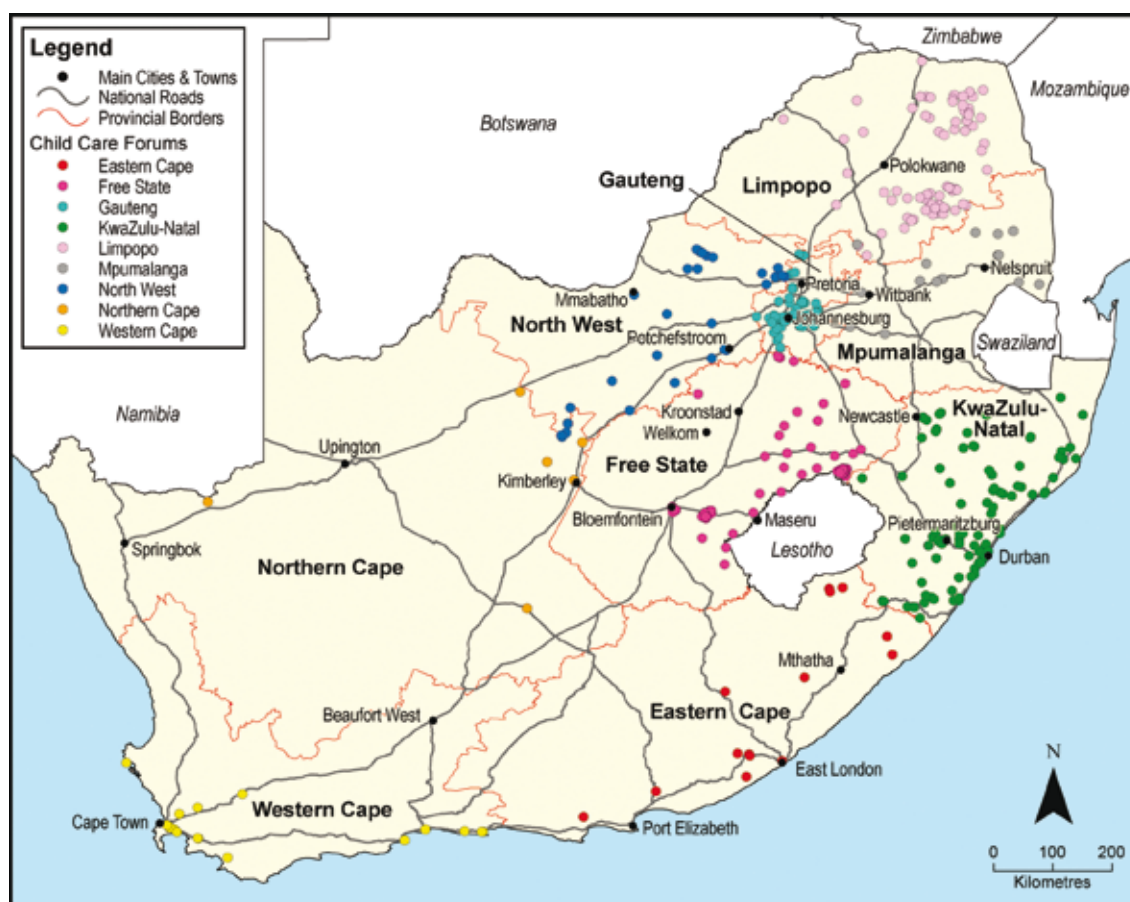
The audit involved the geographical location and distribution of CCFs, the range and reach of their services, the categories of children they provided services to, their human resource capacity and constraints, service providers they worked closely with, and the problems they encountered. The information was to broadly inform the strengthening and scaling up of community-based responses.

A total of 400 CCFs were visited and mapped across the country, the majority of which were found to be located in the provinces of KwaZulu-Natal (99), Limpopo (76), Free State (75) and Gauteng (63). Figure 3 shows that CCFs were more evenly distributed in KwaZulu-Natal than in other provinces, where they tended to be clustered in certain areas.

The audit and the database of CCFs will provide relevant role players with baseline and comprehensive information on community-based groups and organisations that are identifying and assisting orphaned and vulnerable children across South Africa. It can be used to target provinces and areas where CCF activity was found to be low, for instance, in the Eastern Cape, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West and Western Cape.



Figure 3: Geographical location and distribution of CCFs in South Africa



According to the study, CCFs facilitate and provide much needed services (see Table 4), particularly where the more formal services are lacking. Services facilitated and provided by CCFs shed light on the challenges that communities face such as poverty, AIDS and poor access to services.

Table 4: Services facilitated and provided by CCFs

Services facilitated	N	%	Services provided	N	%
Grant access	356	89,0	Home visits	379	94,8
Service access	323	80,8	Feeding scheme	315	78,8
Treatment access	246	61,5	Education support	285	71,3
Psychosocial support	137	34,2	Sports and physical activities	208	52,0
Fostering	122	30,5	Psychosocial support	179	44,8
Feeding scheme	113	28,3	Home-based care	177	44,2
Child protection	100	25,0	Trauma counselling	137	34,2
Religious orientation	80	20,0	Child protection	125	31,2

The majority (95,1%) of child beneficiaries visited indicated they were happy with the services they were receiving from CCFs, and they seemed to have used CCFs as safe spaces to hang out.

The total number of child beneficiaries reached by the 400 CCFs (189 191) seemed small when

seen in countrywide context where children in many communities are highly affected by the co-occurring crises of the AIDS epidemic and poverty. It seems that the level of community-based services needs to be scaled-up intensively.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*

## Focus on the youth

Research on youth development provides the evidence-base for an integrated and coherent response to the needs of the young through policies and programmes. Studies are conducted on the resources and assets of youth, including their demographic presence, capacity to cope with rapid change, their openness to the future, as well as the challenges facing them. These include quality work-oriented education, employment, civic participation, and health and well-being.

Our initiatives have resulted in:

- Compiling a policy framework on prevention, early intervention, protection and reintegration of children living and working on the streets; and
- Assessing how peer-led programmes for orphaned and vulnerable children can fill the gap between adult support and formal educational interventions.



### Children living and working on the streets

Commissioned by the Department of Social Development's sub-directorate for street children, the HSRC conducted a desktop review and compiled a draft policy framework for children living and working on the streets.

The purpose of the policy framework is to provide different stakeholders at national, provincial, and local levels with a guideline to develop their own policies for the management of children living and working on the streets.

We reviewed existing policies, laws, regulations, programmes and activities related to the protection, empowerment, and care of children

at risk for the violation of their rights.

The final policy framework recommends key strategies on prevention, early intervention, protection and reintegration. Each strategy sets out a broad range of recommended actions to guide and assist stakeholders in formulating and implementing responses to children living and working on the streets. The framework is based on the development approach of the rights-based framework of the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child.



Mechanisms for coordinating, implementing, monitoring and evaluating the key recommendations of the policy framework are outlined, as well as a discussion of necessary resource commitments.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*

## Peer-led groups for orphaned and vulnerable children in South Africa

Working with the Harvard School of Public Health, the overall purpose of this study was to assess the feasibility and impact of a peer-led socioeducational support group for poverty-stricken orphaned and vulnerable children in the 10-13 year-old group.

A peer approach attempts to rethink how psychosocial supports might be made available to

these children in the growing absence of parents and primary caregivers. The primary impact of the programme on children in this situation was measured, as well as the impact it had on peer educators between 15 and 19 years old, and on implementing organisations.

The HSRC study found that while peer education seems to be an appropriate health promoting strategy when working with orphaned and vulnerable children, peer educators face practical obstacles (such as school work and transport) and struggle to implement interactive materials conducive to social learning. If these areas can be attended to, peer-led programmes such as the one evaluated in this study, can go a long way towards filling the gap between adult support and formal educational interventions.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*

# Collaboration in Africa

ACROSS THE CONTINENT THE HSRC IS INVOLVED IN 12 KEY PROJECTS, IN 34 COUNTRIES, TOUCHING MILLIONS OF LIVES.

## GOVERNANCE AND SOCIETY

- ▲ GOVERNANCE, HIV/AIDS AND NATURAL RESOURCES MANAGEMENT PROJECT:  
ZIMBABWE, MALAWI, MAURITIUS, TANZANIA, NAMIBIA, BOTSWANA, ANGOLA, CONGO, SWAZILAND, MOZAMBIQUE.
- IDENTITY AND CITIZEN PROJECT:  
ANGOLA, IVORY COAST, DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF CONGO, RWANDA, SUDAN, KENYA, TANZANIA AND ZIMBABWE, SOUTH AFRICA.
- ◀ SOUTH AFRICA'S ROLE IN AFRICA PROJECT:  
ETHIOPIA, SENEGAL, ZIMBABWE, KENYA, NIGERIA, ZAMBIA, DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF THE CONGO, SOUTH AFRICA.
- MIGRATION, CITIZENSHIP AND IDENTITY IN AFRICA PROJECT:  
MOZAMBIQUE, SIERRA LEONE, KENYA, RWANDA, ZIMBABWE, SOUTH AFRICA, EGYPT, TANZANIA.
- ▶ GOING TO SCALE PROJECT:  
ZAMBIA, MALAWI, ETHIOPIA, SOUTH AFRICA.

## YOUTH AND CHILDREN

- ▲ STRENGTHENING FAMILIES PROJECT (UNDER JOINT LEARNING INITIATIVE ON CHILDREN AND HIV/AIDS):  
MALAWI, COTE D'IVOIRE, SOUTH AFRICA.
- STRATEGY FOR THE CARE OF ORPHANS AND VULNERABLE CHILDREN:  
SOUTH AFRICA, BOTSWANA, ZIMBABWE, LESOTHO, SWAZILAND, MOZAMBIQUE.

## EDUCATION AND SCIENCE

- ▲ AFRICA'S SOCIAL ACCOUNTABILITY PROFILE STUDY (ANSA-AFRICA):  
EGYPT, KENYA, MALAWI, MOZAMBIQUE, SENEGAL, TANZANIA, TOGO.
- THE DEVELOPMENTAL ROLE OF UNIVERSITIES IN THE SOUTH STUDY:  
UGANDA, NIGERIA.

## HIV AND AIDS

- ▲ SOCIAL ASPECTS OF HIV/AIDS AND HEALTH RESEARCH ALLIANCE (SAHARA):  
MAURITANIA, GAMBIA, MALI, SENEGAL, BURKINA FASO, GUINEA BISSAU, IVORY COAST, BENIN, NIGERIA, GHANA, CAMEROON, CONGO, CENTRAL AFRICAN REPUBLIC, DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF CONGO, RWANDA, BURUNDI, SUDAN, ETHIOPIA, UGANDA, KENYA, TANZANIA, SOMALIA, ZIMBABWE, BOTSWANA, SWAZILAND, LESOTHO, SOUTH AFRICA.
- NATIONAL HIV PREVALENCE AND BEHAVIOURAL RISK HOUSEHOLD SURVEYS (SAHARA):  
BOTSWANA, LESOTHO, MOZAMBIQUE, SWAZILAND.

## POVERTY

- ▲ MENTAL HEALTH AND POVERTY PROJECT:  
GHANA, UGANDA, ZAMBIA, SOUTH AFRICA.





# Demonstration Projects and Networks

## Demonstrating evidence-based interventions

South Africa has major social problems that require implementation of evidence-based interventions. To assist policy-makers and other decision-makers in testing the effectiveness of proposed interventions in communities, the HSRC embarked on an approach that entails demonstrating via pilot projects that a concept is working in a research setting. If successful, the demonstration projects are implemented, monitored and evaluated, with the eventual aim of assisting government in scaling up the project to even larger areas.



### Project Accept shifts access

Project Accept, a large scale, four-country community randomised trial, funded by the US National Institutes of Mental Health, is completing almost three years of intervention by delivering mobile voluntary counselling and testing services, coupled with community mobilisation and post-test psychosocial support to communities in a rural community just outside Pietermaritzburg.

Close to 10 000 people in four intervention communities have been tested so far. Significantly, almost 77% of those we have tested are between the ages of 16 and 32 years of age, with 47% being male and 53% female. These findings are shown in Table 5 below and demonstrate an important shift in access by men and young people to counselling and HIV testing.

Figure 4: Characteristics of testers in Project Accept

CLIENT TESTING OUTCOMES

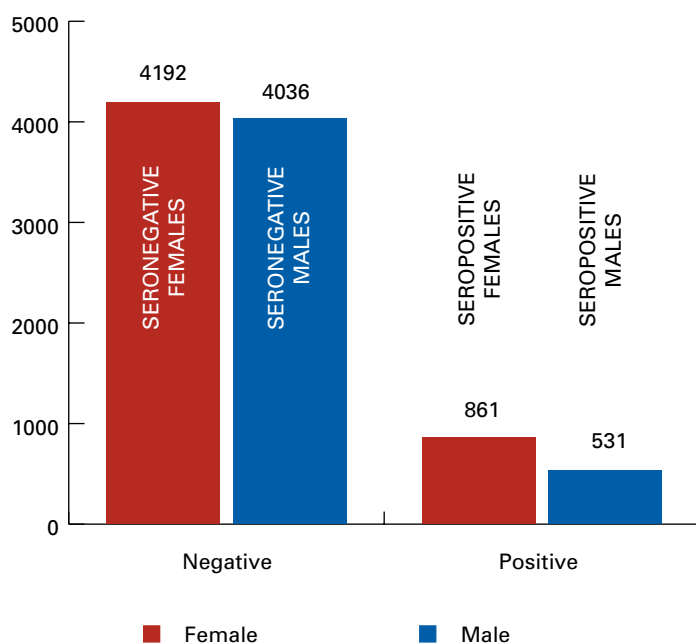


Table 5: Characteristics of testers in Project Accept

<b>CLIENTS TESTED</b>		<b>9620</b>
Male	4567	47,47%
Female	5053	52,53%
<b>SEROSTATUS</b>		
Positive	1392	14,47%
Negative	8228	85,53%
<b>AGE DISTRIBUTION</b>		
Age: 16-17	2425	25,21%
Age: 18-32	4950	51,46%
Age: 33-55	1767	18,37%
Age: 56 and over	474	4,93%
<b>TESTER MEDIAN AGE</b>		<b>21</b>

We are approaching the assessment phase of the study. The study outcomes are to test whether there are fewer new infections in our intervention communities and if these communities are characterised by greater disclosure, openness, more frequent discussions about HIV and AIDS, and a reduction in risk behaviours, stigmatising beliefs and discriminatory attitudes towards those living with HIV/AIDS.

Even ahead of this important outcome data, our process level data suggests that we are

encouraging and reaching a critical mass of young people and men to HIV testing – groups who are typically hard to reach through traditional health services. This represents a significant achievement given the prevention and treatment goals of the AIDS programme in South Africa. The project is also reported under the 'Health' theme on page 47.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*

## Mentoring for HIV-positive mothers

Project *Masihambisane* (meaning, 'let's walk together') is a randomised clinic trial to test the effectiveness of health information materials and a clinic-based peer-support and mentoring intervention to improve the health and wellbeing of HIV-positive mothers and their babies during pregnancy and the early post-partum period. This study is funded by the National Institute of Health (NIH).

One of the key intervention messages emphasised by our study is learning how to negotiate disclosure of one's newly learnt HIV status. Data from the current sample suggests that about 40% of the women (239 of 565) feel that they are able to tell someone their HIV status. The analysis shows that more women disclose to their partners than to any other group of people, followed by other family members, and mothers. Fathers and spiritual leaders are two of the least likely groups of people to whom pregnant women will disclose their HIV status.

Despite the reported fear involved in disclosing one's HIV status, the study showed that independent of whom pregnant women disclose to, the response they receive is almost always overwhelmingly positive.

In the nine months since data collection began in this project, close to 600 HIV-positive pregnant women have enrolled in the study. During this time, an active community advisory board (CAB) consisting of 20 community members has been constituted. Regular meetings are held with this body and other implementation partners. A website has been set up to keep all CAB members as well as other key stakeholders abreast of the latest project news and activities. The website also functions as an internal project management system tool.

Project *Masihambisane* is roughly one third of the way through enrolment and three years away from completion. This project is also reported under the 'Health' theme on page 47.

*Child, Youth, Family and Social Development programme*

## Acceleration of service delivery in the Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality

The aim of this project is to conduct research that could lead to interventions through pilot demonstrations that will help accelerate service delivery in the Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality.

The idea is to build a more effective delivery system in the municipality through interventions that combine better planning, training and implementation.

Even at an early stage, work on the project has fed into the municipality's regional spatial development framework (RSDF) process. As such, it is having a considerable impact on what would constitute an appropriate regional development model for Tshwane.

Individuals from key stakeholder grouping such as government departments, civil society and research institutions serve as a crucial link between research, development and the adoption of models and innovation arising from the research.

The project has important spin-offs, with the municipality constantly seeking the advice and input of the HSRC as its research partner. These include inputs into the executive mayor's 2008 state of the city address, and detailed commentary on the Tshwane Municipality's indigent strategy.

Insights gained from this project on how to improve their delivery systems, will prove instructive in addressing the country's service delivery challenges.

This project is also reported under the "Poverty" theme on page 61.

*Centre for Service Delivery*



## Accelerating sustainable water service delivery in the Eastern Cape

In this demonstration project, the HSRC is acting as project manager and works in partnership with the Council for Science and Industrial Research (CSIR) to implement rural water schemes in the Eastern Cape. The project explores the relation between the 'hard' and 'soft' sciences of project implementation in the uncertain conditions of deep rural areas.

Although service delivery is the outcome of a complex, 'messy' delivery system, this project is designed to produce concrete results to accelerate safe drinking water to poor communities.

At this early stage of the project, various institutions and networks have been mobilised to prioritise implementation, including the departments of Water and Forestry, Science and Technology, Provincial and Local Government, the South African Local Government Association, Umgeni Water, the Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality, the Development Bank of Southern Africa, the Independent Development Trust, the Water Research Commission, and the Amathole and OR Tambo District Municipalities.

This project is also included under the 'Poverty' theme on page 62.

*Centre for Service Delivery*

## Preliminary socioeconomic assessment of communal water

A German-South African demonstration project, in partnership with the Communal Water House, aims to improve the lives of citizens in poor communities via advanced water treatment technologies, water recycling and sanitation.

The project was initiated in Jansenville in the Eastern Cape and is widely regarded as one of the most innovative interventions in providing poor people with access to safe water and washing facilities.



A preliminary report has been widely circulated and an assessment of the goals of improving personal hygiene, health and wellbeing of the community, is ensuing. The National Research Foundation has awarded a grant to facilitate workshops and scientific exchange on this project.

*Centre for Service Delivery*

Councillor Nqukhwe points to the turbid waters of the Mzimvubu River and indicates the height and the long distances between houses and water in Mnxekazi, Eastern Cape.

A woman in the Mnxekazi village, Eastern Cape, scoops dirty water from the Umzimvubu River



# Networks increase the relevance of our work

The introduction of implementation networks as part of research planning is an important development at the HSRC.

By networking closely with strategic partners, we aim to increase the relevance, utilisation and potential impact of human and social science research. Nearly all projects mentioned in this annual report have resulted in strong networks with partners and mutually benefiting relationships with government departments, government agencies, donors and funders, international development agencies, universities, and NGOs.

In this section we highlight some of the projects where implementation networks were part of the success formula.

## The Department of Labour scarce and critical skills research projects

At various levels of this research project, also reported on page 67, staff of the Department of Labour and other stakeholders participated in the formulation and design of the research, its methodologies and instruments; and they provided feedback on the implementation of research fieldwork, and commented on draft research findings.

The key processes were implemented at a number of levels:

- A steering committee consisting of the senior staff of the Department of Labour (DoL) and representatives of the HSRC, the Development Policy Research Unit (DPRU) at the University of Cape Town, and the Sociology of Work Programme (SWOP) at the University of the Witwatersrand provided high-level oversight and determined the general research direction.
- Researchers from DoL, the HSRC, DPRU and SWOP regularly met to discuss progress on project activities, consider feedback and assess changes to research design. Project leaders submitted six detailed quarterly reports over the project period. Researchers also met with other

stakeholders, such as Sector Education and Training Authorities (SETAs) and the Commission for Employment Equity CEE to plan the design of the studies.

The design, implementation and delivery of project outcomes were highly dependent on the quality of collaboration among government officials, the HSRC and university researchers. This was a highly successful process, largely mediated by a core of senior research scientists heading up discrete sections of the overall research programme.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## Evaluation of literacy teaching in the Limpopo province

A highlight of our research on literacy in the Limpopo province in 2007/08, was our involvement in wider policy implementation networks. The development of the research on literacy included the Department of Education in the Limpopo Province, the funding agency, and the research organisation in partnership with a local university.

Additional representatives such as academics, the national language board, the national publishers

association, labour, and provincial representatives from national school governing body associations added further value to the project.

We found that sense of ownership, accountability, smooth execution of logistics, and successful implementation, sustainability and continuity are but some of the benefits of going about research the networking way (also reported on page 36).

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## Western Cape provincial microeconomic development strategy

The micro-economic development strategy (MEDS) aims to advance the Western Cape provincial government's goals of shared growth and higher job creation. HSRC researcher Dr Jo Lorentzen has been involved in the MEDS since 2005 when he was first appointed as one of four members of the MEDS oversight committee that advises senior officials in the Department of Economic Development and Tourism. The committee also supervises sectoral research outsourced by the department to external consultants.

Every year the committee compiles a synthesis report which discusses the challenges of Western Cape industrial policy in its national and global context, and reflects on the results of the commissioned research in public dissemination events.

For the 2008 version of the MEDS, the departmental leadership and the committee agreed to review what had been achieved to date. Members of the committee engaged with both senior and junior staff to compare the original recommendations advanced in the various synthesis reports with what departmental officials had actually been implementing over the years. This exercise revealed some gaps in implementation, which the parties then discussed in order to identify solutions. In turn, this brainstorming informed and will continue informing departmental strategies for the future.

The Western Cape provincial government funds the MEDS. Members of the implementation network include the organising committee, departmental officials, and representatives of industry that manage the respective sector associations.

*Education, Science and Skills Development programme*

## International advisory panel for quality education

The Centre for Education Quality Improvement has appointed an international advisory panel comprising regional and international policy analysis, researchers, academic, and practitioners from diverse regions and organisations. They provide advice in organising and improving the research activities of our Centre for Education Quality Improvement (CEQI).

*Centre for Education Quality Improvement*

## The Affiliated Network for Social Accountability in Africa

Our Democracy and Governance (D & G) programme has been responsible for ensuring the implementation and coordination of the HSRC's custodianship of the Affiliated Network for Social Accountability in Africa (ANSA-Africa).

The project - a joint initiative of the HSRC and the World Bank - aims to become a leading African advocate of citizen involvement in demand-side governance initiatives.

Members of the Affiliated Network for Social Accountability in Africa (ANSA-Africa), a joint initiative between the HSRC and the World Bank, listen to a presentation at a conference on *Social accountability in fragile and post-conflict states*, held in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia on 19-20 May 2008.



ANSA-Africa links African civil society and community groups across the continent to support and implement initiatives that focus on citizen involvement. In turn, partners forge their own regional and local associations to implement social accountability initiatives and expand cadres of knowledge.

Through its network, ANSA-Africa works in three main ways:

- Support social accountability initiatives and programmes by providing technical and leveraged financial assistance for the design, implementation and evaluation of quality social accountability initiatives. Through collaboration, the network transmits effective tools and incubates innovative new approaches.
- Promote capacity development through training and skill building to encourage the use and adaptation of means for citizens to demand accountability from governance, delivered through a regional approach. ANSA, through its partners, will design and deliver training programmes across Africa.
- Undertake research and dissemination to apply creativity and rigor to assessing, refining and developing social accountability tools and innovative electronic means to promote wide access to knowledge.

Since inception, the HSRC has overseen the establishment and management of the network's core agenda, objectives and networking activities. More information is available at [www.ansa-africa.net](http://www.ansa-africa.net).

*Democracy and Governance programme*

## Expert review panel for HIV surveys

Since inception, the national HIV prevalence, incidence and communication surveys (2002, 2005 and 2008) engaged a review panel consisting of renowned South African experts on HIV research and experts from key stakeholder groups.

The panel advises the core research team during the development phase of the project proposal to the stage where they are requested to provide feedback on the penultimate draft of the main reports.

Due to its success, this practice has now been adopted for all large-scale studies that our Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health (SAHA) research programme undertakes. The practice is particularly valuable in assisting SAHA to develop practical recommendations for potential users of the information contained in the reports.

*Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health programme*

## Networking in the southern African region

SAHA has also been actively participating in regional initiatives in southern Africa by working closely together with the SADC HIV/AIDS unit and the UNAIDS regional support team for East and southern Africa through the SAHARA (Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS Research Alliance) network.

SAHARA is an alliance of partners established to conduct, support and use social sciences research to prevent the further spread of HIV and to mitigate the impact of its devastation in South Africa, the SADC region and sub-Saharan Africa.

SAHARA serves as a vehicle for facilitating the sharing of research expertise and knowledge, and for conducting multi-site, multi-county research projects that are exploratory, cross-sectional, comparative or intervention-based.

Its explicit aim is to generate new social science evidence for the prevention, care and mitigation of the impact of the HIV/AIDS epidemic on individuals, families and communities. For more information, view [www.sahara.org.za](http://www.sahara.org.za).

*Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health programme*



# our Users and Funders

AIDS Foundation of South Africa  
Ambassade van het Koninkrijk der Nederlanden  
Bernard Van Leer Foundation  
Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation  
Botswana Network of Aids Service Organizations  
British High Commission  
Canadian High Commission  
Canadian International Development Agency  
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention  
Centre for Education Policy Development  
Centre for the Study of Violence and Reconciliation  
Charles Stewart Mott Foundation  
City of Tshwane  
Columbia University  
ComMark Trust  
Conflict and Governance Facility  
Cooperative for Assistance and Relief Everywhere  
Council for Scientific and Industrial Research  
Deloitte Consulting  
Department for International Development  
Department of Arts and Culture  
Department of Education  
Department of Foreign Affairs  
Department of Justice and Constitutional Development  
Department of Labour  
Department of Minerals and Energy  
Department of Public Service and Administration  
Department of Science and Technology  
Department of Social Development  
Department of Social Development (Provincial Government of the Western Cape)  
Department of The Premier - Free State Province Consultative Council  
Department of Trade and Industry  
Department of Transport  
Development Bank of Southern Africa  
Durban Lesbian & Gay Community & Health Centre  
Early Learning Resource Unit  
Eastern Cape Department of Health  
Eastern Cape Socio-Economic Consultative Council  
ECORYS Nederland BV  
Emseni Traditional Healers Trust  
European Union  
Ford Foundation  
François-Xavier Bagnoud International  
Friedrich Ebert Stiftung  
Gauteng Department of Education Gauteng Provincial Government  
Gauteng Provincial Government  
German Technical Cooperation  
Global Network of People Living With HIV/AIDS  
Harvard School of Public Health  
Health Systems Trust  
Heinrich Böll Foundation  
Hifab International Ab  
HLSP (Ltd)  
Humanist Institute for Co-operation with Developing Countries  
Independent Development Trust  
Independent Electoral Commission  
International Development Research Centre  
International Labour Organization  
International Water Management Institute  
JET Education Services  
JUB Consulting Services Cc  
Kaiser Foundation Research Institute  
Konrad Adenauer Foundation  
KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Government  
Limpopo Provincial Department of Education  
London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine  
Mafunze Tribal Authority  
Manufacturing, Engineering and Related Services Sector Education Training Authority

Medical Research Council  
 Ministerie van Buitenlandse Zaken  
 Mpumuza Tribal Authority  
 Nadi Tribal Authority  
 National Development Agency  
 National Heritage Council  
 National Institute of Mental Health  
 National Institutes of Health  
 National Prosecuting Authority  
 National Research Foundation  
 National Treasury  
 Northern Cape Provincial Dept of Sport, Arts &  
 Culture  
 Nxamalala Tribal Authority  
 Office of the Public Service Commission  
 Pennsylvania State University  
 Pricewaterhouse Coopers  
 Programme for Land And Agrarian Studies  
 Provincial Government of the Western Cape  
 Research Surveys  
 Resources Aimed at the Prevention of Child  
 Abuse and Neglect  
 Rockefeller Brothers Fund  
 Royal Danish Embassy  
 Royal Netherlands Embassy  
 Save the Children Sweden Training Authority  
 Shuttleworth Foundation  
 Sondelani Clinic  
 South African Agency for Science and Technology  
 Advancement  
 South African Democracy Education Trust  
 South African Red Cross Society  
 Southern Africa Regional Universities Association  
 Southern Africa Trust  
 Spencer Foundation  
 University of Stellenbosch  
 Swiss Agency for Development and Cooperation  
 Télug : l'université à distance de l'UQÀM  
 Thabo Mbeki Development Trust for Disabled  
 People  
 The Atlantic Philanthropies  
 The DG Murray Trust  
 The Presidency  
 The World Bank  
 Tibotec  
 Trade and Industrial Policy Strategies  
 Training and resources in early education  
 Turner & Townsend Management Solutions  
 United Nations  
 United Nations Children's Fund  
 United Nations Development Programme  
 United Nations Economic And Social Commission  
 For Asia And the Pacific  
 University of California  
 University of Cape Town  
 University of Connecticut  
 University of Fort Hare  
 University of KwaZulu-Natal  
 University of Oxford  
 University of Stellenbosch  
 University of Pretoria  
 Volunteer and Service Enquiry Southern Africa  
 Wellcome Trust  
 WK Kellogg Foundation  
 World Aids Campaign  
 World Conservation Union  
 World Health Organization

# HSRC Seminars and Conferences

## International conferences

**4 to 6 June 2008** | *Conference on the potentialities for and challenges of constructing a democratic developmental state in South Africa* | HSRC Policy Analysis Unit | Cradle of Humankind, Johannesburg, SA.

**27 to 28 November 2008** | *The international symposium on knowledge and transformation, social and human sciences in Africa* | joint symposium hosted by HSRC, ISSC, DST, AISA, NRF, DAC, BASA, CODESRIA, ASSAF | Stellenbosch, South Africa.

## National conferences

**19 to 21 May 2008** | *Poverty indicators & social innovation for poverty reduction* | DST in conjunction with HSRC Policy Analysis Unit | Boksburg, South Africa.

## Seminars and public lectures<sup>1</sup>

**6 March 2008** | *HIV testing and HIV status in South Africa. MSM and WSW: results from a community-based study* | Dr Theo Stanford, Associate Professor, Columbia University, New York.

**10 March 2008** | *The role of media in a democracy* | Claire McCaffery Griffin, vice president for education programmes, Bill of Rights Institute, USA.

**11 March 2008** | *Citizen report cards - key to monitoring service delivery in South Africa* | Craig Schwabe, chief research specialist, Knowledge Systems, HSRC.

**10 April 2008** | *Impacting politics with the humanities: the cases of Mapuche Women's poetry writing* | Soledad Falabella Luco, Associate Professor, University of Diego Portales, Chile.

**13 May 2008** | *Being good in a bad world: Social representations of morality among South African township youth* | Dr Sharlene Swartz, postdoctoral fellow in the HSRC Children, Youth, Family and Social Development research programme.

**24 June 2008** | *The economy of peace in Israel-Palestine: A public forum with visiting scholars from the Palestinian West Bank* | chaired by Dr Virginia Tilley, chief research specialist, Democracy and Governance research programme, HSRC.

**15 July 2008** | *Transnational teacher migration in South Africa: A Rising Tide?* | Dr Sadhna Manik, University of KZN; Anthony Egbers, Global Education; and Professor Mary Metcalfe, University of Witwatersrand

**6 August 2008** | *14 years of National Women's Days: progress or platitudes?* | Moderated by Ferial Haffajee, editor, Mail & Guardian. Speakers: Pregs Govender, independent writer and activist; Dr Pumla Dineo Gqola, Professor of Literature, Wits; Dr Claudia Mitchell, Professor of Education, McGill; Sello Hatang, South African Human Rights Commission; Dr Lulama Makhubela, Development Bank of South Africa.

**12 August 2008** | *The OECD review of South Africa's national system of innovation – a summary of social scientific perspective one year later* | Julien Rumbelow, Knowledge Systems, HSRC.

**19 August 2008** | *Personal finance for women* | Lyndylle Graham, wealth coach, Standard Bank Financial Consultancy; Lynn van Heerden, Your Onsite Solutions Consultant.

**22 August 2008** | *Flexible modelling of age-dependent infectious disease transmission rates using seroprevalence data in combination with social contact data* | Professor Marc Aerts, Department of Biostatistics, Universiteit Hasselt, Belgium.

1. All seminars were held at the video-conferencing centres of the HSRC in Pretoria, Cape Town and Durban, except where mentioned differently

**16 September 2008** | *Risk factors to child maltreatment and limitations in statutory care mechanisms: Children's courts in the Western Cape* | Dr Mokhantšo Makoe with co-investigators Prof Andy Dawes and Dr Cathy Ward, HSRC.

**23 September 2008** | *Xenophobic or negrophobic attacks: Mobs of hate: A photojournalist's account of the xenophobic violence* | James Oatway, senior photographer, Sunday Times newspaper; and Dr Zonke Majodina, deputy chairperson, South African Human Rights Commission.

**29 September 2008** | *Universal action now! Reflections on the XXII International AIDS Conference and lessons for SA* | Professor Leickness Simbayi, Professor Thomas Rehle and Dr Olive Shisana, HSRC; and Dr Connie Kganakga, Department of Social Development.

**13 October 2008** | *World-wide differences in the social acceptance of homosexuality: How can we understand them?* | Dr Theo Sandfort, Columbia University, New York.

**22 October 2008** | *Consultation and participation: Strategies of legitimization in the policy processes of the Communal Land Rights Act* | Dr Elizabeth Fortin, ESRC Postdoctoral Fellowship at IDPM, Manchester University, UK.

**3 November 2008** | *National Cancer Awareness Day: What I know for sure* | Ms Molebatsi Pooe-Shongwe, healthcare & health rights educator.

**6 November 2008** | *War and peace in Africa* | Professor Tom Lodge, Professor of Peace and Conflict Studies, University of Limerick, Ireland.

**12 November 2008** | *Dealing with missing data* | Dr Mbithi wa Kivilu, Mr Mandla Diko and Ms Lolita Winnaar, Knowledge Systems, HSRC.

**25 November 2008** | *A woman battered is one too many: Advancing social justice for women and children within the criminal justice system* | public roundtable hosted by Thohoyandou Victim Empowerment Centre, and the African Gender Institute, University of Cape Town.

**15 January 2009** | *Law and politics of the Gaza crisis* | Professor Max du Plessis, Law School, University of KwaZulu-Natal; and Dr Virginia Tilley, Democracy and Governance programme, HSRC.

**24 January 2009** | *Couples HIV risk-reduction intervention and medication adherence intervention among HIV positive women* | Drs Stephen Weiss and Deborah Jones, University of Miami, USA.

**27 January 2009** | *The sharing of social science data: A response to a new paradigm* | Faye Reagon, HSRC Director: Information Services; and Lucia Lotter, HSRC Information and Technology Services.

**5 February 2009** | *Imagining the second wave of South African FET College research* | Dr Simon McGrath, Professor of International Education and Development, University of Nottingham, UK.

**16 February 2009** | *Ethnicity and the state, with special reference to southern Africa* | Dr Professor Reinhart Kössler, senior research fellow, Arnold Bergstraesser Institute, Germany.

**5 March 2009** | *The cultural aspects of innovation, including 'grass roots' innovations* | Dr Andrew Jamison, Professor of Technology and Society, Aalborg University, Denmark.

**10 March 2009** | *Teacher quality and learning outcomes* | Dr Linda Chisholm and Mr Hlengani Baloyi, Education, Science and Skills Development, HSRC.

**24 March 2009** | *Debate on crime* | Professor Antanas Mockus, Mayor of Bogota, Colombia, Minister of Safety and Security Nathi Mthethwa, deputy national chairperson of the Inkatha Freedom Party Velaphi Ndlovu, DA spokesperson Dianne Kohler-Barnard, (ID) MP Lance Greyling. Facilitated by Professor Adam Habib, deputy vice chancellor of the University of Johannesburg.

**16 January to 26 March 2009** | *Elections 2009* | Series on the election manifestoes of different political parties hosted by the Native Club in partnership with the HSRC. Speakers included Thandi Modise; Professor Ben Turok; Max Sisulu of the ANC; Patricia de Lille, leader of the Independent Democrats; Ian Davidson, Democratic Alliance; and Bantu Holomisa, leader of the United Democratic Movement.



# Research Outputs

## 2008/09

### Books and chapters in HSRC books [41]

Akoojee, S. & McGrath, S. (2008) Skills development for poverty reduction: can FET colleges deliver? In: Maile, S. (ed). Education and poverty reduction strategies: issues of policy coherence: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 199-213.

Altman, M. (2008) Foreword. In: Lorentzen, J. (ed). Resource intensity knowledge and development: insights from Africa and South America. Cape Town: HSRC Press. ix-xi.

Blankley, W. & Moses, C. (2009) Main results of the South African innovation survey 2005. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Botha, C. & Hendricks, M. (2008) Setting the context. In: Botha, C. & Hendricks, M. (eds). Financing South Africa's national health system through national health insurance: possibilities and challenges: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 14-20.

Botha, C. & Hendricks, M. (eds). (2008) Financing South Africa's national health system through national health insurance: possibilities and challenges: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Botha, C. (2008) Introduction. In: Botha, C. & Hendricks, M. (eds). Financing South Africa's national health system through national health insurance: possibilities and challenges: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press. ix-xiv.

Breier, M. (2008) The RPL conundrum: Recognition of Prior Learning in a teacher-upgrading programme. (Teacher Education in South Africa Series). Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Carter, J. (2008) Education in South Africa: some points for policy coherence. In: Maile, S. (ed). Education and poverty reduction strategies: issues of policy coherence: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 19-38.

Chipkin, I. (2008) Set-up for failure: racial redress in the Department of Public Service and Administration. In: Habib, A. & Bentley, K. (eds). Racial redress & citizenship in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 129-152.

Chisholm, L. & Steiner-Khamsi, G. (eds). (2009) South-South cooperation in education and development. (International perspectives on education reform). Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Chisholm, L. (2008) The meaning of racial redress in South African schools, 1994 to 2006. In: Habib, A. & Bentley, K. (eds). Racial redress & citizenship in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 230-262.

Chisholm, L. (2009) Introduction: rhetoric, realities, and reasons. In: Chisholm, L. & Steiner-Khamsi, G. (eds). South-South cooperation in education and development. (International Perspectives on Education Reform). Cape Town: HSRC Press. 1-13.

Cosser, M. (2009) Studying ambitions: pathways from grade 12 and the factors that shape them. (Teacher Education in South Africa Series). Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Du Toit, R. & Roodt, J. (2009) Engineers in a developing country: the profession and education of engineering professionals in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Hadland, A., Louw, E., Sesanti, S. & Wasserman, H. (2008) Introduction. In: Hadland, A., Louw, E., Sesanti, S. & Wasserman, H. (eds). Power, politics and identity in South African media: selected seminar papers. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 1-13.

Hadland, A., Louw, E., Sesanti, S. & Wasserman, H. (eds). (2008) Power, politics and identity in South African media: selected seminar papers. Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Hoadley, U. & Ward, C.L. (2009) Managing to learn: instructional leadership in South African secondary schools. (Teacher Education in South Africa Series). Cape Town: HSRC Press.

Hoadley, U. (2008) The boundaries of care: education policy interventions for vulnerable children. In: Maile, S. (ed). Education and poverty reduction strategies: issues of policy coherence: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 136-156.

Hoadley, U. (2009) A distant reality: aligning the BEd curriculum at the North West University. In: Kruss, G. (ed). Opportunities & challenges for teacher education curriculum in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 31-64.

Kiti, Z. (2008) Breaking the shackles of poverty through education enhancing programmes: a glimmer of optimism in the school nutrition programme. In: Maile, S. (ed). Education and poverty reduction strategies: issues of policy coherence: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 102-122.

Kruss, G. (2008) Teacher education and institutional change in South Africa. (Teacher Education in South Africa Series). Cape Town: HSRC Press.

## Research Outputs continued

- Kruss, G. (2009) Curriculum restructuring in context: 1994-2007. In: Kruss, G. (ed). Opportunities & challenges for teacher education curriculum in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 17-30.
- Kruss, G. (2009) From bureaucratic compliance to creating new knowledge: comparative patterns of curriculum change. In: Kruss, G. (ed). Opportunities & challenges for teacher education curriculum in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 157-174.
- Kruss, G. (2009) Introduction. In: Kruss, G. (ed). Opportunities & challenges for teacher education curriculum in South Africa. (Teacher Education in South Africa Series). Cape Town: HSRC Press. 1-16.
- Kruss, G. (ed). (2009) Opportunities & challenges for teacher education curriculum in South Africa. (Teacher Education in South Africa Series). Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Letseka, M. & Breier, M. (2008) Student poverty in higher education: the impact of higher education dropout on poverty. In: Maile, S. (ed). Education and poverty reduction strategies: issues of policy coherence: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 83-101.
- Lorentzen, J. (2008) Knowledge intensification in resource-based economies. In: Lorentzen, J. (ed). Resource intensity, knowledge and development: insights from Africa and South America. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 1-48.
- Lorentzen, J. (ed). (2008) Resource intensity, knowledge and development: insights from Africa and South America. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Maile, S. (2008) Education and poverty: development policy options in a democratic era. In: Maile, S. (ed). Education and poverty reduction strategies: issues of policy coherence: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 157-181.
- Maile, S. (2008) Introduction. In: Maile, S. (ed). Education and poverty reduction strategies: issues of policy coherence: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press. xi-xxii.
- Maile, S. (2008) Policy coherence: meanings, concepts and frameworks. In: Maile, S. (ed). Education and poverty reduction strategies: issues of policy coherence: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 1-18.
- Maile, S. (2008) Putting research on education and poverty into practice: strategies for education and poverty research. In: Maile, S. (ed). Education and poverty reduction strategies: issues of policy coherence: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 39-52.
- Maile, S. (ed). (2008) Education and poverty reduction strategies: issues of policy coherence: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Modisha, G. (2008) Affirmative action and cosmopolitan citizenship in South Africa. In: Habib, A. & Bentley, K. (eds). Racial redress & citizenship in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 153-178.
- Naidoo, V. (2008) Assessing racial redress in the public service. In: Habib, A. & Bentley, K. (eds). Racial redress & citizenship in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 99-128.
- Ndletyana, M. (2008) Affirmative action in the public service. In: Habib, A. & Bentley, K. (eds). Racial redress & citizenship in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 77-98.
- Rispel, L., Da Sousa, C. & Molomo, B. (2008) Rapid appraisal of social inclusion policies in selected sub-Saharan African countries. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Rispel, L., Molomo, B. & Dumela, S. (2008) South African case study on social exclusion. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Sanchez, D. (2008) Transformation in small, medium and micro enterprises. In: Habib, A. & Bentley, K. (eds). Racial redress & citizenship in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Setswe, G. & Skinner, D. (eds). (2008) Interventions for orphans and vulnerable children at four project sites in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press.
- Shisana, O. (2008) A national health system: opportunities and challenges for South Africa: opening address. In: Financing South Africa's national health system through national health insurance: possibilities and challenges: colloquium proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC Press. 1-6.

## Books and chapters in non-HSRC published books [26]

- Biersteker, L., Streak, J. & Gwele, M. (2008) Toward an adequate ECD centre subsidy for children under 5 in South Africa: a costing of centre delivery. In: The Consultative Group on Early Childhood Care and Development Coordinators' notebook: an international resource for early childhood; 30. Toronto: The Consultative Group on Early Childhood Care and Development. 37-40.
- Bloch, G., Chisholm, L., Fleisch, B. & Mabizela, M. (eds). (2008) Investment choices for South African education. Johannesburg: Wits University Press.
- Chipkin, I. (2008) Social cohesion as factor in development. In: Gupta, K.R., Svendsen, G.L.H. & Maiti, P. (eds). Social capital: volume 2. New Delhi: Atlantic Publishers. 157-194.

- Chisholm, L. & Moletsane, R. (2009) Conclusion. In: Chisholm, L., Haupt, I., Hoadley, U., Lewin, T., Mawoyo, M., Moletsane, R. & Moorosi, P. *Gender, identity and institutional culture: women students' constructions of success at three South African universities*. Pretoria: Department of Education. 75-80.
- Chisholm, L. (2008) Preface. In: Chisholm, L., Bloch, G. & Fleisch, B. (eds). *Education, growth, aid and development: towards education for all*. (CERC Monograph Series in Comparative and International Education and Development; no. 5). Hong Kong: Comparative Education Research Centre. xi-xv.
- Chisholm, L. (2009) Overview of the research project. In: Chisholm, L., Haupt, I., Hoadley, U., Lewin, T., Mawoyo, M., Moletsane, R. & Moorosi, P. *Gender, identity and institutional culture: women students' constructions of success at three South African universities*. Pretoria: Department of Education. 17-28.
- Chisholm, L., Bloch, G. & Fleisch, B. (eds). (2008) *Education, growth, aid and development: towards education for all*. (CERC Monograph Series in Comparative and International Education and Development; no. 5). Hong Kong: Comparative Education Research Centre.
- Chisholm, L., Haupt, I., Hoadley, U., Lewin, T., Mawoyo, M., Moletsane, R. & Moorosi, P. (2009) *Gender, identity and institutional culture: women students' constructions of success at three South African universities*. Pretoria: Department of Education.
- Cowling, L. & Hadland, A. (2008) Surveys and supplements. In: Berger, G. & Barratt, E. *The extraordinary editor: a handbook for South African media leaders*. Johannesburg: South African National Editors' Forum (Sanef). 124.
- Hart, T. (2008) Demystifying participatory research and its role in development. (Occasional paper; no. 21). Stellenbosch: University of Stellenbosch.
- Haupt, I. & Chisholm, L. (2009) Negotiating social and gender identity: the worldview of women students at the University of Pretoria. In: Chisholm, L., Haupt, I., Hoadley, U., Lewin, T., Mawoyo, M., Moletsane, R. & Moorosi, P. *Gender, identity and institutional culture: women students' constructions of success at three South African universities*. Pretoria: Department of Education. 47-59.
- Houston, G. (2008) International solidarity: introduction. In: *The road to democracy in South Africa, Volume 3 (International Solidarity) Part 1*. Pretoria: University of South Africa Press. 1-39.
- Leclerc-Madlala, S. (2008) Global struggles, local contexts: prospects for a southern African AIDS feminism. In: Follér, M.J. & Thörn, H. (eds). *The politics of AIDS: globalization, the state and civil society*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan. 141-155.
- Leclerc-Madlala, S. (2009) AIDS in Zulu idiom: etiological configurations of women, pollution and modernity. In: Carton, B., Laband, J. & Sithole, J. (eds). *Zulu identities: being Zulu, past and present*. Durban: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press. 554-565.
- Mashego, T.A., Peltzer, K. & Nicholas, L.J. (2008) Health psychology. In: Nicholas, L. (ed). *Introduction to Psychology*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: UCT Press. 350-361.
- Mawoyo, M. & Hoadley, U. (2009) Social and academic integration of young women at the University of Cape Town. In: Chisholm, L., Haupt, I., Hoadley, U., Lewin, T., Mawoyo, M., Moletsane, R. & Moorosi, P. *Gender, identity and institutional culture: women students' constructions of success at three South African universities*. Pretoria: Department of Education. 61-74.
- Moletsane, R., Mitchell, C., Smith, A. & Chisholm, L. (2008) *Methodologies for mapping a southern African girlhood in the age of Aids*. Rotterdam: Sense Publishers.
- Moorosi, P. & Moletsane, R. (2009) Female undergraduate students' constructions of success at the University of KwaZulu-Natal. In: Chisholm, L., Haupt, I., Hoadley, U., Lewin, T., Mawoyo, M., Moletsane, R. & Moorosi, P. *Gender, identity and institutional culture: women students' constructions of success at three South African universities*. Pretoria: Department of Education. 29-45.
- Muzondidya, J. (2009) Race, ethnicity and the politics of positioning: the making of coloured identity in colonial Zimbabwe, 1890-1980. In: Adhikari, M. (ed). *Burdened by race: coloured identities in southern Africa*. Cape Town: Juta. 156-184.
- Peltzer, K., Ramlagan, S., Shisana, O., Connolly, C. & Zuma, K. (2008) The public education sector and HIV/AIDS. In: Ndinga-Muvumba, A. & Pharoah, R. (eds). *HIV/AIDS and society in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press. 103-123.
- Reddy, V. & Cakata, Z. (2008) Marriage, citizenship and contested meanings. In: Judge, M., Manion, A. & De Waal, S. (eds). *To have & to hold: the making of same-sex marriage in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Fanele. 274-277.
- Richter, L. & Chandan, U. (2008) Education and investment choices for vulnerable children in South Africa. In: Bloch, G., Chisholm, L., Fleisch, B. & Mabizela, M. (eds). *Investment choices for South African education*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press. 90-125.
- Richter, L. & Dawes, A. (2008) South African research on child development: a history of bias and neglect. In: Van Ommen, C. & Painter, D. (eds). *Interiors: a history of psychology in South Africa*. Pretoria: University of South Africa Press. 286-323.
- Shisana, O. (2008) Bridging the second economy. In: Turok, B. (ed). *Wealth doesn't trickle down: the case for a developmental state in South Africa*. Cape Town: New Agenda: South African Journal of Social and Economic Policy. 183-191.
- Streak, J., Dawes, A., Ewing, D., Levine, S., Rama, S. & Alexander, L. (2008) *Children working in the commercial and subsistence agriculture in South Africa: a child labour-related rapid assessment study*. (TECL report, no. 52). Pretoria: Department of Labour.

## Research Outputs continued

Tarakeshwar, N., Kalichman, S.C., Simbayi, L.C. & Sikkema, K.J. (2008) HIV prevention needs: primary prevention and prevention for people living with HIV/AIDS. In: Celentano, D.D. & Beyrer, C. (eds). *Public health aspects of HIV/AIDS in low and middle-income countries*. New York: Springer. 19-40.

### Journal articles - peer-reviewed [146]

Agu, V., Correia, A.N. & Behbehani, K. (2007) Strengthening international health co-operation in Africa through the regional economic communities. *African Journal of Health Sciences*. 14(3-4): 104-113.

Akoojee, S. & McGrath, S. (2008) The marketing of public FET colleges in South Africa: issues for policy and practice. *Journal of Education*. 45:131-154.

Akoojee, S. (2008) FET college lecturers: the 'devolving' link in the South African skills development equation. *Journal of Vocational Education and Training*. 60(3): 297-313.

Akoojee, S. (2009) Intermediate-level public sector skills provision and FET colleges: expanding the agenda and widening impact. *Journal of Public Administration*. 44(1): 30-43.

Altman, M. (2008) Expanding early childhood development services: labour market challenges. *Agenda: Empowering Women for Gender Equity*. 78:120-131.

Avalos, L.A., Mertens, J.R., Ward, C.L., Flisher, A.J., Bresick, G.F. & Weisner, C.M. (2009) Stress, substance use and sexual risk behaviours among primary care patients in Cape Town, South Africa. *AIDS and Behaviour*. Online:

Baiphethi, M., Viljoen, M.N. & Kundhlande, G. (2008) Rural women and rainwater harvesting and conservation practices: anecdotal evidence from the Free State and Eastern Cape provinces. *Agenda: Empowering Women for Gender Equity*. 78:163-171.

Bantwini, B.D. (2009) A researcher's experience in navigating the murky terrain of doing research in South Africa's transforming schools. *Perspectives in Education*. 27(1): 30-39.

Barnes, H., Noble, M., Wright, G. & Dawes, A. (2009) A geographical profile of child deprivation in South Africa. *Child Indicators Research*. 2(2): 181-199.

Bell, C.C., Bhana, A., Petersen, I., McKay, M.M., Gibbons, R., Bannon, W. & Amatya, A. (2008) Building protective factors to offset sexually risky behaviours among black youths: a randomized control trial. *Journal of the National Medical Association*. 100(8):936-944.

Bhana, A. (2008) Alcohol advertising, movies and adolescents. *Addiction*. 103:1935-1936.

Bhana, A., Zimmerman, R. & Cupp, P. (2008) Gender role attitudes and sexual risk among adolescents in South Africa. *Vulnerable Children and Youth Studies*. 3(2): 112-119.

Blankley, W. & Moses, C. (2009) How innovative is South Africa? *South African Journal of Science*. 105:15-18.

Bogart, L.M., Kalichman, S.C. & Simbayi, L.C. (2008) Endorsement of a genocidal HIV conspiracy as a barrier to HIV testing in South Africa. *JAIDS - Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*. 49(1): 115-116.

Boyle, J., Chandan, U., Hardenbergh, M.B., Hedley, M. & Rio, C. (2008) Globalization, media, and the teacher-activist's response. *Critical Sociology*. 34(5): 753-759.

Breier, M. & Wildschut, A. (2008) Changing gender profile of medical schools in South Africa. *South African Medical Journal*. 98(7): 557-560.

Buccus, I., Hemson, D., Hicks, J. & Piper, L. (2008) Community development and engagement with local governance in South Africa. *Community Development Journal*. May: 1-15.

Carter, J. (2008) Policy researchers and policy impact. *Africanus*. 38(2): 40-54.

Chipkin, I. & Ngqulunga, B. (2008) Friends and family: social cohesion in South Africa. *Journal of Southern African Studies*. 34(1): 61-76.

Chirowodza, A., Van Rooyen, H., Joseph, P., Sikotoyi, S., Richter, L. & Coates, T. (2009) Using participatory methods and geographic information systems (GIS) to prepare for an HIV community-based trial in Vulindlela, South Africa. *Project Accept - HPTW 043. Journal of Community Psychology*. 37(1): 41-57.

Chisholm, L. (2008) Migration, citizenship and South African history textbooks. *South African Historical Journal*. 60(3): 353-374.

Cloete, A., Simbayi, L.C., Kalichman, S.C., Strebel, A. & Henda, N. (2008) Stigma and discrimination experiences of HIV-positive men who have sex with men in Cape Town, South Africa. *AIDS Care*. 20(9): 1105-1110.

Connolly, C., Simbayi, L.C., Shanmugam, R. & Nqeketo, A. (2008) Male circumcision and its relationship to HIV infection in South Africa: results of a national survey in 2002. *South African Medical Journal*. 98(10): 789-794.

Cowling, L., Hadland, A. & Tabe, B.F.T. (2008) The "third arm": new forms of paid-for content in the South African print media. *Ecquid Novi: African Journalism Studies*. 29(1): 100-119.

Cross, C. (2008) Women's households and social exclusion: A look at the urbanisation dimension. *Agenda: Empowering Women for Gender Equity*. 78:106-119.



- Cupp, P.K., Zimmerman, R.S., Bhana, A., Feist-Price, S., Dekhtyar, O., Karnell, A. & Ramsoomar, L. (2008) Combining and adapting American school-based alcohol and HIV prevention programmes in South Africa: the HAPS project. *Vulnerable Children and Youth Studies*. 3(2): 134-142.
- Davies, R. (2008) Economic recovery in Zimbabwe. *Development Southern Africa*. 4:26-27.
- Edigheji, O. (2008) Introduction: public sector reforms and the quest for democratic developmentalism in Africa. *Africa Development*. 33(4): 1-13.
- Edigheji, O., Shisana, O. & Masilela, T. (2008) Envisioning a democratic developmental state in South Africa: theoretical and policy issues. *New Agenda*. 31:35-41.
- Faber, M., Schwabe, C. & Drimie, S. (2008) Dietary diversity in relation to other household food security indicators. *International Journal of Food Safety, Nutrition and Public Health*. 1(2): 157-171.
- Gastrow, M. (2008) An overview of research and development activities in the South African automotive industry. *Journal for New Generation Sciences*. 6(1): 1-15.
- Genberg, B.L., Kulich, M., Kawichai, S., Modiba, P., Chingono, A., Kilonzo, G.P., Richter, L., Pettifor, A., Sweat, M. & Celentano, D.D. (2008) HIV risk behaviours in sub-Saharan Africa and northern Thailand: baseline behavioural data from Project Accept. *JAIDS - Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*. 49(3): 309-319.
- Hart, T. & Baiphethi, M. (2008) Tshepo Khumbane - Growing South Africa's women and landscape. *Agenda: Empowering Women for Gender Equity*. 78:156-162.
- Hart, T. (2008) The ignorance of gender in agrarian livelihoods in rural South Africa. *Agenda: Empowering Women for Gender Equity*. 78:144-155.
- Helms, D.J., Mosure, D.J., Metcalf, C.A., Douglas, J.M., Malotte, C.K., Paul, S.M. & Peterman, T.A. (2008) Risk factors for prevalent and incident trichomonas vaginalis among women attending three sexually transmitted disease clinics. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*. 35(5): 484-488.
- Hongoro, C., Mturi, A.J. & Kembo, J. (2008) Review of national AIDS councils in Africa: findings from five countries. *Sahara J: Journal of Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS*. 5(4): 192-200.
- Jacobs, P. & Xaba, T. (2008) Women in urban and peri-agriculture: sustaining livelihoods in the Cape metropolitan area. *Agenda: Empowering Women for Gender Equity*. 78:186-197.
- Jacobs, P. (2008) A new generation of heterodox development scholars. *Review of African Political Economy*. 35(2): 335-340.
- Jita, L.C. & Mokhele, M.L. (2008) Capacity for (quality) instruction: a framework for understanding the use of resources to promote teaching and learning in schools. *Africa Education Review*. 5(2): 253-273.
- Jones, L.L., Griffiths, P.L., Adair, L.S., Norris, S.A., Richter, L.M. & Cameron, N. (2008) A comparison of the socio-economic determinants of growth retardation in South African and Filipino infants. *Public Health Nutrition*. 11(12): 1220-1228.
- Kahn, M.J. (2008) Africa's plan of action for science and technology and indicators: South African experience. *African Statistical Journal*. 6:163-176.
- Kalichman, S.C., Simbayi, L., Jooste, S., Vermaak, R. & Cain, D. (2008) Sensation seeking and alcohol use predict HIV transmission risks: prospective study of sexually transmitted infection clinic patients, Cape Town, South Africa. *Addictive Behaviors*. 33:1630-1633.
- Kalichman, S.C., Simbayi, L.C., Cain, D. & Jooste, S. (2008) Perceived HIV/AIDS prevalence, burden, and risk, Cape Town, South Africa. *American Journal of Health Behavior*. 32(6): 693-700.
- Kalichman, S.C., Simbayi, L.C., Cloete, A., Cherry, C., Strebel, A., Kalichman, M.O., Shefer, T., Crawford, M., Thabalala, M., Henda, N. & Cain, D. (2008) HIV/AIDS risk reduction and domestic violence prevention intervention for South African men. *International Journal of Men's Health*. 7(3):255-273.
- Kalichman, S.C., Simbayi, L.C., Cloete, A., Mthembu, P.P., Mkhonta, R.N. & Ginindza, T. (2009) Measuring AIDS stigmas in people living with HIV/AIDS: the internalized AIDS-related stigma scale. *AIDS Care*. 21(1):87-93.
- Kalichman, S.C., Simbayi, L.C., Vermaak, R., Cain, D., Smith, G., Mthebu, J. & Jooste, S. (2008) Randomized trial of a community-based alcohol-related HIV risk-reduction intervention for men and women in Cape Town South Africa. *Annals of Behavioural Medicine*. 36(3): 270-279.
- Kaufman, M.R., Shefer, T., Crawford, M., Simbayi, L.C. & Kalichman, S.C. (2008) Gender attitudes, sexual power, HIV risk: a model for understanding HIV risk behaviour of South African men. *AIDS Care*. 20(4): 434-441.
- Khumalo-Sakutukwa, G., Morin, S.F., Fritz, K., Charlebois, E.D., Van Rooyen, H., Chingono, A., Modiba, P., Mrumbi, K., Visrutaratna, S., Singh, B., Sweat, M., Celantano, D.D. & Coates, T.J. (2008) Project Accept (HPTN 043): a community-based intervention to reduce HIV incidence in populations at risk for HIV in sub-Saharan Africa and Thailand. *JAIDS - Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*. 49(4): 422-431.
- Kiene, S.M., Simbayi, L.C., Abrams, A., Cloete, A., Tennen, H. & Fisher, J.D. (2008) High rates of unprotected sex occurring among HIV-positive individuals in a daily diary study in South Africa: the role of alcohol use. *JAIDS - Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*. 49(2): 219-226.
- Kraak, A. (2008) Incoherence in the South African labour market for intermediate skills. *Journal of Education and Work*. 21(3): 197-215.
- Kruss, G. (2008) Balancing old and new organisational forms: changing dynamics of government, industry and university interaction in South Africa. *Technology Analysis & Strategic Management*. 20(6): 667-682.
- Kruss, G. (2008) Knowledge-intensive university spin-off firms in South Africa: fragile network alignment? *Industry & Higher Education*. 22(4): 233-243.

## Research Outputs continued

- Kruss, G. (2008) Trajectories of restructuring: the changing context for initial teacher education in South Africa. *Southern African Review of Education (With Education With Production)*. 14(1-2): 77-94.
- Leclerc-Madlala, S. (2008) Age-disparate and intergenerational sex in southern Africa: the dynamics of hypervulnerability. *AIDS*. 22(4): S17-S25.
- Levine, S. & Roberts, B. (2008) Combined methods in poverty analysis: experiences from Namibia. *International Journal of Multiple Research Approaches*. 2(2): 205-221.
- Lorentzen, J. (2009) Global sugar, regional water, and local people: EU sugar regime liberalisation, rural livelihoods, and the environment in the Incomati River Basin. *South African Journal of Science*. 105:49-53.
- Lorentzen, J. (2009) Learning by firms: the black box of South Africa's innovation system. *Science and Public Policy*. 36(1): 33-45.
- Mafukidze, J. & Mbanda, V. (2008) Low-income African migrant women and social exclusion in South Africa. *Agenda: Empowering Women for Gender Equity*. 78:172-185.
- Makiwane, M. & Kwizera, S. (2009) Youth and well-being: a South African case study. *Social Indicators Research*. 91(2): 223-242.
- Makoe, M.G. & Jubber, K. (2008) Confidentiality or continuity?: family caregivers' experiences with care for HIV/AIDS patients in home-based care in Lesotho. *Sahara J: Journal of Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS*. 5(1): 37-48.
- Matshe, I. & Pimhidzai, O. (2008) Macroeconomic impact of HIV and AIDS on the Zimbabwean economy: a human capital approach. *The Botswana Journal of Economics*. 5(9):32-45.
- Matshe, I. (2008) Food security aspects of the impact of HIV/AIDS on rural women in smallholder agriculture. *Agenda: Empowering Women for Gender Equity*. 78:132-143.
- Mazibuko, S. (2008) Social functions of natural resources in the Tembe area of Maputaland, KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. *Journal of Social Development in Africa*. 23(1): 61-88.
- McGrath, S. & Akoojee, S. (2009) Vocational education and training for sustainability in South Africa: the role of public and private provision. *International Journal of Educational Development*. 29(2): 149-156.
- Miller, D. (2008) 'Retail Renaissance' or company rhetoric: the failed partnership of a South African corporation and local suppliers in Zambia. *Labour, Capital and Society*. 41(1): 34-55.
- Miller, D., Nel, E. & Hampwaye, G. (2008) Malls in Zambia: racialised retail expansion and South African foreign investors in Zambia. *African Sociological Review*. 12(1):35-54.
- Miller, D., Saunders, R. & Oloyede, O. (2008) South African corporations and post-apartheid expansion in Africa - creating a new regional space. *African Sociological Review*. 12(1): 1-19.
- Mlisa, L.N., Ward, C.L., Flisher, A.J. & Lombard, C.J. (2008) Bullying at rural high schools in the Eastern Cape province, South Africa: prevalence, and risk and protective factors at school and in the family. *Journal of Psychology in Africa*. 18(2): 261-268.
- Mngqundaniso, N. & Peltzer, K. (2008) Traditional healers and nurses: a qualitative study on their role on sexually transmitted infections including HIV and AIDS in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. *African Journal of Traditional, Complementary and Alternative Medicines*. 5(4): 380-386.
- Motala, S. (2008) Organising capabilities of street traders particularly women. *Agenda: Empowering Women for Gender Equity*. 78:208-219.
- Motaung, J. (2009) The 'nuts and bolts' of prior learning assessment in the faculty of education of the university of Pretoria, South Africa. *Perspectives in Education*. 27(1): 78-84.
- Motaung, M.J., Fraser, W.J. & Howie, S. (2009) Prior learning assessment and quality assurance practice: possibilities and challenges. *South African Journal of Higher Education*. 22(6): 1249-1259.
- Mwaba, K., Simbayi, L.C. & Kalichman, S.C. (2008) Perceptions of high-risk sex among men and women attending an STI clinic in Cape Town, South Africa. *Journal of Psychology in Africa*. 18(4): 621-624.
- Naidoo, V. (2008) Confronting management dilemmas: the introduction of single public service legislation in South Africa. *Journal of Public Administration*. 43(4): 581-591.
- Ngandu, S. (2008) The absence of gender in South Africa's new industrial policy framework. *Agenda: Empowering Women for Gender Equity*. 78:199-207.
- Ngandu, S.N.C. (2009) The impact of exchange rate movements on employment: the economy-wide effect of a rand appreciation. *Development Southern Africa*. 26(1):111-129.
- Norris, S.A. & Richter, L.M. (2008) Are there short cuts to pubertal assessments? Self-reported and assessed group differences in pubertal development in African adolescents. *Journal of adolescent health*. 42(3): 259-265.
- Paruk, Z., Petersen, I. & Bhana, A. (2009) Facilitating health-enabling social contexts for youth: qualitative evaluation of a family-based HIV-prevention pilot programme. *African Journal of AIDS Research*. 8(1): 61-68.
- Paterson, A. & Arends, F. (2008) Who are we missing?: teacher graduate production in South Africa, 1995-2006. *Southern African Review of Education (With Education With Production)*. 14(1-2): 95-118.
- Peltzer, K. & Kanta, X. (2009) Medical circumcision and manhood initiation rituals in the Eastern Cape, South Africa: a post intervention evaluation. *Culture, Health & Sexuality*. 11(1): 83-97.

- Peltzer, K. & Mngqundaniso, N. (2008) Patients consulting traditional health practitioners in the context of HIV/AIDS in urban areas in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. *African Journal of Traditional, Complementary and Alternative Medicines*. 5(4): 370-379.
- Peltzer, K. & Pengpid, S. (2008) Dual protection, contraceptive use and HIV risk among a sample of South African male and female students. *Gender and Behaviour*. 6(2): 1858-1869.
- Peltzer, K. & Pengpid, S. (2008) Sexual abuse, violence and HIV risk among adolescents in South Africa. *Gender and Behaviour*. 6(1): 1462-1278.
- Peltzer, K. & Phaswana-Mafuya, N. (2008) Health-related quality of life in a sample of HIV-infected South Africans. *African Journal of AIDS Research*. 7(2): 209-218.
- Peltzer, K. & Phaswana-Mafuya, N. (2008) Levels of ability and functioning of persons living with HIV and AIDS using the WHO DAS II in a South African context. *Journal of Social Development in Africa*. 23(2): 33-53.
- Peltzer, K. & Phaswana-Mafuya, N. (2008) The symptom experience of people living with HIV and AIDS in the Eastern Cape, South Africa. *BMC Health Services Research*. 8:271.
- Peltzer, K. & Ramlagan, S. (2009) Alcohol use trends in South Africa. *Journal of Social Sciences*. 18(1): 1-12.
- Peltzer, K. (2008) Application of information and communication technology (ICT) in combating human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) in South Africa. *African Journal for Physical, Health Education, Recreation and Dance (AJPHERD)*. 14(2): 143-162.
- Peltzer, K. (2008) Drug involvement among secondary school students at suicide risk in Cape Town. *Studia Psychologica*. 50(3): 323-334.
- Peltzer, K. (2008) Injury and social determinants among in-school adolescents in six African countries. *Injury Prevention*. 14:381-388.
- Peltzer, K. (2008) Screening and brief advice for risky substance users among charismatic and main stream churches in South Africa. *Journal of Psychology in Africa*. 18(4): 631-636.
- Peltzer, K. (2008) Social support and suicide risk among secondary school students in Cape Town, South Africa. *Psychological Reports*. 103:653-660.
- Peltzer, K. (2008) Tobacco use trends among adolescents and adults in South Africa. *Journal of Psychology in Africa*. 18(2): 339-346.
- Peltzer, K. (2009) Prevalence and correlates of substance use among school children in six African countries. *International Journal of Psychology*. Online: 1-9.
- Peltzer, K., Chao, L.-W. & Dana, P. (2008) Family planning among HIV positive and negative prevention of mother to child transmission (PMTCT) clients in a resource poor setting in South Africa. *AIDS and Behavior*. February/March: Online.
- Peltzer, K., Friend-du Preez, N., Ramlagan, S. & Fomundam, H. (2008) Use of traditional complementary and alternative medicine for HIV patients in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. *BMC Public Health*. 8(1): 255.
- Peltzer, K., Kleintjes, S., Van Wyk, B., Thompson, E.A. & Mashego, T.-A.B. (2008) Correlates of suicide risk among secondary school students in Cape Town. *Social Behaviour and Personality*. 36(4): 493-502.
- Peltzer, K., Matseke, G., Azwihangwisi, M. & Babor, T. (2008) Evaluation of alcohol screening and brief intervention in routine practice of primary care nurses in Vhembe district, South Africa. *Croatian Medical Journal*. 49:392-401.
- Peltzer, K., Mohlala, G., Phaswana-Mafuya, N. & Ramlagan, S. (2008) Household survey on the pattern of utilization of medicines in selected communities in South Africa. *African Journal for Physical, Health Education, Recreation and Dance (AJPHERD)*. 14(2): 163-177.
- Peltzer, K., Mosala, T., Dana, P. & Fomundam, H. (2008) Follow-up survey of women who have undergone a prevention of mother-to-child transmission program in a resource-poor setting in South Africa. *Journal of the Association of Nurses in AIDS Care*. 19(6): 450-460.
- Peltzer, K., Nqeketo, A., Petros, G. & Kanta, X. (2008) Attitudes of preinitiates towards traditional male circumcision in the context of HIV in the Eastern Cape, South Africa. *Social Behavior and Personality*. 36(8): 1023-1034.
- Peltzer, K., Nqeketo, A., Petros, G. & Kanta, X. (2008) Evaluation of a safer male circumcision training programme for traditional surgeons and nurses in the Eastern Cape, South Africa. *African Journal of Traditional, Complementary and Alternative Medicines*. 5(4): 346-354.
- Peltzer, K., Phaswana-Mafuya, N. & Ramlagan, S. (2008) A baseline assessment of Department of Health partnerships with non-profit organisations. *Acta Academica*. 40(3): 246-272.
- Peltzer, K., Shisana, O., Zuma, K., Van Wyk, B. & Zungu-Dirwayi, N. (2008) Job stress, job satisfaction and stress-related illnesses among South African educators. *Stress and Health*. Online:
- Peltzer, K., Simbayi, L., Kalichman, S., Jooste, S., Cloete, A. & Mbelle, N. (2009) Drug use and HIV risk behaviour in three urban South African communities. *Journal of Social Sciences*. 18(2): 143-149.
- Peterman, T.A., Tian, L.H., Metcalf, C.A., Malotte, C.K., Paul, S.M. & Douglas, J.M. (2009) Persistent, undetected *Trichomonas vaginalis* infections?. *Clinical Infectious Diseases*. 48:259-260.

## Research Outputs continued

- Peterman, T.A., Tian, L.H., Warner, L., Satterwhite, C.L., Metcalf, C.A., Malotte, K.C., Paul, S.M., Douglas, J.M. & Respect -2 Study Group, (2009) Condom use in the year following a sexually transmitted disease clinic visit. *International Journal of STD & AIDS*. 20:9-13.
- Petersen, I., Bhana, A., Campbell-Hall, V., Mjadu, S., Lund, C., Kleintjies, S., Hosegood, V., Flisher, A.J. & Mental Health and Poverty Programme Consortium, (2009) Planning for district mental health services in South Africa: a situational analysis of a rural district site. *Health Policy and Planning*. 24(2): 140-150.
- Petersen, I., Bhana, A., Campbell-Hall, V., Mjadu, S., Lund, C., Kleintjies, S., Hosegood, V., Flisher, A.J. & Mental Health and Poverty Research Programme Consortium, (2009) Planning for district mental health services in South Africa: a situational analysis of a rural district site. *Health Policy and Planning*. 24(2): 140-150.
- Petersen, I., Louw, J. & Dumont, K. (2009) Adjustment to university and academic performance among disadvantaged students in South Africa. *Educational Psychology*. 29(1): 99-115.
- Phaswana-Mafuya, N. & Kayongo, D. (2008) Experiences of prevention of mother to child transmission services by HIV+ mothers in the Eastern Cape of South Africa. *African Journal for Physical, Health Education, Recreation and Dance (AJPHERD)*. 14(1):63-87.
- Phaswana-Mafuya, N. & Ramalepe, M. (2008) Experience of abuse among women in a rural subdistrict of Limpopo province, South Africa. *Acta Criminologica*. 21(2): 46-55.
- Phaswana-Mafuya, N., Petros, G., Peltzer, K., Ramlagan, S., Nkomo, N., Mohlala, G., Mbelle, M. & Seager, J. (2008) Primary health care service delivery in South Africa. *International Journal of Health Care Quality Assurance*. 21(6): 611-624.
- Pillay, S. (2008) Crime, community and the governance of violence in post-apartheid South Africa. *Politikon*. 35(2): 141-158.
- Pillay, S. (2008) Embodiment, meaning and the anthropology of religion. *Journal for the Study of Religion*. 21(1): 5-17.
- Pillay, U. & Bass, O. (2008) Mega-events as a response to poverty reduction: the 2010 FIFA world cup and its urban development implications. *Urban Forum*. 19(3): 329-346.
- Pillay, U. (2008) Hernando de Soto and the 'mystification of capital': a critical exploration of the difference that legal title makes for the low-income housing market in South Africa. *South African Geographical Journal*. 90(2): 97-105.
- Pillay, U. (2008) Urban policy in post-apartheid South Africa: context, evolution and future directions. *Urban Forum*. 19(2): 109-132.
- Ramchandani, P.G., Richter, L.M., Stein, A. & Norris, S.A. (2009) Predictors of postnatal depression in an urban South African cohort. *Journal of Affective Disorders*. 113:279-284.
- Reddy, V. & Sandfort, T. (2008) Researching MSM in South Africa: some preliminary notes from the frontlines of a hidden epidemic. *Feminist Africa*. 11:29-54.
- Richter, L. (2008) Editorial: strengthening families for the care and protection of children affected by HIV and AIDS. *Journal of Child and Adolescent Mental Health*. 20(2): vii-viii.
- Richter, L.M. & Dawes, A.R.L. (2008) Child abuse in South Africa: rights and wrongs. *Child Abuse Review*. 17(2): 79-93.
- Richter, L.M. & Desmond, C. (2008) Targeting AIDS orphans and child-headed households?: a perspective from national surveys in South Africa, 1995-2005. *AIDS Care*. 20(9): 1019-1028.
- Rispel, L.C., Peltzer, K., Phaswana-Mafuya, N., Metcalf, C.A. & Treger, L. (2009) Assessing missed opportunities for the prevention of mother-to-child HIV transmission in an Eastern Cape local service area. *South African Medical Journal*. 99(3): 174-179.
- Rochat, T., Richter, L. & Shisana, O. (2008) Editorial: 'what now, what next': reflecting on the vulnerability of children and youth in the context of human immunodeficiency virus and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. *Vulnerable Children and Youth Studies*. 3(2): 85-91.
- Sanchez, D. (2008) Transnational telecommunications capital expanding from South Africa into Africa: adapting to African growth and South African transformation demands. *African Sociological Review*. 12(1): 103-121.
- Sandfort, T.G.M., Nel, J., Rich, E., Reddy, V. & Yi, H. (2008) HIV testing and self-reported HIV status in South African men who have sex with men: results from a community-based survey. *Sexually Transmitted Infections*. 84:425-429.
- Sanger, N. (2008) 'There's got to be a man in there': reading intersections between gender, race and sexuality in South African magazines. *African Identities*. 6(3): 275-291.
- Sanger, N. (2009) New women, old messages?: constructions of femininities, race and hypersexualised bodies in selected South African magazines, 2003-2006. *Social Dynamics*. 35(1): 137-148.
- Schneider, M. (2009) The difference a word makes: responding to questions on 'disability' and 'difficulty' in South Africa. *Disability and Rehabilitation*. 31(1): 42-50.
- Schneider, M., Manabile, E. & Tikly, M. (2008) Social aspects of living with rheumatoid arthritis: a qualitative descriptive study in Soweto, South Africa - a low resource context. *Health and Quality of Life Outcomes*. 6:54.



- Shefer, T., Crawford, M., Strelbel, A., Simbayi, L.C., Dwadwa-Henda, N., Cloete, A., Kaufman, M.R. & Kalichman, S.C. (2008) Gender, power and resistance to change among two communities in the Western Cape, South Africa. *Feminism & Psychology*. 18(2): 157-182.
- Sherr, L., Varrall, R., Mueller, J., Richter, L., Wakhweya, A., Adato, M., Belsey, M., Chandan, U., Drimie, S., Haour-Knipe, M., Hosegood, V., Kimou, J., Madhavan, S., Mathambo, V. & Desmond, C. (2008) A systematic review on the meaning of the concept 'AIDS orphan': confusion over definitions and implications for care. *AIDS Care*. 20(5): 527-536.
- Shisana, O., Connolly, C., Rehle, T.M., Mehtar, S. & Dana, P. (2008) HIV risk exposure among South African children in public health facilities. *AIDS Care*. 20(7): 755-763.
- Sperber, E., McKay, M.M., Bell, C.C., Petersen, I., Bhana, A. & Paikoff, R. (2008) Adapting and disseminating a community-collaborative, evidence-based HIV/AIDS prevention programme: lessons from the history of CHAMP. *Vulnerable Children and Youth Studies*. 3(2): 150-158.
- Swartz, S. (2008) Is Kwaito South African hip-hop?: why the answer matters and who it matters to. *The World of Music*. 50(2):15-33.
- Tian, L.H., Peterman, T.A., Tao, G., Brooks, L.C., Metcalf, C., Malotte, C.K., Paul, S.M., Douglas, J.M. & Respect-2 Study Group, (2008) Heterosexual anal sex activity in the year after an STD clinic visit. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*. 35(11): 905-909.
- Vass, J.R. (2008) The role of HIV/AIDS committees in effective workplace governance of HIV/AIDS in South African small and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs). *Sahara J: Journal of Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS*. 5(1):2-10.
- Wamai, R.G., Weiss, H.A., Hankins, C., Agot, K., Karim, Q.A., Shisana, O., Bailey, R.C., Betukumesu, B., Bongaarts, J., Bowa, K., Cash, R., Cates, W., Diallo, M.O., Dlodlu, S., Geffen, N., Heywood, M., Jackson, H., Kayembe, P.K., Kapiga, S., Kebaabetswe, P., Kintaudi, L., Klausner, J.D., Leclerc-Madlala, S., Mabuza, K., Makhubele, M.B., Micheni, K., Morris, B.J., De Moya, A., Ncala, J., Ntaganira, I., Nyamucherera, O.F., Otolorin, E.O., Pape, J.W., Phiri, M., Rees, H., Ruiz, M., Sanchez, J., Sawires, S., Seloiwe, E.S., Serwadda, D.M., Setswe, G., Sewankambo, N., Simelane, D., Venter, F., Wilson, D., Woelk, G., Zungu, N. & Halperin, D.T. (2008) Letter to the editor: male circumcision is an efficacious, lasting and cost-effective strategy for combating HIV in high-prevalence AIDS epidemics. *Future HIV Therapy*. 2(5): 399-405.
- Ward, C.L. & Bakhuis, K. (2009) Intervening in children's involvement in gangs: views of Cape Town's young people. *Children & Society*. Online:1-18.
- Ward, C.L., Mertens, J.R., Flisher, A.J., Bresick, G.F., Sterling, S.A., Little, F. & Weisner, C.M. (2008) Prevalence and correlates of substance use among South African primary care clinic patients. *Substance Use & Misuse*. 43(10): 1395-1410.
- Wildschut, A. (2008) Engendering gender equality in professional employment: can policy rise to the occasion?. *Agenda: Empowering Women for Gender Equity*. 78:93-104.
- Wildschut, A.C. (2008) Motivating for a gendered analysis of trends within South African medical schools and the profession. *South African Journal of Higher Education*. 22(4): 920-932.
- Wong, L.H., Van Rooyen, H., Modiba, P., Richter, L., Gray, G., McIntyre, J.A., Schetter, C.D. & Coates, T. (2009) Test and tell: correlates and consequences of testing and disclosure of HIV status in South Africa (HPTN 043 Project Accept). *JAIDS - Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*. 50(2): 215-222.
- Zungu, L.I., Sengane, M.L. & Setswe, K.G. (2008) Knowledge and experiences of Needle Prick Injuries (NPI) among nursing students at a university in Gauteng, South Africa. *South African Family Practice*. 50(5): 66-66c.

## Journal articles - non-peer-reviewed [45]

- Akojee, S. (2008) Post-school private education and training providers in South Africa: What works!. *VOCAL: The Australian Journal of Vocational Education and Training in Schools*. 7:97-105.
- Altman, M. (2008) Time to mobilise frustrated jobless youth. *HSRC Review*. 6(3): 19-20.
- Balfour, R.J., Mitchell, C. & Moletsane, R. (2008) Troubling contexts: toward a generative theory of rurality as education research. *Journal of Rural and Community Development*. 3(3):95-107.
- Biersteker, L. (2008) The early years: building the foundation for child well-being. *HSRC Review*. 6(2): 18-20.
- Carnoy, M., Chisholm, L. & Baloyi, H. (2008) Uprooting bad mathematical performance: pilot study into roots of problems. *HSRC Review*. 6(2): 13-14.
- Chipkin, I. (2008) South Africa needs non-racialism, not Zionism. *HSRC Review*. 6(2): 21-22.
- Chisholm, L. (2008) Economic growth and curriculum reform in southern Africa. *NORRAG news*. 40:62-64.
- Chisholm, L. (2008) Racial redress means different things for different schools: case studies of five Gauteng schools. *HSRC Review*. 6(2): 15-17.
- Chisholm, L. (2008) Xenophobia and school history textbooks. *HSRC Review*. 6(2): 27-28.
- Hadland, A. (2008) Searching for the roots of the violent 'othering'. *Rhodes Journalism Review*. 28:16-17.
- Hemson, D. & Roberts, B. (2008) Batho Pele: season of discontent. *HSRC Review*. 6(4): 12-13.
- Hemson, D. (2008) Expanded public works programme: hope for the unemployed?. *HSRC Review*. 6(3): 27-28.

## Research Outputs continued

- Hongoro, C., Ke, Y. & Carter, J. (2008) Getting a GRIPP on policies: turning research into policy and practice. *HSRC Review*. 6(3): 25-26.
- Kagwanja, P. (2008) Up in arms. *BBC Focus on Africa*. June/July: 24-25.
- Karuri-Sebina, G. (2008) Is there value for money in public sector delivery?. *HSRC Review*. 6(2):23-24.
- Kruss, G. & Visser, M. (2008) A strong desire for certification. *HSRC Review*. 6(4): 18-19.
- Kruss, G. & Visser, M. (2008) Tracing learnership results. *HSRC Review*. 6(4): 19-22.
- Kruss, G. (2008) A restructured teacher education system: a call for consolidation. *HSRC Review*. 6(3): 13-14.
- Leclerc-Madlala, S. (2008) Sugar daddies' and HIV: is it really about money, money, money?. *HSRC Review*. 6(3): 11-12.
- Lorentzen, J. (2009) The geography of innovation in South Africa: a first cut. *International Journal of Technological Learning, Innovation and Development*. 2(3): 210-229.
- Mathambo, V. (2008) We are volunteering: communities' responses to children in need. *HSRC Review*. 6(4): 29-30.
- Miller, D. (2007) Chinese vs African renaissance: a match made in heaven or what?. *South African Labour Bulletin*. 32(1):65-66.
- Mukora, J. (2008) Is the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) now ready to deliver on its objectives?. *Skills @ Work*. 2:47-60.
- Paterson, A., Visser, M. & Du Toit, J. (2008) Training stepped up: achievements and new challenges. *HSRC Review*. 6(4): 23-24.
- Peltzer, K. (2008) The road 'kill' factor. *HSRC Review*. 6(4): 31-32.
- Peltzer, K. (2008) Traditional male circumcision remains a dangerous business. *HSRC Review*. 6(2): 5-6.
- Phaswana-Mafuya, N. (2008) Obstacles in executing prevention plans for HIV birth infections. *HSRC Review*. 6(3): 37-38.
- Pillay, U. (2008) Future directions in urban policy. *HSRC Review*. 6(3): 28-29.
- Pillay, U. (2008) The 'mystification of capital': legal title for the low-income housing market. *HSRC Review*. 6(2): 25-26.
- Pillay, U., Roberts, B. & Bass, O. (2008) Field of dreams or despair?. *HSRC Review*. 6(3):7-8.
- Prinsloo, C. (2008) Extra classes, extra marks?: evaluation of a grade 8 study. *HSRC Review*. 6(3): 15-16.
- Prinsloo, C. (2008) Practice makes perfect - Limpopo study shows the value of exercising literacy muscles. *HSRC Review*. 6(4): 5-6.
- Prinsloo, C. (2008) Turning 'learning to read' into 'reading to learn': conclusions from a Limpopo literacy study. *HSRC Review*. 6(4): 7-8.
- Richter, L. (2008) No small issue: new action agenda for children affected by HIV/AIDS. *HSRC Review*. 6(3): 30-31.
- Roberts, B. & Hemson, D. (2008) Batho Pele principles, perceived municipal performance and political behaviour in South Africa. *Critical Dialogue: Public Participation in Review*. 4(1): 53-62.
- Roberts, B. & Reddy, V. (2008) Pride and prejudice: public attitudes toward homosexuality. *HSRC Review*. 6(4): 9-11.
- Roberts, B. (2008) Age of hope or anxiety?: the dynamics of fear of crime in South Africa. *HSRC Review*. 6(2): 9-10.
- Seager, J. (2008) Blowing hot or cold?: South African attitudes to climate change. *HSRC Review*. 6(3): 9-10.
- Setswe, G. & Zungu, L. (2008) Can SA lay claim to a 'sanitary revolution'?. *The Water Wheel*. March/April: 34-35.
- Sithole, P. (2008) The buoyancy factor: the tenacity of traditional leadership. *HSRC Review*. 6(3): 17-18.
- Sithole, P.M. (2007) From Shepstone to Mufamadi: the community as an object of local government systems. *Ikamva International Journal of Social Sciences and Humanities*. 1(2): 1-20.
- Streak, J., Yu, D. & Van der Berg, S. (2008) Measuring child poverty in South Africa. *HSRC Review*. 6(4): 33-34.
- Struwig, J. (2008) Not a playing nation. *HSRC Review*. 6(2): 11-12.
- Swartz, S. (2008) Being good in a bad world: what's 'moral' for township youth?. *HSRC Review*. 6(2): 7-8.
- Visser, M. & Kruss, G. (2008) Learnerships: focusing on the young unemployed. *HSRC Review*. 6(4): 15-17.

## Client and other research reports [93]

- Aliber, M. (2009) Exploring statistics: South Africa's national household surveys as sources of information about food security and subsistence agriculture. (March).
- Aliber, M. (2009) Strategies to support South African smallholders as a contribution to government's second economy strategy. (March).
- Altman, M. & Burns, J. (2008) Getting incentives right: the role of wage and employment subsidies and job search assistance programmes in reducing youth unemployment. (August).
- Altman, M. & Burns, J. (2008) Reducing youth unemployment in South Africa: where to intervene?. (August).
- Altman, M. & Marock, C. (2008) Employability of school leavers. (September).

Altman, M. (2009) Employment scenarios to 2014 & 2024 in the context of a global economic slowdown. (March).

Altman, M., Davies, R., Mather, A., Fleming, D. & Harris, H. (2008) The impact of electricity price increases and rationing on the South African economy. (Final report to the National Electricity Response Team (NERT), Economic Impact Task Team, July).

Altman, M., Mather, A., Fleming, D. & Harris, H. (2009) The impact of electricity price increases and rationing on the South African economy: potential energy savings: a review by sector: a review of potential incentives for promoting energy efficiency. (February).

Baiphethi, M. (2008) Measures to increase food production and mitigating against increased food prices: the Malawi case study. (November).

Baiphethi, M.N. & Jacobs, P.T. (2009) The contribution of subsistence farming to food security in South Africa. (March).

Bantwini, B. & Reddy, V. (2009) Evaluation of the programmatic support grant intervention for existing science centres. (Report commissioned by the Department of Science and Technology, March).

Biersteker, L. (2008) Scaling up Early Childhood Development (ECD) (0-4 years) in South Africa: a review of training qualifications, training provision and training delivery in relation to the needs of the National Integrated Plan for ECD and the ECD component of the Expanded Public Works Programme. (Commissioned by the Department of Education, April).

Blankley, W. & Moses, C. (2008) Main results of the South African innovation survey 2005 (covering the period 2002-2004). (Commissioned by the Department of Science and Technology, August).

Breier, M., Wildschut, A. & Mggolozana, T. (2008) Nursing in a new era. (Research brief, no. 1).

Carnoy, M. & Chisholm, L. (2008) Towards understanding student academic performance in South Africa: a pilot study of grade 6 mathematics lessons in Gauteng province. (Prepared for the Spencer Foundation, April).

Carter, J., Biersteker, L. & Streak, J. (2008) Costing centre-based early childhood development programmes for children under age five: case studies from the Western Cape. (September).

Chandan, U., Cambanis, E., Bhana, A., Boyce, G., Makoae, M., Mukoma, W. & Phakati, S. (2008) Evaluation of My Future is My Choice (MFMC): peer education life skills programme in Namibia: identifying strengths, weaknesses and areas for improvement. (Commissioned by Unicef, December).

Chipkin, I., Kivilu, J.M., Mnguni, P., Modisha, G., Naidoo, V., Ndletyana, M. & Sedumedi, S. (2008) A better life for all? Fifteen year review of the Free State Provincial Government. (Prepared for the Free State Provincial Government, December).

Cross, C. (2008) Toward effective spatial planning at municipal level: the TIP settlement typology and survey results. (Report to the Department of Science and Technology, July).

Davids, Y.D., Kivilu, J.M., Mncwango, B.M., Sedumedi, S.D., Diko, M.D., Sehume, T. & Mmotlane, R. (2008) Crime and social cohesion: investigating public perception: secondary data analysis report. (April).

Davids, Y.D., Kivilu, J.M., Ndletyana, M., Sedumedi, S., Diko, M.D., Sehume, T., Mmotlane, R. & Winnaar, L. (2009) IEC voter participation survey report 2008. (Commissioned by the Independent Electoral Commission (IEC), March).

Davies, R. & Thurlow, J. (2009) Formal-informal economy linkages and unemployment in South Africa. (March).

Davies, R. & Van Seventer, D. (2009) Development paths and employment. (March).

Davies, R. & Van Seventer, D. (2009) Leading indicators of employment in South Africa. (March).

Garcia, A., Arndt, C. & Ngandu, S. (2009) The economic influence of infrastructural expenditure: a multiplier decomposition and structural path analysis. (March).

Garisch, C., Netshitangani, T. & Kruss, G. (2009) Baseline evaluation of the Mnambithi Further Education and Training college. (Commissioned by DANIDA, Support to Education and Skills Development (SESD) Programme Phase II, January).

Hadland, A. (ed). (2008) Violence and xenophobia in South Africa: developing consensus, moving to action. (A partnership between the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) and the High Commission of the United Kingdom, October).

Hagg, G. (2008) Policy process on the system of provincial and local government: catalogue and analysis of public submissions. (Research report to the Department of Provincial and Local Government, April).

Hart, T. (2009) Food security definitions, measurements and recent initiatives in South Africa and southern Africa. (March).

Hawkins, T. (2009) Emerging markets and the global recession. (March).

Hemson, D. (2007) Mid-term review of the Expanded Public Works Programme: component 3: analysis and review. (Commissioned by Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit (SALDRU), University of Cape Town, Rutgers School of Law (State University of New Jersey, USA) and ITT (UK), October).

Hemson, D. (2007) Mid-term review of the Expanded Public Works Programme: research report: component one: perceptions of the EPWP by government officials. (Commissioned by Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit (SALDRU), University of Cape Town, Rutgers School of Law (State University of New Jersey, USA) and ITT (UK), July).

Hemson, D. (2007) Mid-term review of the Expanded Public Works Programme: synthesis report. (Commissioned by Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit (SALDRU), University of Cape Town, Rutgers School of Law (State University of New Jersey, USA) and ITT (UK), October).

## Research Outputs continued

- Hemson, D., Karuri-Sebina, G., Munthre, C. & Arnold, F. (2008) The view from the community: a preliminary socio-economic appraisal of the Communal Water House, Jansenville. (Report for the Department of Science and Technology, South Africa, July).
- Hemson, D., Roberts, B. & Bass, O. (2008) Women, water and workers in southern Africa: survey of attitudes of women trade unionists in the public sector in southern Africa, 30 July 2008. (Report for the Southern Africa Trust, September).
- Jacobs, P. (2009) Food consumption, expenditure and access. (March).
- Jhaveri, Y., Malherbe, S. & Robb, G. (2009) The implications of the global economic crisis for industrial sectors in South Africa. (March).
- Joffe, H. & Genesis Analytics, (2009) International policy responses of developing countries to the global economic crisis. (March).
- Kagwanja, P. & Kondlo, K. (2008) Saving Zimbabwe: an agenda for democratic peace. (Policy report for the Africa Policy Institute, July).
- Kahn, M., Blankley, W., Molotja, N., Rumbelow, J., Vlotman, N., Burns, A., Gastrow, M., Parker, S., Wilkinson, I., Sotashe, P., Reddy, M., Heath, K., Sibindana, M., Sikaka, W. & Mongo, N. (2009) National survey of research & experimental development (R&D) 2006/07. (Commissioned by the Department of Science and Technology, March).
- Kivilu, J.M., Davids, Y.D., Mncwango, B., Sehume, T., Sedumedi, S., Mmotlane, R. & Struwig, J. (2008) South African voter participation in elections: focus groups report 2008. (Commissioned by the Independent Electoral Commission (IEC)).
- Kivilu, M. wa, Ndletyana, M. & Davids, Y. (2009) Desktop review report on IEC voter participation. (Commissioned by the Electoral Commission (IEC), March).
- Kruss, G. (2008) Evidence from case studies of university practice in South Africa. (Working paper, September).
- Kruss, G. (2008) The South African National System of Innovation: potential and constraint. (Working paper, April).
- Kruss, G. (2009) Knowledge for development: the contribution of university-firm interaction in South Africa. (Working paper, March).
- Kruss, G., Lorentzen, J., Petersen, I., Adeoti, J., Odekunle, K., Adeyinka, F., Nabudere, D., Luutu, B., Tabaro, E. & Mayanja, D. (2008) Interactions between universities and firms: results of the survey of Nigerian manufacturing firms. (Working paper, April).
- Kruss, G., Lorentzen, J., Petersen, I., Adeoti, J., Odekunle, K., Adeyinka, F., Nabudere, D., Luutu, B.M., Tabaro, E. & Mayanja, D. (2009) Knowledge for development: university-firm interaction in sub-Saharan Africa: Nigeria country report. (March).
- Kruss, G., Lorentzen, J., Petersen, I., Nabudere, D., Luutu, B., Tabaro, E., Mayanja, D., Adeoti, J., Odekunle, K. & Adeyinka, F. (2008) Analysis of the National System of Innovation in Nigeria: context and emerging trends. (Working paper, April).
- Kruss, G., Lorentzen, J., Petersen, I., Nabudere, D., Luutu, B., Tabaro, E., Mayanja, D., Adeoti, J., Odekunle, K. & Adeyinka, F. (2008) Case studies of university-industry interaction in Uganda. (Working paper, November).
- Kruss, G., Lorentzen, J., Petersen, I., Nabudere, D., Luutu, B., Tabaro, E., Mayanja, D., Adeoti, J., Odekunle, K. & Adeyinka, F. (2008) Contextual policy framework for developing a National System of Innovation in Uganda. (Working paper, April).
- Kruss, G., Lorentzen, J., Petersen, I., Nabudere, D., Luutu, B., Tabaro, E., Mayanja, D., Adeoti, J., Odekunle, K. & Adeyinka, F. (2008) University-firm interaction in sub-Saharan Africa: evidence from case studies of university practice in Nigeria. (Working paper, November).
- Labadarios, D., Davids, Y.D., Mciza, Z. & Weir-Smith, G. (2009) The assessment of food insecurity in South Africa. (March).
- Ladzani, R. (2009) The impact of HIV/AIDS on food security and nutrition in South Africa. (February).
- Levine, S., Roberts, B., May, J., Bhorat, H., Duclos, J-Y., Thorbecke, E. & Araar, A. (2008) A review of poverty and inequality in Namibia. (Commissioned by the Namibian Central Bureau of Statistics and the National Planning Commission, October).
- Lowitt, S. (2008) The nature and dynamics of the plastics, paper and glass recycling sectors. (September).
- Makgamatha, M.M., Diedericks, G.A.M. & Kanjee, A. (2009) Pilot study of the grade 6 English (FAL) & mathematics assessment items. (Technical report prepared for the Department of Education, March).
- Makoe, M. & Mokomane, Z. (2008) Examining women's vulnerability to HIV transmission and the impact of AIDS: the role of peer education/peer support in Lesotho's garment industry. (Commissioned by CARE Lesotho-South Africa Country Office, June).
- Makoe, M., Dawes, A., Loffell, J. & Ward, C.L. (2008) Children's court inquiries in the Western Cape. (Final report to the Research Directorate, Department of Social Development, Provincial Government of the Western Cape, June).
- Matshe, I. (2009) Contribution of own-production to food security: evidence from sub-Saharan Africa. (March).



- Mbelle, N. & Setswe, G. (2008) HIV and AIDS strategy 2008-2012. (Commissioned by the Limpopo Department of Education, November).
- McCord, A., Willcox, O., Harvey, P., Vaidya, K. & Hemson, D. (2007) EPWP mid-term review: component 1: international PWP comparative study. (Commissioned by Southern Africa Labour and Development Research Unit (SALDRU), University of Cape Town, Rutgers School of Law (State University of New Jersey, USA) and ITT (UK), September).
- Meth, C. (2008) Social income in South Africa, an economy marred by high unemployment, poverty and extreme inequality. (April).
- Mncwango, M.B., Struwig, J. & Kivilu, J.M. (2008) A socio-economic impact study of the electrification process: training and monitoring report. (Commissioned by the Department of Minerals and Energy, October).
- Mncwango, M.B., Struwig, J., Mohlakoana, N. & Kivilu, J.M. (2008) A socio-economic impact study of the electrification process. (Commissioned by the Department of Minerals and Energy, September).
- Moletsane, R. & Reddy, V. (2008) Report: an assessment of the participation of women in set industry for Department of Science and Technology. (Commissioned by NACI, October).
- Moola, N. & Gordon, S. (2009) The potential impact of the global financial crisis on South Africa. (March).
- Morphet, T., Prosalendis, S., Mohlakoana, N., Hadland, A. & Davids, D. (2008) Red door impact study: phase two. (Commissioned by the Department of Economic Development and Tourism, Western Cape, September).
- Mukora, J., Visser, M.M., Roodt, J., Arends, F., Molefe, M. & Letseka, M. (2008) Impact assessment of learnerships and apprenticeships. (Commissioned by the Manufacturing, Engineering and Related Services Sector Education and Training Authority (MERSETA), September).
- Nabudere, D.W., Luutu, B. & Tabaro, E. (2008) A survey of university-industry interactions among selected bio-sector firms in Uganda. (Working paper, June).
- Peltzer, K. & Phaswana-Mafuya, R. (2009) Programme to improve implementation of the Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission of HIV in Gert Sibande district in Mpumalanga, South Africa: baseline assessment: preliminary report. (March).
- Peltzer, K., Matseke, G. & Metcalf, C. (2009) Review of HIV counselling and testing studies in South Africa.
- Peltzer, K., Phaswana-Mafuya, N., Ladzani, R., Ndabula, M., Davids, A., Dana, P., Metcalf, C. & Treger, L. (2008) Optimising the implementation of the Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission (PMTCT) of HIV programme in Camdeboo Local Service Area (LSA) of the Eastern Cape, South Africa: report on rapid baseline assessment. (July).
- Peltzer, K., Phaswana-Mafuya, N., Ladzani, R., Ndabula, M., Davids, A., Dana, P., Metcalf, C. & Treger, L. (2008) Optimising the implementation of the Prevention of Mother to Child Transmission (PMTCT) of HIV programme in Makana Local Service Area (LSA) of the Eastern Cape, South Africa: report on rapid baseline assessment. (August).
- Petersen, I. & Kruss, G. (2009) Firm interaction with universities and public research institutes: evidence from innovation and R&D surveys in South Africa. (Working paper, February).
- Petersen, I. (2008) Innovation in sub-Saharan Africa: competitiveness, capability and achievements in South Africa, Nigeria and Uganda. (April).
- Pillay, S., Barolsky, V., Naidoo, V., Mohlakoana, N. & Hadland, A. (2008) Citizenship, violence and xenophobia in South Africa: perceptions from South African communities. (Commissioned by the CEO of the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC), June).
- Plüddemann, A., Parry, C., Bhana, A. & Fourie, D. (2008) South African Community Epidemiology Network on Drug Use (SACENDU): alcohol and drug abuse trends: January-June 2008 (Phase 24). (November).
- Prinsloo, C.H. & Macdonald, C. (2008) An analysis of foundation phase materials for L1, L2, life skills & numeracy. (Commissioned by the Limpopo Department of Education (LDoE), March).
- Prinsloo, C.H. & Macdonald, C.A. (2007) An analysis of grade four natural sciences and human and social sciences texts and a comparison between grades 3 and 4. (Commissioned by the Limpopo Department of Education (LDoE), October).
- Prinsloo, C.H. (2008) Extra classes, extra marks?: report on the PlusTime Project. (Report prepared for the Western Cape Education Department, July).
- Prinsloo, C.H., Netshitangani, T. & Ntabanyane, G. (2008) The Mveledzandivho (knowledge creation) final evaluation: summary report. (Commissioned by JET Education Services, September).
- Prinsloo, C.H., Netshitangani, T., Ntabanyane, G. & Pereira, C. (2008) The Mveledzandivho (knowledge creation) summative evaluation technical report. (Commissioned by JET Education Services, September).
- Reddy, V. & Moletsane, R. (2009) The gendered dimensions of food security in South Africa: a review of the literature. (March).
- Reddy, V. & Weir-Smith, G. (2008) Africa's Social Accountability Profile (ASAP) Phase 1 report: a desk based study of Egypt, Kenya, Malawi, Mozambique, Senegal, Tanzania and Togo. (Report prepared for ANSA-Africa, March).
- Reeves, C., Heugh, K., Prinsloo, C.H., Macdonald, C., Netshitangani, T., Alidou, H., Diedericks, G. & Herbst, D. (2008) Evaluation of literacy teaching in primary schools of Limpopo province. (Commissioned by the Limpopo Department of Education (LDoE)).
- Rispel, L., Cloete, A., Metcalf, C. & Moody, K. (2008) Exploring coping strategies and life choices made by HIV-discordant couples in long-term relationships: insights from South Africa, Tanzania and Ukraine. (Funded by the World Health Organisation, via the Global Network of People Living with HIV/AIDS (GNP+), November).

## Research Outputs continued

Rispel, L., Metcalf, C., Cloete, A., Reddy, V., Townsend, L. & Zembe, Y. (2009) The Johannesburg/eThekweni Men's Study (JEMS): a rapid assessment of the HIV epidemic among men who have sex with men (MSM) in South Africa: technical report. (Commissioned by the United Kingdom Department for International Development (DFID), February).

Rispel, L., Peltzer, K., Phaswana-Mafuya, N., Dana, P., Metcalf, C. & Treger, L. (2008) Optimising the implementation of the prevention of mother to child transmission (PMTCT) of HIV programme in Kouga Local Service Area (LSA) of the Eastern Cape, South Africa: final report. (The baseline assessment was funded by a President's Emergency Plan for AIDS Relief (PEPFAR) grant received via the US Centre for Disease Control and Prevention, March).

Rochat, T., Mitchell, C. & Richter, L. (2008) The psychological, social and development needs of babies and young children and their caregivers living with HIV and AIDS. (Commissioned by the National Department of Health (Maternal, Child and Women's Health and Nutrition Cluster) and supported by Unicef).

Struwig, J., Roberts, B., Mncwango, M.B., Mohlakoana, N. & Kivilu, J.M. (2009) A socio-economic impact study of electrification: household perspective 2009. (Commissioned by the Department of Minerals and Energy, February).

Swartz, S., Van der Heijden, I., Makoae, M., Richter, L., Rozani, A., Runciman, T. & Ndimande, N. (2009) 'With a little help from my friends': exploring the impact of peer-led HIV intervention and psychosocial support groups for orphaned and vulnerable children in South Africa. (Report produced for the Harvard Centre for the Support of Peer Education, 31 March).

Weir-Smith, G. (2009) Assessment of public expenditures in agriculture in Mozambique: project report of the GIS component of the study. (Prepared for the Regional Strategic Analysis and Knowledge Support System for Southern Africa (ReSAKSS-SA), March).

Williamson, J. (2009) The impact of the crisis on semi-industrialized countries. (March).

# Annual financial statements

## Contents

Introduction	108
Report of the Auditor-General	109
Board report	113
Statement of financial performance	173
Statement of financial position	174
Statement of changes in net assets	175
Cash flow statement	176
Accounting policies	177
Notes to the Annual financial statements	188
Report of the HSRC Audit Committee 2008/09	216

# Annual financial statements

for the year ended 31 March 2009

## Introduction

The maintaining of accounting and other records, as well as an effective system of internal control, is the responsibility of the Board's CEO. In the opinion of the Board of the HSRC this requirement has been complied with.

The preparing of financial statements that fairly present the state of affairs of the HSRC as at year-end and the operating results for the year is the responsibility of the Board of the HSRC. The Auditors are expected to report on the Annual Financial Statements. The HSRC's Annual Financial Statements are prepared on the basis of the accounting policies set out therein. These policies have been complied with on a continuous basis.

### Approval and post-balance sheet events

The Board of the HSRC approved the 2008/09-Annual Financial Statements set out on pages 109 to 217 on 29 May 2009. In the Board's opinion the Annual Financial Statements fairly reflect the financial position of the HSRC at 31 March 2009 and the results of its operations for the period then ended. No material facts or circumstances have arisen between the date of the balance sheet and the date of approval, which affect the financial position of the HSRC as reflected in these Financial Statements.

The Board is of the opinion that the HSRC is financially sound and operates as a going concern, and it has formally documented the facts and assumptions used in its annual assessment of the organization's status.



Prof. G.J Gerwel  
Chairperson: HSRC Board



Dr O. Shisana  
CEO

**Pretoria, 29 May 2009**



# Report of the Auditor-General to Parliament on the annual financial statements and performance information of the Human Sciences Research Council

for the year ended 31 March 2009

## REPORT ON THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

### Introduction

1. I have audited the accompanying annual financial statements of the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) which comprise the statement of financial position as at 31 March 2009 and the statement of financial performance, the statement of changes in net assets and the cash flow statement for the year then ended, and a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory notes as set out on pages 177 to 215.

### The accounting authority's responsibility for the financial statements

2. The accounting authority is responsible for the preparation of these financial statements in accordance with the basis of accounting determined by the National Treasury as set out in accounting policy note 1.1 and in the manner required by the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act No. 1 of 1999) (PFMA) and for such internal control as the accounting authority determines is necessary to enable the preparation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

### The Auditor-General's responsibility

3. As required by section 188 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 read with section 4 of the Public Audit Act, 2004 (Act No. 25 of 2004) (PAA), my responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on my audit.
4. I conducted my audit in accordance with the International Standards on Auditing read with General Notice 616 of 2008, issued in Government Gazette No. 31057 of 15 May 2008. Those standards require that I comply with ethical requirements and plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.
5. An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgement, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.
6. I believe that the audit evidence I have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for my audit opinion.

# Report of the Auditor-General continued

## **Opinion**

7. In my opinion the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Human Sciences Research Council as at 31 March 2009 and its financial performance and its cash flows for the year then ended, in accordance with the basis of accounting determined by the National Treasury, as set out in the accounting policy note 1.1 and in the manner required by the PFMA.

## **Emphasis of matters**

Without qualifying my opinion, I draw attention to the following matters that relate to my responsibilities in the audit of financial statements;

## **Basis of accounting**

8. The public entity's policy is to prepare financial statements on the basis of accounting determined by the National Treasury as set out in accounting policy note 1.1.

## **Irregular and fruitless and wasteful expenditure**

9. As disclosed in note 27 to the financial statements, irregular expenditure to the amount of R6,086,000 was incurred, as proper procurement procedures had not been followed.
10. As disclosed in note 27 to the financial statements, fruitless and wasteful expenditure to the amount of R116,000 was incurred during the year ended 31 March 2009.

## **Restatement of corresponding figures**

11. As disclosed in note 26 to the financial statements, the corresponding figures for 31 March 2008 have been restated as a result of errors discovered during 2009 in the financial statements of the Human Sciences Research Council at, and for the year ended 31 March 2008.

## **Other matters**

12. Without qualifying my opinion, I draw attention to the following matter that relates to my responsibilities in the audit of the financial statements:

## **Governance framework**

13. The governance principles that impact the auditor's opinion on the financial statements are related to the responsibilities and practices exercised by the accounting authority and executive management and are reflected in the key governance responsibilities addressed below.

### Key governance responsibilities

14. The PFMA tasks the accounting authority with a number of responsibilities concerning financial and risk management and internal control. Fundamental to achieving this is the implementation of key governance responsibilities, which I have assessed as follows:

No	Matter	Y	N
<b>Clear trail of supporting documentation that is easily available and provided in a timely manner</b>			
1.	No significant difficulties were experienced during the audit concerning delays or the availability of requested information.	✓	
<b>Quality of financial statements and related management information</b>			
2.	The financial statements were not subject to any material amendments resulting from the audit.		✓
3.	The annual report was submitted for consideration prior to the tabling of the auditor's report.	✓	
<b>Timeliness of financial statements and management information</b>			
4.	The annual financial statements were submitted for auditing as per the legislated deadlines section 55 of the PFMA.	✓	
5.	Key officials were available throughout the audit process.	✓	
<b>Development and compliance with risk management, effective internal control and governance practices</b>			
6.	Audit committee		
	• The public entity had an audit committee in operation throughout the financial year.	✓	
	• The audit committee operates in accordance with approved, written terms of reference.	✓	
	• The audit committee substantially fulfilled its responsibilities for the year, as set out in section 77 of the PFMA and Treasury Regulation 27.1.8.	✓	
7.	Internal audit		
	• The public entity had an internal audit function in operation throughout the financial year.	✓	
	• The internal audit function operates in terms of an approved internal audit plan.		✓
	• The internal audit function substantially fulfilled its responsibilities for the year, as set out in Treasury Regulation 27.2.		✓
8.	There are no significant deficiencies in the design and implementation of internal control in respect of financial and risk management.		✓
9.	There are no significant deficiencies in the design and implementation of internal control in respect of compliance with applicable laws and regulations.		✓
10.	The information systems were appropriate to facilitate the preparation of the financial statements.		✓
11.	A risk assessment was conducted on a regular basis and a risk management strategy, which includes a fraud prevention plan, is documented and used as set out in Treasury Regulation 27.2.	✓	
12.	Delegations of responsibility are in place, as set out in section 56 of the PFMA.	✓	
<b>Follow up of audit findings</b>			
13.	The prior year audit findings have been substantially addressed.	✓	
14.	SCOPA resolutions have been substantially implemented.	N/A	N/A
<b>Issues relating to performance information</b>			
15.	The information systems were appropriate to facilitate the preparation of a performance report that is accurate and complete.	✓	
16.	Adequate control processes and procedures are designed and implemented to ensure the accuracy and completeness of reported performance information.	✓	
17.	A strategic plan was prepared and approved for the financial year under review for purposes of monitoring the performance in relation to the budget and delivery by the public entity against its mandate, predetermined objectives, outputs, indicators and targets Treasury Regulation 29.1.	✓	
18.	There is a functioning performance management system and performance bonuses are only paid after proper assessment and approval by those charged with governance.	✓	
15.	The public entity has obtained unmodified audit reports in the past. In order for the entity to enhance good		

# Report of the Auditor-General continued

practices the following must be addressed:

- Internal audit function must be effective.
- Policies and procedures should be monitored more regularly and carefully to maintain effective internal controls.
- Capacity of staff in financial reporting standards (SA Generally Accepted Accounting Practice) should be enhanced.

## REPORT ON OTHER LEGAL AND REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

### Report on performance information

16. I have reviewed the performance information as set out on pages 113 to 172.

### The accounting authority's responsibility for the performance information

17. The accounting authority has additional responsibilities as required by section 55(2)(a) of the PFMA to ensure that the annual report and audited financial statements fairly present the performance against predetermined objectives of the public entity.

### The Auditor-General's responsibility

18. I conducted my engagement in accordance with section 13 of the PAA read with General Notice 616 of 2008, issued in Government Gazette No. 31057 of 15 May 2008.
19. In terms of the foregoing, my engagement included performing procedures of an audit nature to obtain sufficient appropriate evidence about the performance information and related systems, processes and procedures. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgement.
20. I believe that the evidence I have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to report that no significant findings have been identified as a result of my audit.

### APPRECIATION

21. The assistance rendered by the staff of the Human Sciences Research Council during the audit is sincerely appreciated.

*Auditor-General*

Pretoria  
31 July 2009



**A U D I T O R - G E N E R A L**  
**S O U T H A F R I C A**

*Auditing to build public confidence*



# Report of the HSRC Board

for the year ended 31 March 2009

## 1. Mandate and objectives of the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC)

The mandate of the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) is derived from the Human Sciences Research Council Act, 2008 (Act No 17 of 2008). This act was assented to in September 2008, and came into operation on 5 December 2008.

The 2008 Human Sciences Research Council Act specifically provides for the continued existence of the HSRC that was established as a juristic person in Section 2 of the previous Human Sciences Research Act (Act No. 23 of 1968). It also provides for the smooth transition of decisions and activities under the previous act, in the sense that such decisions and activities will be regarded as having been done in terms of the new act.

The preamble to the 2008 Human Sciences Research Council Act outlines the mandated purpose of the HSRC, namely to promote human science research of the highest quality in South Africa in order to improve understanding of social conditions and processes of social change; and to engage with members of the human sciences community of South Africa, as well as of the rest of Africa and of the world, through networks and joint programmes of research on pressing social issues relevant to human welfare and prosperity.

The following points summarise the objectives of the HSRC as provided in Section 3 of Act 17 of 2008:

- To address developmental challenges in the Republic, elsewhere in Africa and in the rest of the world by means of strategic basic and applied research in human sciences,
- To inform the effective formulation and monitoring of policy, as well as to evaluate the implementation thereof,
- To stimulate public debate through the effective dissemination of fact-based research results;
- To help build research capacity and infrastructure for the human sciences,
- To foster research collaboration, networks and institutional linkages,
- To respond to the needs of vulnerable and marginalised groups in society through its research, and
- To develop and make available data sets underpinning research, policy development and public discussion of developmental issues.

Specific functions entrusted to the HSRC in Section 4 of the act provide more detail on how the above objectives may be attained, among others by:

- charging fees for conducting or commissioning research, or for rendering services in the field of the human sciences at the request of others; and
- providing advice to the minister on human and social science research, including research that should be undertaken, research utilisation, research promotion, human resource development in research, and any other matters incidental to promoting the human and social sciences.

The HSRC is a national public entity, listed in Schedule 3A of the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), No. 1 of 1999, as amended. The public-purpose mandate of the HSRC is aligned with the classification.

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

## 2. Governance of the HSRC

### 2.1 The governing body of the HSRC

In terms of Section 49 of the PFMA, the governing body of the HSRC is the accounting authority of the organisation. The Minister of Science and Technology is the executive authority of the HSRC, in terms of Section 63 of the PFMA.

Until December 2008, the governing body of the HSRC was known as the Council. The HSRC Council was established and performed duties as outlined in Section 4 of Act 23 of 1968. In this section of the act, provision was made for the appointment of a group of up to 10 people, including a chair, by the Minister of Science and Technology.

Council members were selected following a public nomination process, on grounds of having distinguished themselves in the field of the human sciences or possessing special qualifications in relation to some aspect of the functions of the HSRC. The same section of Act 23 of 1968 also contained reference to the Council-appointed president, who serves as chief executive officer (CEO) of the HSRC and a further, ex officio member, of the Council. The periods of office of council members and of the president of the HSRC were set at four years and five years respectively.

Section 5 of Act 17 of 2008 contains reference to the selection process, composition and periods of appointment of the governing body of the HSRC, now referred to as the HSRC Board.

Board members are appointed in their personal capacities and their period of office is four years. Members must have distinguished themselves in the field of the human sciences or possess special qualifications, experience or skills in relation to some aspect of the functions of the HSRC. The act also stipulates that the board should be broadly representative of the demographics of the Republic of South Africa as well as of the various sectors in the human sciences. It requires that at least one member appointed to the HSRC Board must have financial expertise, and at least one other member must be a distinguished representative of the social science research community in the rest of Africa. Furthermore, this section contains specific requirements regarding the selection process of board members, which includes involvement of the National Assembly in the process of approving shortlisted candidates. Board members may not serve for more than two consecutive terms, except when the terms office of all members lapse at the same time. The minister is then allowed to extend the terms of two members for a maximum of one additional term to ensure continuity. Sections 6, 7, 8 and 9 contain further guidelines on meetings, committees and remuneration of the board and its members.

In terms of Section 10 of Act 17 of 2008, the HSRC Board appoints, with the approval of the Minister of Science and Technology, a suitably skilled and qualified person as the chief executive officer (CEO) of the HSRC. The CEO is appointed for a period of five years, serves as ex officio member of the HSRC Board and reports to the board. The CEO may not serve more than two consecutive terms.

### 2.2 Members of the governing body

The Minister of Science and Technology appointed members of the HSRC Council in 2004, following due consultation and approval by the South African Cabinet. The four-year term of office of this council started on 1 November 2004 and expired on 31 October 2008.

Already in the 2007/08 budget year, the Department of Science and Technology (DST) embarked on a process of inviting and shortlisting nominations for new council members in accordance with the requirements of Act 23 of 1968.

With the approval and promulgation of Act 17 of 2008, new requirements for the composition, selection and appointment of board members had to be adhered to, and a new process started. Incumbent members of the HSRC Council were accordingly requested by the minister to remain in office until the new board was constituted. At 31 March 2009, members of the last council established in accordance with requirements of Act 23 of 1968 were therefore effectively serving as board members of the HSRC in terms of Act 17 of 2008.

Members of the governing body (council, subsequently board) of the HSRC during the 2008/09 period were:

Professor GJ Gerwel (chair)

Ms N Gasia

Dr P Gobodo-Madikizela

Professor WE Morrow (until 11 February 2009)

Mr ME Motala

Mrs P Ntombela-Nzimande

Mr SM Pityana

Mr MV Sisulu

Professor EC Webster

Dr O Shisana (ex officio as CEO of the HSRC)

Professor Wally Morrow, a dedicated board member since October 2002, died on 11 February 2009. Professor Morrow was a well-known academic whose career as a teacher in South African faculties of education stretched from the early 1970s until the end of the century. Apart from serving on the HSRC Council and its subcommittees, he was also a member of the Editorial Board of the HSRC Press. His insightful contributions will be sorely missed.

With the exception of Dr Shisana who serves as an ex officio member in her capacity as CEO of the HSRC, all other board members are deemed to be 'independent non-executive directors' of the HSRC as defined for state-owned enterprises (SOEs) in the September 2002 Protocol on Corporate Governance in the Public Sector. A non-executive director is a person who has not been employed by the SOE in any executive capacity for the preceding three financial years; and is (in relation to the SOE) not a significant supplier or customer, has no significant contractual relationship and is not a professional advisor, other than in his or her capacity as a director.

There was no need for induction or formal continuous education in the case of board members during the year under review. At the board meeting of 18 February 2009, incumbent members took note of the promulgation of Act 17 of 2008 and of the related requirements for the incoming board as well as for the HSRC as a whole.

### **2.3 Remuneration of board members**

Board members who are not HSRC staff members or government officials receive honoraria for the services they render to the HSRC in accordance with the relevant stipulation by the National Treasury.

Non-HSRC members of the audit and risk committee and the finance committee are reimbursed on an hourly claims basis according to professional fee schedules.

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

Where board members are requested to provide additional advisory services to the HSRC on the basis of their professional areas of expertise, they are reimbursed in accordance with the professional advisory fees recommended by the Auditor-General. These services include requests for a board member to serve on interview panels for executive directors (EDs) of the HSRC, in accordance with an agreement reached with the union, the Public Servants Association (PSA) in 1998.

More detail on the remuneration of board members and executive management are provided in Note 23.3 to the annual financial statements, appended to this report.

## **2.4 Board members' interest in contracts**

As of February 2008, all board members are required to complete a register of interests. This register is updated on an annual basis. Refer to Note 23 which contains full disclosure on related parties.

## **2.5 Meetings and subcommittees of the board**

The HSRC Board met on 22 May 2008, 21 August 2008 and 18 February 2009.

During 2008/09, the HSRC Board had five subcommittees. They are: an executive committee, an audit and risk committee, a finance committee, a human resources and remuneration committee, and a research committee. It was not considered necessary to establish a governance subcommittee (encouraged in section 9 of Act 17 of 2008), given the imminent appointment of a new board.

### **2.5.1 Executive committee**

The executive committee comprised the following members, in accordance with requirements of Section 4 of Act 23 of 1968:

Professor GJ Gerwel (chair)

Mr SM Pityana (chair of the audit committee)

Mrs P Ntombela-Nzimande (chair of the finance committee)

Dr P Gobodo-Madikizela (chair of the research committee)

Dr O Shisana (CEO)

The executive committee acts on behalf of the board with regard to the management of urgent issues when the board is not in session. It was not necessary for the executive committee to meet during the year under review.

### **2.5.2 Audit and risk committee**

During 2008/09 the audit and risk committee comprised three specialist external members and three members of the board.

The specialist members were:

Mr RJ Page-Shipp

Ms R Xaba

Mr A Mashifane

Board members on the audit and risk committee were:

Mr SM Pityana (chair)



Professor WE Morrow (until 11 February 2009)

Dr O Shisana (CEO)

The audit and risk committee functions as the audit committee of the HSRC in accordance with the PFMA and associated treasury regulations. It also functions as the risk committee of the HSRC, which is reflected in its formal terms of reference (Audit and Risk Committee Charter), adopted on 22 February 2007 in accordance with the requirements of the King II Report. These terms of reference are reviewed on an annual basis and are still in place. The committee structures its activities and reporting according to a comprehensive planned schedule that includes target dates.

The audit and risk committee submits a summary of its activities to the board on a regular basis. It also submits a report of its work for inclusion in the HSRC Annual Report.

The HSRC audit and risk committee met on 15 May 2008, 24 July 2008, and 12 February 2009.

The committee reviews periodic internal audit reports and monitors progress with the implementation of any recommendations for follow-up action that have been identified and approved. In addition, the audit and risk committee is also responsible for monitoring the scope and effectiveness of the outsourced internal audit function, and for reviewing ongoing risk management in the HSRC.

During 2008/09, the contract with the (then incumbent) outsourced internal audit service provider ended. Following a tender process in accordance with supply chain management procedures, a new service provider was appointed in June 2008. It was agreed at the meeting of 24 July 2008 that the new service provider would initially function according to an interim plan, with the development of a three-year rolling strategic internal audit plan and an annual audit plan based on a detailed risk assessment as first deliverables for this period. By 31 March, this process had not been concluded. This resulted in the HSRC not having an approved internal audit plan for the full financial year and also not meeting requirements of the Treasury Regulation 27.2. Subsequent to year-end, after due consideration by management and with the concurrence of the Committee, a decision was taken to terminate the outsourced internal audit service contract by mutual agreement.

### **2.5.3 Finance committee**

During 2008/09 the finance committee comprised one specialist external member, two members of the board and two internal members.

The specialist member was:

Mr A Mashifane

The members of the board on the finance committee were:

Mrs P Ntombela-Nzimande (chair)

Dr O Shisana (CEO)

The two internal members were the executive director of Support Services and the chief financial officer of the HSRC. The HSRC finance committee met on 15 May 2008, 17 July 2008 and 12 February 2009. The committee reviews the budgets and financial reports as well as financial policies of the HSRC prior to submission to the board for approval.

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

## **2.5.4 Human resources and remuneration committee**

The Human resources and remuneration committee comprised the following members:

Professor GJ Gerwel (chair)

Mr ME Motala

Mrs P Ntombela-Nzimande

Professor EC Webster

Dr O Shisana (CEO)

The committee met on 22 May 2008, 21 August 2008, and 18 February 2009. The committee reviews HR policies and reports including employment equity and skills development, annual mandates for salary negotiations, information on performance management in the HSRC as well as on the appointment and promotion of senior staff.

## **2.5.5 Research committee**

The research committee comprised the following members:

Dr P Gobodo-Madikizela (chair)

Professor GJ Gerwel

Ms N Gasas

Professor WE Morrow (until 11 February 2009)

Mr M E Motala

Mr SM Pityana

Mr MV Sisulu

Professor EC Webster

Dr O Shisana (CEO)

The research committee contributes to the development of the overall research portfolio and approach of the HSRC by engaging with HSRC management and staff on critical developments in the research arena. During 2008/09, opportunities in relation to 'the human and social dynamics grand challenge' were debated and contributions made towards the development of a position paper in this regard.

The research committee met on 25 September 2008.

Mr Motala, in his capacity as board member and member of the research committee, attended and contributed to the HSRC strategic planning lekgotla on 11 and 12 November 2008.

## **2.6 Responsibilities of the HSRC Board**

### **2.6.1 Delegations**

The PFMA requires organisations funded with public money to formalise delegations from the accounting authority to appropriate senior managers in the organisation. In accordance with Section 56 of the PFMA, the HSRC Council approved written delegations to the CEO on 15 August 2002. These in turn provided the framework for delegations from the CEO to the executive directors, which were approved on 29 May 2003. The onward delegations from the executive directors to directors and other senior levels of staff were approved on 20 May 2004. Delegations are updated on a regular basis to reflect changes in job designations and positions in the HSRC. The most recent version of the delegations was approved by the HSRC Council on 21 February 2008.

### **2.6.2 Shareholder's Compact**

Although this is not specifically required of governing bodies of public entities listed under Schedule 3A of the PFMA, Cabinet recommended that the HSRC should also conclude a shareholder's compact with its executive authority. This compact represents the agreement between the executive authority (minister) and the accounting authority (board) and is a reflection of the expectations of each party, expressed in terms of outcomes and outputs that need to be achieved. Expectations in relation to the performance of the HSRC are informed by its mandated objectives, as well as strategic objectives and performance targets outlined in its three-year strategic plan and the business plan for the forthcoming financial year. A framework for regular reporting and a schedule containing a list of supporting documents to be submitted to the DST are also included in the compact.

The first shareholder's compact between the governing body of the HSRC (then the HSRC Council) and the Minister of Science and Technology focused on the 2006/07 budget year and was signed in May 2006. The second Shareholders Compact that covered the 2007/08 budget year, was signed on 17 May 2007. An updated compact, to cover the 2008/09 budget year, was signed on 22 May 2008.

The board is satisfied that the HSRC complied with the requirements of implementing and managing the Shareholder's Compact during 2008/09. Regular monitoring of progress made against performance targets enabled its management to remain active in addressing potential problems throughout the year. Thus negative deviations were kept to a minimum. The HSRC Board appreciates the way in which the DST and the minister proceeded to honour the undertakings made in the Shareholder's Compact by the executive authority. Section 3 of this report provides a high-level summary of progress made against objectives set in the HSRC Business Plan for 2008/09.

### **2.6.3 Policy on governance standards for SETIs**

A policy on governance standards for science, engineering and technology institutions (SETIs) was introduced by the DST during 2006/07. This policy calls for increased interactions between the executive authority and the accounting authority of a science council. To achieve this end, a chair forum, a chief executive officers' forum and a chief financial officers' forum were established. Meetings called by the DST were duly attended and matters of common concern were identified to inform planning for future engagements.

### **2.6.4 Strategic risk management**

Under the guidance of the audit committee, the first strategic assessment of the HSRC's risk areas was conducted in 2001/02. During 2005/06, the outsourced internal audit service provider assisted the HSRC in identifying and prioritising strategic risks, and in developing a structured plan for implementing effective and ongoing risk management in the organisation. The council approved the resultant risk policy framework for the HSRC at its meeting on 9 February 2006, as recommended by the audit committee. Prioritised risks were identified in 2006/07. Plans to deal with each of these risks were subsequently developed, and also informed the internal audit plan for 2007/08 and the first part of 2008/09.

The day-to-day supervision of risk management in the HSRC is the task of the chief risk officer (CRO). During 2006/07 and 2007/08 the chief financial officer (CFO), who was appointed at executive director level, also served as chief risk officer. A risk and compliance officer (RCO), reporting to the executive director of finance, was appointed in 2007/08 to ensure the appropriate roll-out and ongoing review of the risk and fraud prevention strategies of the HSRC. During 2008/09, the risk and compliance officer reported to the executive director of support services, who also served as the chief risk officer of the HSRC.

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

The risk and compliance unit, under the leadership of the risk and compliance officer, established the HSRC Risk Management Forum during 2008/09. This forum consisted of representatives ('risk champions') from each research and support unit in the HSRC. Introductory basic risk management training was offered to risk champions. The main aim of the forum was to provide a platform for reporting on and monitoring priority risks in the respective units to ensure that overall awareness of risks and mitigating factors was increased. Staff communication was further augmented by information updates in the HSRC internal newsletter, the Hearsay.

During 2008/09 the internal audit service provider conducted an overall strategic risk identification and assessment in accordance with risk areas that had been identified in the previous year. The initial assessment was followed by a workshop with executive managers. This led to establishing a detailed strategic risk register for which mitigating strategies were identified and risk owners allocated. A revised framework needed to be developed for review by the audit and risk committee, to form the basis for the internal audit plan.

The approved HSRC Risk Management Framework has continued to guide and assist management and officials to understand and effectively carry out their responsibilities regarding the implementation of risk management in the organisation. The risk and compliance unit will continue to monitor the risk register and identify emerging risks in the HSRC, while the internal audit service providers will review the effectiveness of the system of risk management biannually.

## **2.6.5 Fraud prevention**

In accordance with the requirements of the PFMA, a high-level fraud prevention plan that included an associated implementation framework was approved by the HSRC Council in May 2005. This plan remained operational until it was replaced by the comprehensive fraud prevention strategy, and its detailed implementation plan, approved in May 2007. A whistle-blowing hotline was also established. It provides an effective and confidential channel for employees to anonymously blow the whistle on workplace misconduct such as theft, fraud, dishonesty, harassment, unethical behaviour, and workplace safety hazards.

## **2.6.6 Corporate ethics and register of interests**

During 2006/07, the HSRC Council approved a revised code of business ethics plus a framework for the related register of interests for the HSRC. The risk and compliance officer in the HSRC has been entrusted with the implementation and annual updating of the register of interests.

## **2.6.7 Research ethics and research ethics committee**

The HSRC Council approved the establishment of a research ethics committee (REC) in 2002. The mandate of the REC is to review all HSRC research proposals from the perspective of research ethics. The research ethics committee aims to promote a culture of ethical conduct and research integrity in the HSRC, and reports annually to the board.

The committee began functioning in 2003 and successfully applied to the US Office of Research Protections for Federalwide Assurance within its first year of operation. Its IRB (Institutional Review Board) status remains valid, and its Federalwide Assurance reference number FWA 00006347 is posted at <http://ohrp.cit.nih.gov/search/asearch.asp>. The committee was reconstituted in November 2005 and November 2008. The three-year term of office of current members will thus end on 31 October 2011. It has seven external local members, one international advisor and 15 internal representatives from research units (in the case of research units with more than one representative, some members may attend on a rotation basis). Where necessary, the committee may recognise the authority of ethics committees at other institutions to approve proposals on behalf of the HSRC. Proposals that are submitted

by researchers who are not affiliated with the HSRC may also be reviewed on request. In such instances, the ethical review is undertaken according to approved conditions and a predetermined fee is payable.

In the financial year under review, the research ethics committee met ten times and considered some 65 new project proposals, seven applications for exemption from ethical review, 10 applications for amendments to studies and an additional three extensions. Of the new applications, 60 had been approved by the end of the financial year, some following the incorporation of feedback from the committee and resubmission. All the applications for extension of studies were approved.

During 2008/09 the external members of the research ethics committee were:

- Professor Doug Wassenaar – School of Psychology, University of KwaZulu-Natal, Pietermaritzburg (chair)
- Dr Mantoa Mokhachane (vice-chair) – Chris Hani Baragwanath Hospital, Soweto
- Professor Peter Cleaton-Jones – Steve Biko Centre for Bioethics, University of the Witwatersrand
- Dr Jerome Singh – Centre for the AIDS Programme of Research in South Africa (CAPRISA), Doris Duke Medical Research Centre, Nelson R. Mandela School of Medicine, University of KwaZulu-Natal, Durban
- Ms Ann Strode – Faculty of Law, University of KwaZulu-Natal, Pietermaritzburg
- Ms Anne Pope – Department of Private Law, University of Cape Town
- Ms Nicole Mamottee – UKZN/UNAIDS African AIDS Vaccine Programme's Ethics, Law and Human Rights Collaborating Centre
- Dr Reidar Lie – Professor of Bioethics, NIH Department of Bioethics, University of Bergen, Norway (international adviser)

### **2.6.8 Going concern status of the HSRC**

The HSRC Board reviewed the annual financial statements for 2008/09 and information regarding the forthcoming financial year, to assess the going concern status of the HSRC. Based on this information, the board has every reason to believe that the HSRC will remain a going concern:

- It continues to receive substantial Parliamentary grant funding. Its total Parliamentary allocation for 2009/10 is R164,58 million (inclusive of VAT). The projected MTEF allocation for 2010/11 is R189,47 million (inclusive of VAT).
- In terms of funding for 2008/09, the HSRC has succeeded in raising a total amount of R325,3 million, the highest amount it has ever achieved. This amount was made up of income from the Parliamentary grant, and external income – notably external research income from a range of external sources – to supplement funding from its Parliamentary grant.
- Research revenue increased by 34% from the 2007/08 financial year indicating sustainability in earnings.
- At 31 March 2009, the statement of the financial position of the HSRC shows that it had already secured R52,2 million as 'income received in advance'. The amount represents some 31% of its external research income target of R168,2 million, for the 2009/10 budget year. If other sources of funding, notably the VAT-exclusive Parliamentary grant allocation for 2009/10, are added to this amount, the total income secured to date is R195,9 million, or 62% of the total income budget of R315 million for the year. The HSRC continues to receive rental income from the Department of Public Works, for a section of the Pretoria office building which should total R12,8 million for the 2009/10 financial year.
- This brings total income available for 2009/10 to over 66% of budget.
- The statement of financial position reflects total assets of the organisation at 31 March 2009 as R257,9 million. This represents a significant increase on the total asset value of R184,1 million as at 31 March 2008.
- Capital and reserves increased from R94,7 million at 31 March 2008 to R166,4 million at 31 March 2009.



# Report of the HSRC Board continued

- Total current assets at R85,5 million was less than the current liabilities of R90 million. The current ratio is then 0,95 which means that the HSRC had 95 cents in current assets to cover every 100 cents in current liabilities. However, income received in advance of R52,2 million is included with the current liabilities, hence the unfavourable current ratio.
- Once work has been performed, the liability will reduce, resulting in a favourable current ratio.
- There has been a substantial increase in fixed assets, from R91,5 million in 2007/08 to R170,5 million in the current financial year, representing an increase of 86,3%. This is inclusive of a revaluation upwards of land and buildings of R69 million as at 31 March 2009.
- The debt to asset ratio is 1:3 This means that the HSRC had a liability of 100 cents for each 300 cents it holds in total assets.
- A decrease of 15% in trade and other receivables as compared to the prior financial year was accompanied by a larger decrease of 15,6% in trade payables.
- The HSRC continues to generate a net positive cash flow from its operating activities.

More detailed financial information, including extensive notes, can be found in the audited annual financial statements appended to this report.

## **2.7 Losses, irregularities and other matters**

Losses or irregularities are referred to in Section 55(2)(b) of the PFMA, and defined in the Materiality Framework developed and agreed to in terms of Treasury Regulation 28.1.5.

The framework, adopted by the council on 29 May 2003, contains details on fiduciary duties of the accounting authority in terms of Section 50 of the PFMA; matters that must be reported in the annual report and financial statements (Section 55); and information to be submitted to the accounting authority (Section 54). In terms of Section 55, the following are specified as matters that must be reported on in the annual report and financial statements:

- (i) any material losses through criminal conduct and any irregular expenditure and fruitless and wasteful expenditure that occurred during the financial year;
- (ii) any criminal or disciplinary steps taken as a consequence of such losses or irregular expenditure or fruitless and wasteful expenditure;
- (iii) any losses recovered or written off;
- (iv) any financial assistance received from the State and commitments made by the State on its behalf; and
- (v) any other matters that may be prescribed.

Any such losses, irregularities and related matters are disclosed in the notes to the annual financial statements accompanying this report. The HSRC Board is satisfied that the organisation acted swiftly and comprehensively to address all the matters identified during 2008/09.

## **2.8 Judicial proceedings filed during the year**

Two cases of fraud from 2004/05 and 2007/08 respectively, were underway during 2008/09. Both criminal matters were reported to the SA Police Services for action and adjudication at the time. During 2008/09, one case was provisionally withdrawn, but further evidence is being obtained and the matter will be re-instated on the court roll. The other case is still underway.

Civil matters dealt with during the year include summons and counter-summons issued in relation to non-payment of invoices by the HSRC due to malperformance of a service provider; the recovery of salaries unduly paid to former employees following their resignations; and the recovery of monies paid to a subcontractor in Kenya, which could not be accounted for.

The HSRC is also recovering bad debts from employees who received but have not yet settled monetary advances; and it has acted on an anonymous call received via its fraud hotline, regarding an employee who forged a matric certificate to gain employment at the organisation. The employee was dismissed following a disciplinary hearing.

## 2.9 Other matters

### 2.9.1 The 2003 Institutional Review of the HSRC

The report of the 1997/98 system-wide review of science councils and national research facilities in the country recommended that institutional reviews be undertaken on a five-yearly cycle to evaluate progress and implementation of earlier recommendations. During 2003/04 the DST entrusted to the then HSRC Council the responsibility of providing terms of reference for and to oversee the process of an independent institutional review of the HSRC. The duly appointed Institutional Review Panel submitted their report to the council in November 2003, following which the report was published and widely distributed for public comment.

The recommendations of the review panel, and the HSRC's response to these recommendations, fed into subsequent strategic planning processes of the HSRC. More specifically, the strategy implemented since 2005 provided a vehicle for integrating and operationalising recommendations of the 2003 Panel throughout the HSRC. Table 1 illustrates the extent to which recommendations made in 2003 were handled and institutionalised in the HSRC, also by means of its annual business plan and performance targets arranged according to the acronym 'PAITECS' (Public purpose, Africa focus, Implementation networking, Transformation, Excellence, Capacity development, Sustainability).

**Table 1: Alignment between strategic business objectives and recommendations of the 2003 Institutional Review Panel**

High-level recommendation	Strategic priority under PAITECS	2008/09 Business Plan objective
Engaging with stakeholders on the role and public purpose of the HSRC, towards incorporating these in a new act.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Public purpose</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To consolidate and strengthen the public-purpose research activities of the HSRC.</li> </ul>
Institutionalising and systematising the numerous collaborations with research partners, especially in higher education institutions.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Public purpose</li> <li>Africa focus</li> <li>Implementation networking</li> <li>Capacity building</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To contribute to prioritised policy issues of national importance through the introduction of a cross-cutting policy unit.</li> </ul>
Further extending outreach into the rest of Africa through projects and organisational partnerships, under Nepad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Africa focus</li> <li>Transformation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To strengthen research collaboration and network activities in partnership with higher education institutions in South Africa as well as individuals and institutions in other parts of Africa.</li> </ul>

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

High-level recommendation	Strategic priority under PAITECS	2008/09 Business Plan objective
Deepening and widening transformation in the organisation and its research activities, taking into account gender, disability and race and marginalised communities and individuals.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Public purpose</li> <li>• Implementation networking</li> <li>• Transformation</li> <li>• Excellence</li> <li>• Capacity building</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To increase the relevance, utilisation and potential impact of human and social science research by means of collaboration with strategic partners and implementation networks.</li> <li>• To contribute to human capital development in the human and social sciences through the consolidation and expansion of research internship and fellowship programmes.</li> <li>• To accelerate transformation in the HSRC, with particular reference to African representation in senior research and management position.</li> </ul>
Improving management information systems, updating policies and procedures, and providing support to staff in relation to external earnings pressures.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Public purpose</li> <li>• Capacity building</li> <li>• Sustainability</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To retain and empower critical staff and skills in the HSRC.</li> <li>• To ensure the financial sustainability of the HSRC.</li> </ul>
Addressing issues of data preservation, intellectual property and information sharing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Public purpose</li> <li>• Implementation networking</li> <li>• Excellence</li> <li>• Capacity building</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To promote and affirm research excellence by emphasising publication of peer reviewed scholarly articles by senior as well as emerging HSRC researchers.</li> </ul>

Section 1 of this report refers to the promulgation of the new HSRC Act 17 of 2008. This may be regarded as clear evidence that the recommendations of the 2003 review were taken forward and implemented by decision-makers in the HSRC, DST and broader socio-political arena. The objectives of the HSRC, as reflected in this act are closely aligned with the public-purpose objectives identified by the 2003 review panel. Other recommendations of the 2003 review panel also informed elements of the HSRC Act, for instance the composition of the HSRC Board.

During 2006/07, 2007/08 and 2008/09, the HSRC embarked on the review of research units, in preparation for the next institution-wide review, which is expected to take place in 2009/10.

## **2.9.2 External review of research programmes in the HSRC**

One of the undertakings listed in the Shareholder's Compact between the HSRC Board and its executive authority, the Minister of Science and Technology, is that the HSRC will ensure independent evaluations of projects, programmes or units within the institution and will make such results available to the executive authority. The HSRC Council approved guidelines for such programme or unit reviews during 2006/07, and agreed that the purpose of these reviews would be as follows:

- to provide an opportunity for the restatement of research programme mandates and objectives;

- to take stock of congruence with, and progress towards those objectives;
- to assess the relevance and effectiveness of the programmes;
- to assess the impact of the programme on public policy and the community, and stakeholder perceptions of the programme outputs;
- to evaluate the scientific rigour of the programme as measured by peer reviewed publications output;
- to test alignment with HSRC objectives and priorities such as transformation, gender equity and capacity development; and
- to assess capacity to mobilise external resources.

Each external programme review consists of two parts, namely programme self-evaluation and review by a panel of experts relevant to the programme in question. Such reviews are conducted every five years, unless special circumstances within a programme or the HSRC require an earlier review. It was further agreed to adopt a staggered approach in respect of scheduling the reviews of programmes and units.

Three research programmes were reviewed in 2006/07 and 2007/08, namely Child, Youth, Family and Social Development (CYFSD), Democracy and Governance (D&G) and Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health (SAHA). This was followed by the Education, Science and Skills Development (ESSD) research programme in 2008/09.

The ESSD review took place from 8 to 12 September 2008. This was a mid-term review, since the programme ESSD, in its current form, had been in existence for approximately three years since the re-alignment of research units in 2005/06. However, the separate units brought together under ESSD had been active for more than five years, and ESSD itself had identified this review as an opportunity to review the success of the consolidation of the programme, and to help chart its future direction. The review panel consisted of Professor Dan Ncayiyana who chaired the panel and four experts, two local and two international, namely:

- Ms Adrienne Bird, South Africa,
- Professor KJ Joseph, Centre for Development Studies, India,
- Professor Reitumetse Mabokela, Michigan State University, USA, and
- Professor John Volmink, UMALUSI chair for Quality Assurance in General and Further Education, South Africa.

The report of this mid-term review was discussed by the executive management team of the HSRC at its March 2009 workshop, and will be presented to the HSRC Board for consideration and adoption in May, following which the report will be submitted to the DST and to the minister.

It is expected that the Knowledge Systems (KS) cross-cutting unit will be reviewed during 2009/10.

### ***2.9.3 Forthcoming institutional review of the HSRC***

The next institutional review of the HSRC is due to take place in 2009/10. Practical aspects of the review will be informed by consultation with the DST as well as an in-house planning process.

The forthcoming institutional review will take place after a new minister and board have taken office. It will be able to draw on institutional self-evaluation as well as reports from ongoing reviews in the form of research programme reviews, regular performance reporting via the Shareholder's Compact as well as extensive external auditing by the Auditor-General. The review provides an excellent opportunity for the HSRC, its executive leadership and its board to identify priorities for the next five-year period. It is expected to facilitate reflection on new future challenges and opportunities, as the HSRC and its new board enter a new era of development in its own history (following

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

promulgation of Act 17 of 2008), of the country (following the 2009 elections) and the world (also with the challenges of a different economic dispensation). The outgoing HSRC Board has therefore encouraged the institution to identify key questions about its own future, to feed into the review agenda and institutional self-evaluation process. It has also contributed to the development of such questions at its February 2009 meeting, when the strategic and business plans of the HSRC were discussed and approved, and continued to do so at its May 2009 meeting, when this report covering the 2008/09 financial year was discussed and approved.

## **2.10 Self-assessment of performance**

A protocol on corporate governance was developed for public entities such as state-owned enterprises and national government business enterprises, to ensure adherence to requirements outlined in the King II Report. As a national public entity, the HSRC is not formally bound by all the provisions of the protocol but nevertheless strives to adhere to the principles outlined in it. In terms of the protocol, governing bodies should conduct regular self-assessments of their performance.

The HSRC Board did not conduct a formal self-assessment of its performance during 2008/09, but does reflect on matters related to the typical sets of questions contained in self-assessment instruments for boards of directors of public companies on an ongoing basis. The information provided in this section (Section 2) of the report of the HSRC Board bears evidence of this. A formal annual self-evaluation exercise would take place at the May 2009 Board meeting.

In summary, the following provides an overview of the board's self-evaluation of performance during 2008/09. It should be borne in mind that practical transitional requirements necessitated the Minister of Science and Technology to request members of the council established in terms of Act 23 of 1968 to stay in office until the establishment of a new HSRC Board in accordance with requirements of Act 17 of 2008.

### *Composition of the HSRC Board*

See Section 2.2 of this report.

The Minister of Science and Technology is mandated to select and appoint members of the HSRC Board on a four-year term of office, following a broad consultative process. Any formal review of the size, mix of skills, expertise and experience in relation to the effective, efficient and accountable functioning of the board thus needs to be undertaken in the context of the relevant legislation.

It is acknowledged that the current board is not constituted in accordance with the requirements of Act 17 of 2008, as explained above as well as in section 2.2 of this report.

Board members serving during 2008/09 are experienced in this work, with four approaching conclusion of a second (extended) term of office by 31 March 2009.

Board members were satisfied with the level and range of skills and expertise available among members. The board also benefited from diversity in terms of age, gender and racial composition.

### *Board subcommittees*

See Section 2.5 of this report.

Board members are satisfied with the composition and performance of its subcommittees, as well as the flow of information from subcommittees to support deliberations and decision-making at board meetings.



#### *Meetings of the board*

See Section 2.5 of this report.

HSRC Board members expressed their general satisfaction with the performance of the board during 2008/09. The documentation made available to board members was well structured and agenda items informative to inform discussion and appropriate action. All meetings were chaired skilfully and effectively, enabling detailed discussion on matters of importance without losing sight of matters requiring proper noting and approval.

#### *Board mandate*

The relevant legislation (HSRC as well as PFMA) clearly outline the mandate of the governing body of the HSRC, which is considered appropriate for a national public entity such as the HSRC.

#### *Orientation and continuing education of members*

Formal orientation and continuing education was not deemed to be necessary. Board members were kept apprised of important developments including the contents of the HSRC Bill and Act as well as other relevant draft legislation and benchmarking documents in the area of corporate governance.

The HSRC also provided all board members with complimentary copies of HSRC publications and access to library and information services.

#### *Code of business conduct and ethics*

Board members are satisfied with the current application of these codes. Designated subcommittees of the new board will continue to oversee and support in this area.

#### *Nomination and selection of board members*

The nomination and selection is done according to legislated guidelines. Possible areas for future improvement could involve a simplified process and provision for selection of alternates from shortlisted candidates, should vacancies occur during the four-year term of office of the next board.

#### *Compensation of members*

Compensation is according to guidelines, and appropriate for board members of a national public entity.

#### *Assessment of board performance*

The chair and members of the HSRC Board expressed their satisfaction with the overall performance of the board. The board reviews and reports on a regular basis on the overall performance of the HSRC against performance objectives and targets, using key performance indicators developed for this purpose. Section 6 of this report contains an overview of such performance during 2008/09. The HSRC Board will continue to report on performance against such objectives and targets in terms of the Shareholder's Compact entered into with the Minister of Science and Technology.

Although performance against such predetermined targets can be regarded as indicative of institutional performance, the HSRC Board wishes to place on record that such performance measures provide but one perspective on the extent to which an organisation such as the HSRC, under the auspices of its board, has responded to its public-purpose mandate. This full report for 2008/09 as well as the associated annual report should be regarded as further evidence of reflection on the performance of the HSRC Board during the year under review.

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

The current HSRC Board, and the council that preceded it, played a crucial role in overseeing the ongoing transformation of the HSRC, with particular reference to strategic CEO interventions during this period. In addition to engaging with strategic issues during quarterly meetings of the board and its subcommittees, board members also attend important planning and consultative meetings of the HSRC, for instance the annual researchers' conference and strategic planning lekgotla.

Examples of major contributions made by the accounting authority (the HSRC Board, previously HSRC Council) during 2008/09 include:

- Signing of the Shareholder's Compact between the accounting authority and executive authority (Minister of Science and Technology);
- Approval of the three-year strategic plan for 2008/09 to 2010/11 and the business plan for 2008/09, both of which are aligned with the HSRC's mandate as well as national and continental priorities;
- Monitoring of HSRC progress against stated objectives in the 2008/09 business plan;
- Regular engagement, as part of the quarterly meeting schedule, with the research agendas of research units of the HSRC;
- The approval of several new policies and procedures, including policies that relate to IT and revisions to the HR policies, and
- Participation in meetings of the research subcommittee, particularly to reflect on implications of the new Ten-year Plan for Innovation and the 'Grand challenge of human and social dynamics' included in the plan.

The outgoing board also reflected on the principles it adhered to and on contributions made in the course of its term of office, which started in November 2004. Apart from overseeing matters of financial management and performance, it also ensured that deeper considerations related to the role and purpose of the HSRC informed its work. The HSRC Board emphasised the need to uphold a balance between independence and accountability; and also between critical, reflective, longer-term research and shorter-term, needs-driven work. The board supported the rights of public intellectualism in the HSRC, and noted with appreciation the responsible way in which HSRC staff in general applied this principle. It took pride in the way the HSRC continued to provide research-based information of high quality that informed decisions in government. The balance between quality and impact was regarded as part of the culture of the HSRC as a relevant, public-purpose organisation.

Matters that are expected to remain high on the agenda of the new HSRC Board will be identified and prioritised in the forthcoming institutional review. The current board of the HSRC identified the following issues as priorities going forward:

- Monitoring the work of HSRC management as they address new HSRC priorities;
- Confirming the role of the HSRC in providing support for the monitoring and evaluation of government policies and programmes, in providing research data to support government wide planning, and in providing support for the implementation of programmes through demonstration centres;
- Responding to opportunities to mainstream – also in national, regional, continental and international research agendas – research on human and social dynamics that will support planning and interventions aimed at sustainable development, poverty reduction and improving quality of life;
- Finding appropriate approaches to identify priorities, coordinate and support research on the 'Grand challenge of human and social dynamics' in the context of the National Ten-year Plan on Innovation;
- Developing models of research collaboration in consultation with higher education institutions and other role-players in South Africa, other parts of Africa and abroad;
- Ongoing efforts to support research capacity development at both individual and institutional level;

- Continued transformation and empowerment of the workforce at all levels, so that disparities associated with race, gender and disability are eradicated;
- Identifying and managing risks that could potentially affect the sustainability and reputation of the organisation; and
- Ongoing commitment to improving the quality and impact of the research of the HSRC.

## 2.11 Appreciation

The HSRC Board wishes to express its appreciation to Dr Olive Shisana, the CEO, for the way in which she continues to position the HSRC as relevant, non-partisan, accountable and excellent, world-class research organisation. Her contributions as head of the organisation and as research leader exemplify the commitment of the HSRC as a whole to serve the research needs of the country and the broader development region, in collaboration with relevant research and development partners. The board wishes to commend the CEO, the senior management team and all members of the HSRC staff on their hard work to meet shared strategic objectives, and to address priority developmental needs at local, provincial, national and regional levels through its research without losing sight of institutional accountability and regulatory compliance. We remain proud to be associated with the work, the shared vision and values, and the public-purpose mandate of the HSRC.

The professional and critical support from the Department and Ministry of Science and Technology is highly valued. The engagement of members of the portfolio committee on Science and Technology, as well as other structures of legislative bodies with issues relevant to the work of the HSRC, is appreciated.

The effective and efficient functioning of the board and its subcommittees is highly dependent on the quality of services rendered by its secretariat. The dedication and competent support from the Secretary of the HSRC Board, the CEO as well as from related management and support structures in the HSRC are gratefully acknowledged.

## 3. Organisational developments

### 3.1 Vision, strategic direction and priorities: PAITECS

The vision of the HSRC is as follows:

The HSRC intends to serve as a knowledge hub where public policy and discourse on current and future challenges for South Africa and the African continent are independently researched, analysed and informed, and where research-based solutions to human and social problems are developed.'

Table 1 in Section 2.9.1 provides a summary of the main business objectives in the HSRC Business Plan for 2008/09. These business objectives also appear in the three-year strategic plan for 2008/09 to 2010/11.

The HSRC identified a number of strategy-critical or 'sentinel' performance indicators to be linked with key performance areas, and associated with each of the major business objectives of the organisation. These were summarised and arranged under headings that formed the acronym 'PAITECS'. The strategic business objectives map onto sentinel PAITECS indicators, as follows:

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

**Table 2: HSRC business objectives and PAITECS indicators**

	<b>Performance area</b>	<b>Strategic business objective</b>	<b>Indicator</b>
P	Public purpose	To consolidate and strengthen public-purpose research activities of the HSRC. To conduct research and engender dialogue relative to policy issues of national priority through the work of a cross-cutting policy analysis unit and evidence-based demonstration centres	Percentage of all research projects that are conducted for the benefit of the public.
A	Africa focus	To strengthen research collaboration and network activities in partnership with higher education institutions in South Africa as well as individuals and institutions in other parts of Africa.	Percentage of all research projects with a budget of R1 million or above that are done collaboratively with African researchers in other parts of the continent.  Number of visiting research fellows from elsewhere in Africa at the HSRC
I	Implementation networking	To increase the relevance, utilisation and potential impact of human and social science research by means of collaboration with strategic partners and implementation networks.	Percentage of large research projects with implementation networks.
T	Transformation	To accelerate transformation in the HSRC, with particular reference to African representation in senior research and management positions.  To retain and empower critical staff and skills in the HSRC.	Percentage of all researchers at senior level (SRS and above) who are African.  Percentage of all researchers at senior level (SRS and above) who are coloured. Percentage of all researchers at senior level (SRS and above) who are Indian. Percentage of all researchers at senior level (SRS and above) who are white. Attrition rate of permanent staff.  Percentage of staff trained in gender sensitivity
E	Excellence	To promote and affirm research excellence by emphasising publication of peer reviewed scholarly articles by senior as well as emerging HSRC researchers.	Peer-reviewed publications in an internationally accredited scientific journal, per senior researcher (SRS and above).  Peer-reviewed publication in a scientific journal per researcher, RS and lower.

	<b>Performance area</b>	<b>Strategic business objective</b>	<b>Indicator</b>
C	Capacity building	To contribute to human capital development in the human and social sciences.	Number of interns (research trainees) enrolled in a master's programme.  Number of interns (research trainees) enrolled in a PhD programme. Number of post-doctoral fellowships (research associates).
S	Sustainability	To ensure the financial sustainability of the HSRC.	Percentage of grants that are extra-Parliamentary. Percentage of all grants that are multi-year (at least three years).

Specific performance targets were set in relation to each of the sentinel performance indicators, and the extent to which these and other organisational performance targets have been met by the end of 2008/09, is reported on in Section 6 of this report. Section 3.3 provides an overview of how the strategic business objectives were operationalised and implemented during 2008/09.

### 3.2 Organisational structure

At 31 March 2009, the structure of the HSRC reflected the following:

Four multidisciplinary, problem-oriented research programmes

- Child, Youth, Family and Social Development (CYFSD)
- Democracy and Governance (D&G)
- Education, Science and Skills Development (ESSD)
- Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health (SAHA)

Six co-ordinated cross-cutting units

- Knowledge Systems (KS),
- Policy Analysis and Capacity Enhancement (PACE), which house the following:
  - Policy Analysis Unit (PAU)
  - Capacity Development (CD)
  - Gender and Development (GD)
- Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS Research Alliance (SAHARA)

Three demonstration centres

- Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth (CPEG)
- Centre for Service Delivery (CSD)
- Centre for Education Quality Improvement (CEQI)

Two units reporting to the HSRC Board

- The CEO Office
- Council Secretariat (CS)

Four corporate support units in the Office of the CEO:

- Business Development (BD), also housing a nascent Project Support Office (PSO)
- Corporate Communications (CC)
- International Liaison (IL)
- HSRC Press (Press)

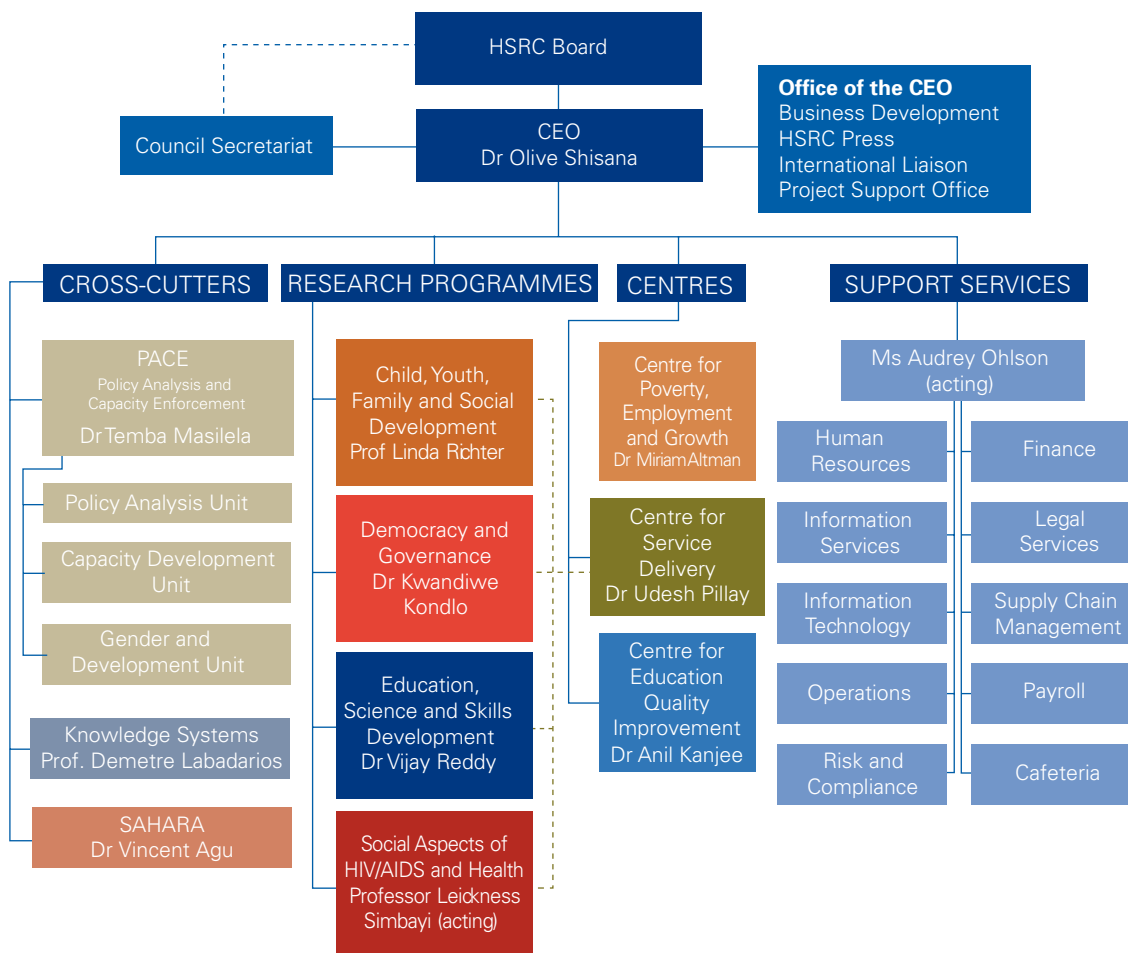


# Report of the HSRC Board continued

Eight corporate support units in Support Services:

- Finance (Fin), also managing Payroll and the HSRC Cafeteria
- Human Resources (HR)
- Information Services (IS)
- Information Technology (IT)
- Legal Services (LS)
- Operations (Ops)
- Risk and Compliance (RC)
- Supply Chain Management (SCM)

*Figure 1: Organisational structure of the HSRC, 31 March 2009*



**Table 3: Research programmes, cross-cutters and demonstration centres at 31 March 2009**

<b>Four integrated research programmes:</b>			
Name of programme	Acronym	Executive Director	Headed from
Child, Youth, Family and Social Development	CYFSD	Professor Linda Richter	Durban
Democracy and Governance	D&G	Dr Kwandiwe Kondlo	Pretoria
Education, Science and Skills Development	ESSD	Dr Vijay Reddy	Durban
Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health	SAHA	Dr Leickness Simbayi (Acting)	Cape Town
<b>Six cross-cutting units:</b>			
Name of unit	Acronym	Executive Director / head	Headed from
Knowledge Systems	KS	Prof Demetre Labadarios	Cape Town
Policy Analysis and Capacity Enhancement, forming the organisational home to three cross- cutting units:	PACE	Dr Temba Masilela, also the Executive Director to PAU, CD and GD	Pretoria
Policy Analysis Unit	PAU	Dr Charles Hongoro	Pretoria
Capacity Development	CD	Prof Thobeka Mda	Pretoria
Gender and Development	GD	Prof Relebohile Moletsane	Durban
Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS Research Alliance	SAHARA	Dr Vincent Agu	Cape Town
<b>Three demonstration centres</b>			
Name of unit	Acronym	Executive Director / head	Headed from
Centre for Education Quality Improvement	CEQI	Dr Anil Kanjee	Pretoria
Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth	CPEG	Dr Miriam Altman	Pretoria
Centre for Service Delivery	CSD	Dr Udesh Pillay	Pretoria

More information on activities and achievements of research units is provided below, as well as elsewhere in the annual report of the HSRC.

### **3.3 Progress made with the implementation of the 2008/09 HSRC Business Plan**

The HSRC Board received and reviewed quarterly reports providing an overview of organisational developments that had specific relevance to the nine strategic business objectives listed in the 2008/09 business plan. These reports complemented the quantitative indicators of performance associated with each of the strategic business objectives, as reviewed quarterly and submitted to the Minister and Department of Science and Technology, in accordance with treasury regulations and requirements of the Shareholder's Compact.

The following provides a high-level overview of progress made in relation of each of the strategic business objectives during 2008/09:

#### **3.3.1 To consolidate and strengthen public-purpose research activities of the HSRC**

Act 17 of 2008, which contains reference to the public-purpose mandate of the HSRC, was promulgated in 2008. The process was driven by the Minister and the Department of Science and Technology, with the HSRC playing a critical role in responding to questions and clarifying issues to the Parliamentary portfolio committee on Science and Technology.

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

Planned activities and progress made in relation to strategic business objectives:

Objective	Progress made
Ensure appropriate communication of, and compliance with, the new HSRC Act.	<p>The new HSRC Act (Act 17 of 2008) was assented to in September and came into operation in December 2008.</p> <p>Changes and practical implications of the new Act were communicated to staff and discussed with relevant managers in the HSRC. Corporate information documents as well as stationery were amended to reflect changes.</p> <p>The process to select and appoint a new board as required by the Act is still underway; hence it was not possible to induct members of the new board as yet.</p>
Ensure delivery on activities supported by ring-fenced funding.	<p>Ring-fenced funding was received for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Science and Technology Indicators (work undertaken in the Centre for Science, Technology and Innovation Indicators (CeSTII) unit of KS);</li> <li>• Policy Analysis Unit (work undertaken in the PAU unit);</li> <li>• Development of Research Capacity for the Human and Social Sciences (work undertaken in the (Capacity Development (CD) unit); and</li> <li>• Infrastructure: building (work assigned to the IT and Ops units within Support Services).</li> </ul> <p>Examples of progress and impact to date include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The final R and D Survey 2006/07 report was submitted to the DST, which forwarded it to StatsSA for approval. The report will be released in 2009/10.</li> <li>• The main results of the 2002-2004 South African innovation survey were edited and published as a book on behalf of the DST.</li> <li>• A report on achievements of research trainees during 2008/09 was prepared by the capacity development unit. It provides an overview of publications authored or co-authored by research trainees during the year, as well as on support provided by the unit to trainees to present papers at national or international conferences. At least six peer-reviewed journal articles were authored or co-authored by research trainees during the year under review.</li> <li>• With support from the infrastructure funding, the HSRC IT remediation plan was concluded and infrastructural improvements were made to the HSRC building as planned.</li> </ul>
Prioritise research dealing with issues of national importance, including Poverty, Employment and Growth, Education and Skills Development, Service Delivery, HIV and AIDS, Crime and Violence, and Africa Focus by assigning research programmes or dedicated centres as 'champions' or co-ordinators for these themes.	<p>Programme co-ordinators were assigned as follows, with progress reported below or elsewhere in the HSRC Annual Report:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Poverty, Employment and Growth (PEEG) – this was integrated into the scenario work of PEEG, see below and in other sections of the HSRC Annual Report.</li> <li>• Education and Skills Development (ESSD) – earmarked funds to support research in the area of teacher quality and learner outcomes; joint work involving research trainee with a seminar presented on 10 March 2009.</li> </ul>

Objective	Progress made
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Service Delivery (CSD) – progress in this area involved research undertaken at regional, national, provincial and local level. At regional level, a three-year project to measure service delivery in South Africa and other African countries (Tanzania, Botswana and Malawi) was undertaken. At provincial and local levels, preparatory work aimed at securing funding to support service delivery demonstration research in the Eastern Cape and Tshwane Municipal Metropolitan Municipality was successfully concluded.</li> <li>• HIV and AIDS (SAHA) – a project on the evaluation and up-scaling of some HIV/AIDS prevention and care programmes on reducing vulnerability in communities in South Africa was conducted.</li> <li>• Crime and Violence (D&amp;G) – a project entitled Societies in Transition – An International comparative study on violent crime was launched. Recent deliverables include a nationally televised political debate on violence and crime (24 March 2009) and a workshop with the United Cities and Local Government for Africa (UCLGA) in November 2008. An overall report on the project is expected by June 2009.</li> <li>• Africa Focus (D&amp;G) – ongoing work led to a number of publications in 2008/09 focusing on the retail and telecommunications industries in Africa; and on China’s role in Africa. The publication of a book on the state of Africa is underway.</li> </ul>
<p>Decide on future of research thrusts established and specifically supported in 2007/08, namely youth, crime, corruption and social fabric; ‘futures research; and climate change.</p>	<p>Work in these areas was dealt with as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Youth – the Youth Policy Initiative (YPI), coordinated by PAU in collaboration with CYFSD, CPEG and CPEG, was continued in 2008/09. Apart from successful roundtable meetings involving researchers, practitioners and policy makers around specific topics, a range of other modes of research communication were used, including public lectures, online and SMS polls, and a regularly updated website. The new draft Youth Development Policy was informed by discussions of the YPI.</li> <li>• Crime, corruption and social fabric – no dedicated support, but work continued under the ‘crime and violence’ priority for 2008/09. The ANSA-Africa project dealt with issues related to corruption in two of its sessions.</li> <li>• ‘Futures research – no dedicated support, but work continued in CSD in consultation with external partners. The focus was on water and energy research. The first State of the futures index was completed and disseminated.</li> <li>• Climate change – climate change was phased out during 2008/09 owing to inadequate funding and internal redeployment of senior staff. The theme will be reactivated in 2009/10, with a collaborative approach envisaged.</li> </ul>
<p>Engage with key stakeholders such as donors and government decision-makers to identify emerging research priority areas that could be addressed with joint support in future.</p>	<p>Ongoing engagement took place with key stakeholders such as donors and government decision-makers. This led to the identification of research opportunities in, among others, the following priority areas:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Service delivery at municipal level (an MoU was signed with the Tshwane Metro Municipality);</li> </ul>

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

Objective	Progress made
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Food security and land issues (an MoU was signed with the Department of Agriculture);</li> <li>• Health service provision (international donor and local government funding was provided to support work in the areas of a National Health Initiative and research support for SANAC);</li> <li>• Opportunities to provide strategic, research-based information to inform government spending priorities, as well as monitoring and evaluation of service delivery were identified and responded to;</li> <li>• Funds were obtained to support the development of a national health insurance policy, implementation plan as well as quality of service improvement plan.</li> </ul>
<p>Address the need to promote the humanities using history, philosophy, arts, culture, heritage, language, religion and tradition to gain new insights into our society and make sense of our lives.</p>	<p>The HSRC in collaboration with the International Social Science Council (ISSC), the International Council for Philosophy and Humanistic Studies, the National Research Foundation, the Department of Arts and Culture, the Africa Institute of South Africa and the Department of Science and Technology hosted a two-day scientific symposium focusing on Knowledge and Transformation: Social and human sciences in Africa in November 2008. The focus of the symposium was on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the production of knowledge by Africans and the production of knowledge on Africa; and</li> <li>• the contributions of human and social science to innovation and development in Africa.</li> </ul> <p>The manuscript based on papers from the Knowledge and Transformation symposium will be published in 2009/10. The workshop, coordinated by PAU on behalf of the HSRC, was designed as a dialogue between the social sciences, humanities and the performing arts.</p> <p>The HSRC developed a position paper on The human and social dynamics grand challenge in the Ten-year Innovation Plan. This position paper was incorporated into the HSRC Business Plan for the 2009/10 financial year.</p>

### **3.3.2 To conduct research and engender dialogue relative to policy issues of national priority through the work of a cross-cutting policy analysis unit and evidence-based demonstration centres**

Planned activities and progress made in relation to strategic business objective:



Objective	Progress made
<p>PAU: submit budget and business plan for 2008/09 for approval by the CEO prior to 31 March 2008. Ensure work is focused around priority topic areas of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• HIV/AIDS and health;</li> <li>• regulatory aspects of employment, social protection and economic growth;</li> <li>• capacity and procedural justice in service delivery;</li> <li>• investment, quality and choice in education; and</li> <li>• coherence and performance of poverty reduction strategies.</li> </ul>	<p>The budget and business plan was submitted to the CEO, as required and quarterly performance and financial reports submitted. The business plan encapsulates the required priority focus areas, with the following projects linked to these areas:</p> <p>In the area of HIV/AIDS and health: National Health Insurance,, and an ARV study;</p> <p>Regulatory aspects of employment, social protection and economic growth: impact assessment projects, to monitor the implementation of the Limpopo Provincial Growth and Development Strategy aimed at improving institutional efficiency and effectiveness)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Capacity and procedural justice in service delivery: a project on the development of a poverty matrix and enhanced targeting of social service provision in the City of Johannesburg and the Eastern Cape</li> </ul> <p>Coherence and performance of poverty reduction strategies: A project on gender and poverty reduction</p>
<p>Arrange international Social Science Conference during 2008/09.</p>	<p>The contribution of PAU in coordinating the Knowledge and transformation symposium in November 2008 is described in 3.3.1.</p>
<p>Provide management support for delivery on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MoUs with selected counterpart organisations;</li> <li>• conferences including social science conference and ISSC conference;</li> <li>• workshops and roundtables;</li> <li>• policy briefs; and</li> <li>• refinement of impact analysis research methodology and application in at least two case studies.</li> </ul>	<p>The management and coordination of memoranda of understanding (MoUs) between the HSRC and counterpart organisations are managed as follows across the organisation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review of proposed collaboration at executive level, to ensure coordination and optimal participation of research units in the HSRC;</li> <li>• Vetting of proposed agreements by Legal Services, prior to signature;</li> <li>• Oversight management of international MoUs by the director of International Liaison and national MoUs by the director of Corporate Communication;</li> <li>• Assigning lead programmes and executive directors to ensure practical implementation of MoUs; and</li> <li>• System support for capturing, retrieval and reporting on current MoUs via the contracts repository and the Research Management System (RMS). The MoU management module of the RMS was developed in 2008/09.</li> </ul> <p>Information on conference and workshop support and the development of policy briefs is provided under section 3.1 and elsewhere in 3.2.</p>
<p>Arrange at least two policy dialogues during the year, ensuring appropriate approaches to public publication and dissemination of research, and intended to result in the production of policy briefs. Topics should be selected from one or more of the following programmatic areas:</p>	<p>During 2008/09, the following serve as examples of progress made by PAU against objectives set for the year in predetermined priority areas:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meaning, cost and impact of HIV and AIDS – A colloquium using HIV and AIDS in Africa as a case study to discuss principles informing GRIPP (Getting Research into Policy and Practice) was successfully concluded, and the colloquium report prepared for publication.</li> </ul>

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

Objective	Progress made
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• meaning, cost and impact of HIV and AIDS;</li> <li>• regulatory aspects of employment, social protection and economic growth;</li> <li>• capacity and procedural justice in service delivery;</li> <li>• investment, quality and choice in education; and</li> <li>• coherence and performance of poverty reduction strategies.</li> </ul>	<p>Data collection for a study on delivery models of ARV in KwaZulu Natal, Mpumalanga, Limpopo, and Gauteng has been concluded, with preliminary findings presented at an HIV conference held in August 2008 in Abidjan, Ivory Coast.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regulatory aspects of employment, social protection and economic growth – a conference on the Developmental state in South Africa was successfully convened. This was followed by a published paper entitled <i>Envisioning a democratic developmental State in South Africa: Theoretical and Policy Issues</i>. An edited book on the proceedings of the conference is expected to be published in 2009/10.</li> <li>• Capacity and procedural justice in service delivery– PAU finalised a report based on survey results focusing on Attitudes to Service Delivery as part of the 2007 SASAS.</li> <li>• Investment, quality and choice in education – the HSRC Press recently published an edited book entitled <i>Education and Poverty Reduction Strategies: Issues of policy coherence</i>. The book is a product of a colloquium held in 2007 to discuss education and poverty reduction strategies.</li> </ul> <p>Other – following the successful convening of a colloquium on national health insurance (NHI) in 2007, the report was published in 2008. Indications are that the recommendations for NHI for South Africa were adopted and efforts are now being made to implement it.</p>
<p>Facilitate the research-policy nexus under the auspices of the MOST programme of Unesco, and establish a portal on the research-policy nexus as guided by the MOST National Liaison Committee.</p>	<p>PAU continued to serve as secretariat of the MOST programme of Unesco, which focuses on the nexus between research and policy.</p> <p>A Policy-action network web portal, accessible from the PAU page on the HSRC website, was developed following a consultative process involving civil society representatives, policy researchers, trade unions, lobbyists and DST. The website is intended to act as a communication nexus in serving the policy community. In support of a community of practice, it aims to disseminate policy-relevant information, act as a resource, add value to HSRC research by providing policy-relevant knowledge and provide information on policy techniques and methodologies. The website, launched in March 2009, can be viewed at <a href="http://www.pan.org.za/">www.pan.org.za/</a></p>
<p>Ensure that all research for the HSRC that affects the public is communicated to grass-roots organisations.</p>	<p>The following serve as selected examples (from across the organisation) of research communicated to grassroots organisations during 2008/09:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Popular newspaper articles on specific research published in local or community newspapers, for example, a popular article in the <i>Witness</i>, on Project Masihambisane in Sweetwaters near Pietermaritzburg. The project involves a randomised trial to test the effectiveness of health information materials and a clinic-based peer support and mentoring intervention.</li> </ul>

Objective	Progress made
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The HSRC seminar series addressing a range of topics and involving HSRC as well as external speakers was continued. In the fourth quarter of 2008/09 only, as many as eight seminars were presented. The debate on crime, hosted in March 2009 in collaboration with the University of Johannesburg and involving international as well as local political leaders was broadcast live on one of the free television channels.</li> <li>• Dedicated workshops and meetings involving people affected by research and research findings are undertaken. Examples include a workshop on social protection for key leaders in the disability movement the African Decade of Persons with Disabilities, in Johannesburg and extensive dissemination of research information on the improvement of the quality of drinking water in remote rural areas.</li> <li>• Serving on the boards of NGOs rendering service in areas related to research expertise, for instance the boards of two Cape Town-based NGOs mainly involved in community-based health care work with people living with HIV/AIDS and for other diseases like TB and children's illnesses, and HIV prevention among youth, sex workers, truck drivers and men, respectively.</li> <li>• Developing and presenting briefing papers on topical issues such as multiple and concurrent partnerships (MCPs), male circumcision, and HIV prevention, to members of youth or other NGOs.</li> <li>• Presenting research on water deprivation and community development to a district municipality as a means of accelerating water service delivery. Maps and research data informed an innovative schedule for identifying priority sites for the implementation of safe drinking water projects in remote rural areas.</li> </ul>
<p>Develop a detailed proposal for the work of a Centre for Africa's Social Progress (CASP).</p> <p>Obtain funding to support planned activities for 2008/09, engage with NRF on possibility of HSRC-led research chair, appoint a manager for CASP.</p> <p>Centre for Service Delivery;</p> <p>Complete first phase of regional service delivery project (funded by SAT)</p>	<p>The HSRC contributed to the development of an NRF-funded research chair application. This proposal had to be led by a university (University of Fort Hare) due to NRF requirements. Formal communication from the NRF regarding the success of a joint application with the University of Fort Hare for a chair in economic development and social policy is awaited.</p> <p>In the meantime, proposals building on HSRC coordinated work around the developmental state were submitted to other development agencies.</p> <p>Measuring service delivery in Southern Africa, the first study of the SAT project, was completed satisfactorily and a second workshop was held in Dar Es Salaam with partners, government officials and civil society. Case studies from the second study were presented at the third workshop in Malawi in November 2008. The methodology for the third study was thoroughly explored in the Malawi workshop and datasets for analysis were compiled.</p>

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

Objective	Progress made
<p>Centre for Service Delivery</p> <p>With support from at least one municipality, launch a 'demonstration' project, to manage and monitor the practical implementation of an identified solution to address the crisis of service delivery across South African municipalities.</p>	<p>Accelerating sustainable water services delivery (ASWSD): since the inception meeting in November 2007 this project has been taken forward by the initiative of HSRC personnel who have helped convene meetings, drafted the foundation proposal, designed workshops with District Municipalities in the Eastern Cape, contacted key municipal officials and set the specifications for specific Safe Drinking Water projects.</p> <p>The HSRC is responsible for project management in the OR Tambo District Municipality. This is a key demonstration project for the HSRC as it involves the organisation in demonstrating an improved model for access to safe drinking water. The work is funded by the DST and involves collaboration between the HSRC, CSIR and the district municipality in the implementation of safe drinking water in three villages. Two other HSRC research units (SAHA and PAU) are also involved. A project steering committee involving key personnel from the OR Tambo DM was convened on 28 January 2009 in Mthatha and maps of the potential sites presented and schedules for delivery outlined.</p> <p>Project strategies for service delivery for Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality was launched at the end of the year.</p>
<p>Centre for Education Quality Improvement</p> <p>Host discussion forum meetings, and prepare a peer-reviewed publication based on deliberations at these meetings</p>	<p>A national policy dialogue forum was held in November 2008. A book based on papers presented and discussions emanating from the dialogue forum is currently in preparation.</p>
<p>Centre for Poverty, Employment and Growth</p> <p>Submit quarterly consolidated progress reports on HSRC work (including achievements and impacts) in the field of poverty, employment and growth</p> <p>Undertake or coordinate research and demonstration projects in one or more of the following areas:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• evidence-based employment scenarios;</li> <li>• scenarios for employment and incomes;</li> <li>• indicators for the development path;</li> <li>• critical factors in reducing the intergenerational poverty cycle as per global experience;</li> <li>• projections of immigration from the rest of Africa and policy implications;</li> </ul>	<p>The following serve as examples of initiatives underway by 31 March 2009:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• CPEG coordinated a project to review approaches to enhancing the employability of school leavers. Work on the project under the rubric of the Tshwane Centre for Excellence in Employment Creation, as well as other implementation partnerships. The project commenced in March 2009.</li> <li>• HSRC signed a MoU with Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality in December 2008 to implement a partnership around several innovations including a focus on up-scaling ECD. This programme of work will investigate and experiment with interventions to rapidly upscale the delivery of early childhood development services to children under age five, with the associated benefit of creating large numbers of jobs.</li> </ul>

Objective	Progress made
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• employment creation, sector strategies and reducing economic bias;</li> <li>• poverty and cost of living;</li> <li>• labour markets;</li> <li>• structure of society (examples of topics provided in the text preceding this table)</li> </ul> <p>Complete at least one peer-reviewed report or edited book on each of the themes under consideration.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A formal MoU was entered into with the National Business Initiative (NBI). The two organisations collaborated in a process of benchmarking companies' supplier diversity practices. To date, six large companies have been benchmarked. In the context of an MoU with the Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality, research will be carried out on Tshwane's procurement practices and the HSRC will work with the municipality to link SMEs in Tshwane to opportunities in the supply chains of the large companies mentioned above.</li> <li>• Work on food security was initiated in cooperation with KS, the GDU, SAHA and PLAAS. The work scopes what is known about food security to establish a larger initiative on the topic.</li> </ul>

### 3.3.3 To strengthen research collaboration and network activities in partnership with higher education institutions in South Africa as well as individuals and institutions in other parts of Africa

Planned activities to support progress in relation to strategic business objective:

Objective	Progress made
Expand work in Africa more particularly through network organisations such as CODESRIA and Nepad.	<p>The MoU with CODESRIA is managed by the director of International Liaison. Ongoing collaboration on joint international conferences raised the profile of research in social sciences and the humanities in Africa. A scholarly book, <i>The meanings of Timbuktu</i> was published jointly by the HSRC Press and CODESRIA in 2008. The most recent meeting between HSRC and CODESRIA took place in March 2009, when joint collaborative projects for 2009 were planned.</p> <p>The fourth HSRC/CODESRIA working committee meeting took place in September 2008 in Dakar, Senegal. The CEO led the HSRC delegation to Senegal.</p> <p>The IL office facilitated the participation of HSRC at CODESRIA's 12th General Assembly held in Cameroon in December.</p> <p>The HSRC and Economic Commission for Africa (ECA) held preliminary discussions at the ECA Buildings in Addis Ababa on 20 May 2008. This meeting was requested by the HSRC in its efforts to establish closer links with regional bodies in Africa. A meeting was convened with the Social Affairs Department of the African Union in the first quarter of 2008/09.</p>
<p>General support for critical engagements:</p> <p>Management and evaluation of international MOUs</p> <p>Management and reporting on MOUs and corporate meetings with South African institutions</p>	<p>Reports on international visits are submitted to the director of International Liaison for information-sharing and coordination purposes.</p> <p>International visits and meetings involving HSRC delegations are planned around existing or future agreements and strategic objectives of the HSRC.</p> <p>A database of all HSRC MoUs has been established to enable the electronic management thereof (see 3.3.2).</p> <p>A meeting was held between HSRC staff and members of the Chinese Academy of Social Sciences (CASS) to finalise areas of joint collaboration.</p>



# Report of the HSRC Board continued

Objective	Progress made
More systematic engagement with embassies and international donors.	<p>The HSRC Review as well as International Brief is regularly distributed to embassies, thereby raising the profile of the HSRC. Embassy representatives are also invited to corporate events such as the launch of the annual report.</p> <p>Recent coordinated visits to embassies addressed specific areas of shared interest, for instance book publications.</p> <p>Meetings with senior representatives of international donor organisations are arranged around areas of shared interest, with HSRC staff selected on the basis of their interest and research experience in such areas of work. Examples: presentation by a senior official from DFID on their research strategy; and a visit from the executive director of OSISA to meet with HSRC staff.</p>
Participate in the DST bilateral meetings with other countries.	<p>The HSRC participates in relevant bilateral meetings arranged by DST. The most recent meeting with DST was the first joint science and technology meeting between DST and the Australian Government's Department of innovation, Industry, Science and Research.</p>
<p>Serve as National Contact Point (NCP) for Socioeconomic Sciences and Humanities.</p> <p>Participate in NCP projects to facilitate national and international information sharing and networking.</p>	<p>An HSRC staff member continued to hold the position of NCP, with another serving as assistant NCP. Information-sharing meetings involving HSRC and representatives from research institutions in other parts of South Africa, including Lesotho, were held prior to the deadline for the 2008 call. The HSRC continues to participate in NET4SOCIETY (an EUFP7-funded networking project for NCPs from participating countries), providing task leadership on the development of a research directory.</p>
Provide support for International Social Science Council (ISSC) conference.	<p>The HSRC served as secretariat for the two-day scientific symposium focusing on Knowledge and Transformation: Social and human sciences in Africa in November 2008 (see 3.3.1) This symposium was arranged in collaboration with the ISSC, and other local and international role players.</p> <p>The HSRC actively participated in arrangements for the ISSC World Social Science Forum (WSSF) conference held in May 2009. It was agreed that the HSRC would send a delegation to the conference to participate in specific conference sessions, and have a presence at an exhibition stand.</p>

### 3.3.4 To increase the relevance, utilisation and potential impact of human and social science research by means of collaboration with strategic partners and implementation networks

Planned activities to support progress in relation to strategic business objective:

Objective	Progress made
<p>Create implementation networks for research projects, as a means of bridging the gap between research and policy (this includes working closely with government, universities, non-governmental organisations and donor organisations).</p>	<p>According to information captured in the Research Management System (RMS), some 81% of large research projects undertaken by the HSRC in 2008/09 had implementation networks. This is considerably higher than the target of 60% set for the year.</p> <p>Selected examples of projects with implementation networks are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PlusTime project – increased teaching time through facilitated after-school tuition, undertaken by the ESSD research programme. The project steering committee included senior representatives – including the CEO, programme advisor and an auditor from the external funder; an independent consultant knowledgeable in the field of education, and senior representatives from the Western Cape Department of Education. The network of advisors and knowledgeable persons ensured that the quality and findings of the research were understood and recommendations for follow-up action co-owned. This bodes well for further application of research findings to benefit quality of learning.</li> <li>• Capacity Building for Research on HIV Stigma, a project undertaken by SAHA. Members of the steering committee include project-relevant representatives and collaborators from the University of Limpopo, Treatment Action Campaign, South African Council of Churches, Takalani Nana Home Care Centre, Traditional Health Practitioners, South African Democratic Teachers Union, Limpopo Youth Commission, and the Department of Health and Social Development. This network of people taking co-responsibility for understanding and promoting the research and research findings are invaluable for gaining access and support from the community while the research is underway, but also to roll out support actions, policies and support for future research with the help of co-owned and evidence-based research findings.</li> </ul>
<p>Assemble implementation networks to help develop plans and pilot projects for demonstration projects to be housed in CEQI, CSD and CPEG.</p>	<p>The Accelerating Sustainable Water Service Delivery (ASWSD) project serves as example of a project with an implementation network in CSD. In this project, the HSRC is working closely with the DST and the initiative has drawn together 14 stakeholders ranging from scientific bodies to implementing agencies.</p>
<p>Strengthen the Social Science Research Network, with a view to engaging scientists from universities and policy makers in establishing research priorities for social sciences.</p>	<p>See Section 3.3.1, for information on the two-day scientific symposium focusing on Knowledge and Transformation: Social and human sciences in Africa.</p>

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

Objective	Progress made
Engage with international and local counterparts (particularly AISA, the NRF, higher education institutions and policy makers) to promote the human and social sciences, address critical issues and develop a coordinated response to the 'Grand challenge of human and social dynamics' as suggested in the Ten-year Plan.	See Section 3.3.1, for information on the two-day scientific symposium focusing on Knowledge and Transformation: Social and human sciences in Africa and the development of the position paper on human and social dynamics.

To confirm the excellence of research work by emphasising peer-reviewed publication of scholarly articles by senior as well as emerging researchers

It is acknowledged that the publication of internationally-accredited, peer-reviewed journal articles is an important and valid measure of research excellence. In addition to these publications, the HSRC is mandated to ensure the effective dissemination and uptake of research findings.

The following table provides an overview of a broader selection of research outputs produced by HSRC researchers and research teams during 2007/08 and 2008/09.

**Table 4: Publications**

Category	No. in 2008/09	No. in 2007/08
<i>All HSRC research staff</i>		
Books and chapters in HSRC books	38	62
Books and chapters in non-HSRC books	21	35
Journal articles	185	163
<i>Refereed</i>	147	107
<i>Non-refereed</i>	38	56
Research reports to clients/users	93	153
<b>Total</b>	<b>337</b>	<b>413</b>

Category	Per capita 2008/09	Per capita 2007/08
<i>All research staff from SR upwards</i>		
	<i>(111 persons)</i>	<i>(123 persons)</i>
Books and chapters in HSRC books	0,34	0,50
Books and chapters in non-HSRC books	0,19	0,28
Journal articles	1,67	1,33
<i>Refereed</i>	1,32	0,87
<i>Non-refereed</i>	0,34	0,46
Research reports to clients/users	0,84	1,24
<b>Total</b>	<b>3,04</b>	<b>3,36</b>

According to the information on research outputs captured in the RMS by the end of May 2009, the HSRC has produced fewer research products during 2008/09 than in the previous year. This may be ascribed to the decrease in the number of researchers producing outputs. The decrease in the number of client reports may furthermore indicate that one of the benefits of more long-term projects was the decreased pressure on researchers to produce several client reports per year. The number of journal articles, particularly refereed articles, nevertheless increased in terms of

absolute number, and per capita – in comparison with the previous year. The increase in the number of peer-reviewed articles suggests that more scholarly work can be produced in the context of longer-term grants.

Planned activities to support progress in relation to strategic business objective:

<b>Objective</b>	<b>Progress made</b>
Continue to improve on the indicator of scientific excellence by encouraging scientists to publish in international, peer-reviewed journals.	The targets for peer-reviewed journal publications have been met. The strategy to encourage co-publication between senior and emerging researchers seems to be bearing fruit.
Expand indicator for research excellence according to guidelines expected from ASSAf study.	The report had not yet been formally released by the end of 2008/09.
Ensure that all publications emanating from Parliamentary grant funds are peer-reviewed.	Following consultation with researchers and research managers, guidelines for review and quality control of all publications were agreed to. The HSRC Press will apply these guidelines.
Ensure that all HSRC research programmes are reviewed. Discuss lessons learned, and appropriate responses to recommendations made by panels.	The ESSD research programme was reviewed in 2008/09. All research programmes have now been reviewed, and reports discussed. The KS cross-cutter is due to be reviewed in 2009/10.
Engage with DST to prepare for forthcoming SETI review (2009).	Meetings with DST representatives took place in October 2008 and March 2009.

### **3.3.6 To contribute to human capital development in the human and social sciences**

Planned activities to support progress in relation to strategic business objective:

<b>Objective</b>	<b>Progress made</b>
Develop and maintain a recordkeeping system regarding registered interns.	The Capacity Development unit has been keeping an updated database of all HSRC interns, indicating level (master's, doctoral, post-doctoral and other); unit in which they are based at HSRC; university registered with (if applicable), name of mentor, name of supervisor. An online system has now been developed to facilitate online recordkeeping and reporting.
Implement and refine the new strategy for training MA research interns	Curricula for research trainees at master's and PhD levels as well as post-doctoral fellows were designed during the February 12-13 capacity development indaba. This curriculum was circulated among EDs and internship coordinators, as part of the Indaba report.
Develop and implement a PhD intern training programme	
Establish and support a post-doctoral training programme	
Identify and respond to other opportunities for capacity development support, e.g. DST and ETDP internship programmes; international funding for capacity development support.	A project proposal was drafted for submission to possible funders, for the hosting of a research methodology workshop for masters, and doctoral students in previously disadvantaged higher education institutions.  Invitations to apply for fellowships and scholarships received by, or forwarded to the Capacity Development unit by various offices at HSRC such as Corporate Communications, have been forwarded to all research trainees and the coordinators.

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

Objective	Progress made
<p>Based on needs analysis, develop or source recognised courses such as the following, to teach interns and HSRC staff;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• how to write scientific papers;</li> <li>• how to prepare funding proposals;</li> <li>• how to deal with research ethics and applications for ethics clearance; and</li> <li>• develop frameworks for quarterly reporting.</li> </ul>	<p>The Capacity Development unit under PACE has compiled a database of trainers/facilitators of research development courses, such as writing for publication and preparing funding proposals. Some of these courses were offered during the 2008/09 year, and will be offered again during 2009/10.</p> <p>Internal trainers/facilitators have been approached to offer the courses and to bill PACE for their time. A request has been made to the EDs to allocate time for the mentoring and training of research trainees by the relevant people.</p>
<p>Monitor progress and ensure adherence to conditions of internship appointment.</p>	<p>Reporting templates were developed during the 2008/09 year and distributed among research programmes. Internship coordinators who had been assigned the responsibility of submitting these to the capacity development unit and to update the information regularly.</p>

### 3.3.7 To accelerate transformation in the HSRC, with particular reference to African representation in senior research and management positions

The HSRC has managed to meet or exceed targets in the case of overall staff representativeness, and for research staff in general. Although progress has been made since 2005/06 in relation to senior research staff and executive managers, challenges to meet targets in a highly competitive market remain.

Planned activities to support progress in relation to strategic business objective:

Objective	Progress made
<p>Increase the proportion of underrepresented groups (African and coloured) in the senior echelons of the HSRC. Set and monitor targets.</p>	<p>Targets are set and monitored. Progress has been steady over time.</p>
<p>Ensure that the experiences of men and women inform all the research and analysis done at the HSRC, thus producing information necessary for South Africa to attain gender equity in resource allocation.</p> <p>Continue with provision of gender-sensitivity training.</p> <p>Ensure staff members are trained in writing scientific articles using the gender lens.</p>	<p>Final training for the year under review was conducted in February 2009 in Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria. The facilitator has submitted a report on the training conducted in the 2008/09 financial year.</p> <p>By year-end, some 81,19% of HSRC staff had undergone gender sensitivity training. This is higher than the target of 70%.</p>



### 3.3.8 To retain and empower critical staff and skills in the HSRC

Planned activities to support progress in relation to strategic business objective:

Objective	Progress made
Develop a strategy to make the HSRC 'an employer of choice'.	Finalised the implementation of a three-year agreement with the union (PSA) with the aim to enhance the HSRC image and retention capacity.
Implement approved changes to performance management system and its application.	HR engaged in the process of improving the performance management template for support services staff.
Develop coaching skills of managers.	The programme has been completed. There have been no new intakes.
Reduce earning pressure over traditional research work by ensuring the EDs, DEDs, directors and CRS/ CRMs are responsible for fund-raising, while lower level staff are asked only to participate in grant writing.	Successful fundraising has taken place to support work in priority areas, as indicated in 3.3.1, and 3.3.9. Also see 3.3.9 on the marketing strategy.
Refine and roll out marketing strategy	
Develop a plan for retention based on inputs received from exit interviews and the ICAS survey results.	By year-end, the HSRC was busy with the analysis of the climate survey results in order to develop a plan of action aimed at addressing identified challenges.
<p>Ongoing attention to corporate staff events:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wellness day;</li> <li>• Corporate social responsibility;</li> <li>• Year-end / team building;</li> <li>• Information-sharing and staff visits; and</li> <li>• Year-end awards ceremony.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• As part of its three-year employment equity strategy, the HSRC is rolling out an employment equity awareness strategy that includes an awareness campaign and training.</li> <li>• The promotion of occupational health and safety received focused attention in all the HSRC offices.</li> </ul>
Ongoing attention to staff wellbeing in refurbishment of building and equipment.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The HSRC Cafeteria in the Pretoria office was refurbished and in-sourced to ensure emphasis on healthy and affordable food for patrons in a pleasant environment.</li> <li>• The refurbishment of a gym on the first floor of the HSRC building in Pretoria was completed.</li> <li>• Staff in the Pretoria office have started a social sport club, with soccer and netball being the first team games played on a competitive basis.</li> <li>• The annual HSRC awards include provision for the recognition of research programmes that work together well, and the staff that render exceptional service to colleagues.</li> <li>• With the assistance of external service providers, the HSRC has in place a wellness programme that includes an AIDS intervention programme.</li> <li>• The HSRC also subscribes to the services of an employee assistance, wellness and wellbeing programme (EWP) which includes behavioural risk management services and critical incident support in the form of counselling services following critical or traumatic incidents.</li> </ul>

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

Objective	Progress made
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Corporate communications and HR collaborate annually with external service providers to develop a programme around a theme for the wellness day.</li> </ul>

*Additional information:*

The attrition rate of highly skilled staff is a critical PAITECS indicator. Initiatives to reduce stress levels and improve the health and wellbeing of staff include hosting the health and wellness day; introducing health therapeutic chairs; placing more emphasis on communication and information sharing, as well as offering leadership and gender sensitivity training programmes. The HSRC remains committed to bridge gaps that were highlighted in an earlier salary benchmarking survey. The MTEF adjustment funds aimed at improving service conditions of staff that was received in November 2008 and additional adjustments included in the MTEF allocation for 2009/10 and beyond have thus been welcome. As part of its ongoing initiative to be rated 'employer of choice', a staff climate survey was conducted in 2008/09. Staff in general reported that they were offered support and encouragement for ongoing professional development. Positive as well as negative findings will be taken into account when possible management interventions in an attempt to identify areas of concern that may require management intervention.

### 3.3.9 To ensure the financial sustainability of the HSRC

Planned activities to support progress in relation to strategic business objective:

Objective	Progress made
Refine and continue implementing HSRC marketing strategy.	The new combination of Business Development, Corporate Communications, International Liaison and HSRC Press revised the approach to marketing which will be more coordinated and focus on internal support as well as external research and profiling.
Ensure economic and financial sustainability of the HSRC by securing multiyear research grants.	
Attention to good stakeholder relations.	
Technical support and training to provide guidance on complex funding applications and financial models	The funding application to the NIH for capacity development support for grant applications and management was successful. This grant will help to support the establishment of a project support office.
To seek increased levels of parliamentary funding or ring-fenced financial support from government departments.	The MTEF funding application for 2008/09 eventually yielded supplementary funding in November for a personnel cost adjustment. Significant support was received from DST for water service delivery work. Collaboration with Tshwane Metropolitan Municipality provides a model for the development of demonstration projects.

*Additional information:*

The ring-fenced support for critical infrastructure projects was not continued beyond 2008/09, resulting in a reduction in the total allocation to the HSRC for 2009/10. The HSRC welcomed the additional funds made available for personnel and inflationary adjustments, as well as the first instalment to what promises to be meaningful growth in the Parliamentary grant from 2010 onwards. In its commitment to reach 50:50 parity between government funding and external income, the HSRC was forced to cut back on important support services. This dilemma also impacts on the

ability of the HSRC to be fully compliant with new obligations set by Act 17 of 2008 (including data curation, research dissemination and more focus on collaboration and capacity building beyond South Africa) as well as existing PFMA regulations on SCM and IFRS. The HSRC will welcome an opportunity to discuss these matters with the DST and the minister.

More emphasis on longer-term, large-scale research projects has led to successful funding proposals to a range of international funding organisations. According to the information captured in the research management system, the HSRC has already secured external research income to the value of some R46 million, R31 million and R7 million for the 2009/10, 2010/11 and 2011/12 budget years by January 2009. It is noteworthy that the bulk of anticipated external income for the years beyond 2008/09 comes from international sources.

### **3.3.10 Conclusion**

The HSRC Board is satisfied that the HSRC remained committed to objectives set in the strategic and business plans guiding its work during 2008/09. Quantifiable performance indicators highlighted under PAITECS received attention alongside ongoing work to support strategic business objectives outlined in the business plan for the year under review.

## **4. Other matters of importance**

### **4.1 Finances and sustainability**

During the 2008/09 financial year, the HSRC achieved an overall turnover of R325,3 million (R261,6 million in 2007/08). This is the highest turnover that the HSRC has ever achieved in its history and represents an increase of 24,4% or R63,7 million from the 2007/08 financial year.

External research income earned by research programmes and cross-cutters amounted to R153,4 million for 2008/09. The comparative amount for 2007/08 was R114,1 million – showing a year-on-year increase of 34,4%. The increased level of funding received from the Parliamentary grant – baseline as well as ring-fenced funding – made an important contribution to the overall sound financial position of the HSRC by year-end.

A positive trend in terms of external research income is the number of larger-scale, multiyear projects, providing more security in terms of future external research earnings. The result is that the HSRC commenced the 2007/08 and 2008/09 financial years with a significant portion of the target for external research earnings already under contract. It is entering the 2009/10 financial year with some 62% of its total earning target already secured in the form of income received in advance and the MTEF allocation. More external research income has already been secured in the form of signed contracts for work to be undertaken in 2009/10 and beyond, although these amounts are not yet reflected in financial statements as at 31 March 2009.

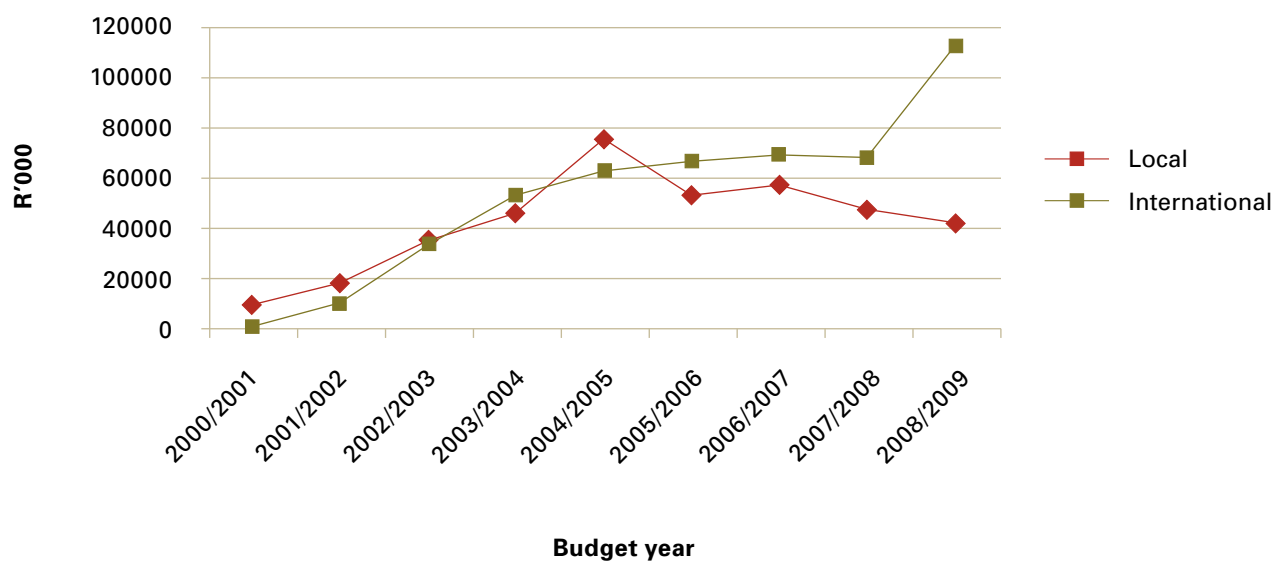
The HSRC has continued to receive funding support from international sources over recent years. This extends the science and technology funding base of the country as a whole, and the benefits are experienced not only by the HSRC but also by its collaborators on these projects in higher education institutions and NGOs.

In terms of total external research income secured for the year under review, income from international sources represented some 73,1% of total external research income (R112,2 million out of a total of R153,4 million). The

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

comparative figures for 2007/08 were R67,4 million international funding out of a R114,1 million, or 59,1% of total external income (see Note 2 to the annual financial statements). The purple line in Figure 2 shows how the level of external income from international sources has performed over the last eight financial years. The significantly increased levels of international funding for 2008/09 is likely to be maintained in the foreseeable future, due to the multiyear nature of new work embarked on in 2008/09.

**Figure 2: Local and international sources of external research funding**



With regard to Parliamentary grant allocations, Table 5 as well as Note 2.2 to the annual financial statements of the HSRC shows the net effect of adjustments for deferred income in relation to depreciation costs for 2007/08 and 2008/09. This explains the difference between anticipated Parliamentary grant income shown in the MTEF allocation letter received from the DST and the actual income reflected in the statement of financial performance.

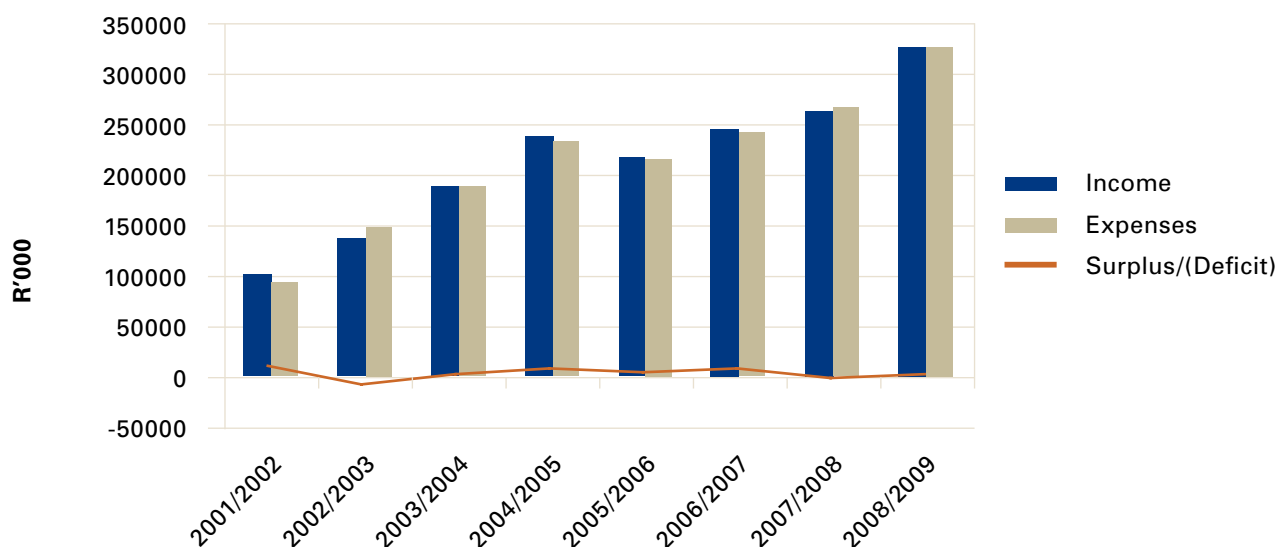
**Table 5: Parliamentary allocation**

	2008/09	2007/08
	R'000	R'000
Parliamentary grant received	119 299	101 603
Plus (minus): Net adjustment in respect of deferred income	3 812	194
Parliamentary grant as per statement of financial performance	123 111	101 797

Overall expenditure in 2008/09 was R248 million (R223 million in 2007/08) which represents a 11% increase. This resulted in a deficit of R0,5 million for 2008/09.

Figure 3 shows trends over the past eight years in relation to income, expenditure, surpluses and deficits, in nominal rands.

Figure 3: Income, expenditure, surpluses and deficits for the past eight years



Employee cost, at R132,6 million for 2008/09 (R128,1 million in 2007/08), is the largest cost component and, increased by 4% from the previous year. This increase includes the effect of cost-of-living salary increases. Owing to the fact that a large portion of its research income is derived from external, project-related sources, the HSRC appoints contract staff, or external service providers, to extend the capacity of its permanent staff complement.

During 2008/09, further measures were introduced to ensure sound financial management and reporting across the organisation. As a result, bad debts that had been carried forward for some time were written off. Prior year adjustments were made to ensure that income and expenses were correctly posted. Table 6 provides an overview of noteworthy changes between 2007/08 and 2008/09, with explanatory notes.

Table 6: Noteworthy changes between 2007/08 and 2008/09

Item	2009 actual R'000	2008 actual R'000	Reason for difference
Property, Plant and Equipment	170 473	91 503	Asset base increased, largely due to a revaluation of the Pretoria building to reflect fair value
Trade and Other Receivables	33 321	39 011	Bad debts were written off. This included bad debts not written off in previous years.
Trade and Other Payables	27 218	31 949	Accruals were down due to reduced field work activities by year-end and writing off of bad debts.
Cash and Cash Equivalents	46 848	46 864	No significant changes in the cash position.

The statement of financial position on page 174 shows that the HSRC had total assets of R257,9 million at 31 March 2009 (R184,1 million at 31 March 2008), of which current assets were worth R85,5 million (2007/08: R91,4 million). The current liabilities were R90,1 million (2007/08: R88,2 million). The financial status of the HSRC is therefore sound. The board's considered opinion on the going-concern status of the HSRC is reflected in section 2.6.8 of its report.



# Report of the HSRC Board continued

More detailed financial information, including extensive notes, can be found in the audited annual financial statements appended to this report.

## 4.2 Human resources and transformation

The HSRC's ability to deliver on its mandated objectives is dependent on the quality of its people. Institutional performance with regard to human resources and transformation is clearly prioritised in the HSRC's strategic and business plans. Under PAITECS, there is an emphasis on representativeness in respect of race at senior researcher level, but not in isolation from other imperatives. For instance, PAITECS indicators reflected under 'capacity building' and 'excellence' demonstrate the HSRC's commitment towards mainstreaming gender, and to invest in the development of emerging researchers through internship opportunities, skills development, as well as focused attention on publication support. The comprehensive set of key performance indicators reflected in Table 9, Section 6 of this report also shows that the HSRC has not lost sight of targets for overall staff representativeness in relation to gender, race and disability among research, research technical and administrative staff at all levels.

This report focuses on 'permanent' staff employed by the HSRC at 31 March 2009. Permanent, in this context, refers to staff appointed for an indefinite period, or for a fixed period of at least 12 months. At 31 March 2009, there were 450 such persons employed by the HSRC.

Other temporary or casual appointments are also made and regulated through appropriate employment contracts. The board wishes to acknowledge the important role played by those individuals and institutions that help to expand the capacity of the HSRC at crucial times of delivery.

During the month of March 2009, some 137 persons (up from the 77 reported in March 2008) were working as short-term employees on fixed terms. They were appointed for periods less than a year. The majority of these employees were African (108 out of 137) and female (87 out of 137). They mostly provided professional, administrative or fieldwork services as required for specific research projects. The HSRC also employed assignees' during the year. Such appointments are largely dependent on project-specific operational requirements, for instance extensive fieldwork for a limited period of time. The number of assignees employed by the HSRC varies from month to month.

With specific reference to the 450 staff employed on longer-term or indefinite term contracts as at 31 March 2009 (compared to 406 at 31 March 2008), the following broad trends are noteworthy:

- The largest single staff category is now administrative, at 190 administrative staff members; this is followed by 144 staff in the research category, and 116 technical staff. Comparative figures for the previous year were 148 administrative staff members, 167 researchers and 91 research technical staff.
- Senior research staff at the levels of SRS/SRM and higher remains a scarce resource. By 31 March 2009, there were 68 staff members employed at this level, which is down from 73 on 31 March 2008. These numbers include African research fellows and post-doctoral fellows.
- The HSRC continued to operate from offices in four provinces, but with an expanded presence in the Eastern Cape. In Gauteng, the Pretoria office housed 226 staff members, compared with 224 in the previous year. Its presence in KwaZulu-Natal was maintained by 31 staff members in the Durban office and 53 in Sweetwaters, similar to the 83 reported for these offices in 2007/08. The Cape Town office complement remained stable at 98 in 2008/09 against 97 the previous year. By 31 March 2009 there were 42 staff members in the Eastern Cape (27 in Port Elizabeth and 15 in Mthatha). This is up from two dedicated staff members in the Port Elizabeth office a year ago.

The HSRC has thus shown net growth in terms of its staff between 2007/08 and 2008/09. During 2008/09, a number of critical functions that had been outsourced (including payroll and IT) were brought back to the HSRC, with a resulting growth in administrative staff numbers. The further increase in the number of administrative and technical staff members, bears evidence of the new type of large-scale, collaborative research projects that the HSRC is increasingly involved in. Examples of such projects are managed from the Sweetwaters office. The growth in the Eastern Cape is similarly due to the rolling out of large-scale projects managed by the SAHA programme.

Overall staff representativeness remained a priority, as shown in Table 7, as well as in Figure 4 and Figure 5.

**Table 7: HSRC staff composition according to race and gender (31 March 2009 and 31 March 2008)**

	Year	African	Coloured	Indian	Subtotal: Black	White	Total
Female	2009	36,7%	9,6%	4,0%	50,2%	14,7%	64,9%
	2008	34,2%	7,9%	3,0%	45,1%	14,8%	59,9%
Male	2009	21,3%	3,6%	3,3%	28,2%	6,9%	35,1%
	2008	26,1%	3,4%	2,7%	32,2%	7,9%	40,1%
Total	2009	58,0%	13,1%	7,3%	78,4%	21,6%	100%
	2008	60,3%	11,3%	5,7%	77,3%	22,7%	100%

The HSRC has a large proportion of black people. African staff members comprised the majority at 58% (60,3% at 31 March 2008). This is not as high as their respective population distribution in the country but probably reflecting the available pool of skilled persons. African females comprise the single largest employee category in the HSRC, followed by African males. In terms of gender, almost 65% of HSRC staff members as at 31 March 2009 were female. This is higher than the estimated 52% for the South African population as a whole, and may be reflective of the nature of the work undertaken by the HSRC.

The 2008/09 budget year has also shown clear increases in the relative representation of black, and female staff at the executive management levels (CEO, EDs and deputy EDs). The growing proportion of blacks (and females) in the HSRC, especially at senior levels, is in line with the policy and programmes established in the organisation. These trends are illustrated in Figures 4 and 5.

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

Figure 4: Female employees in employment levels, 2006/07 to 2008/09

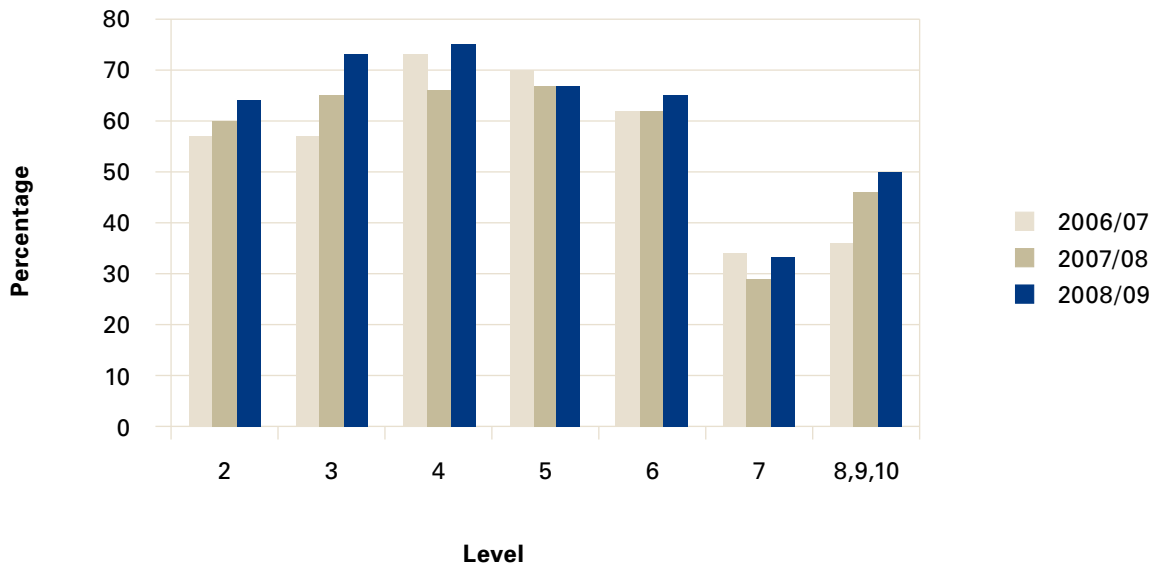
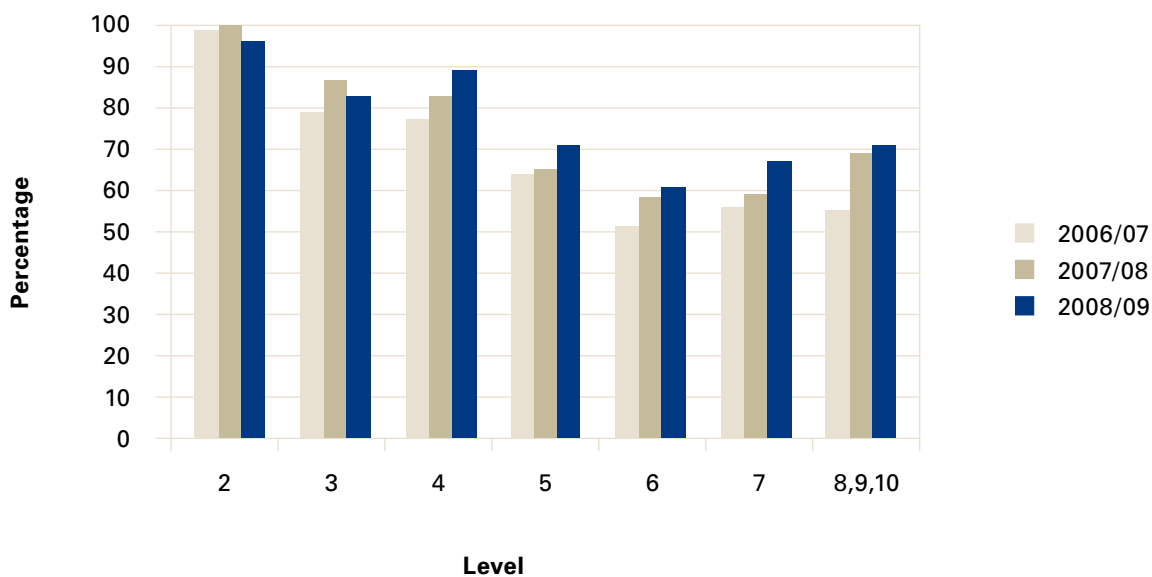
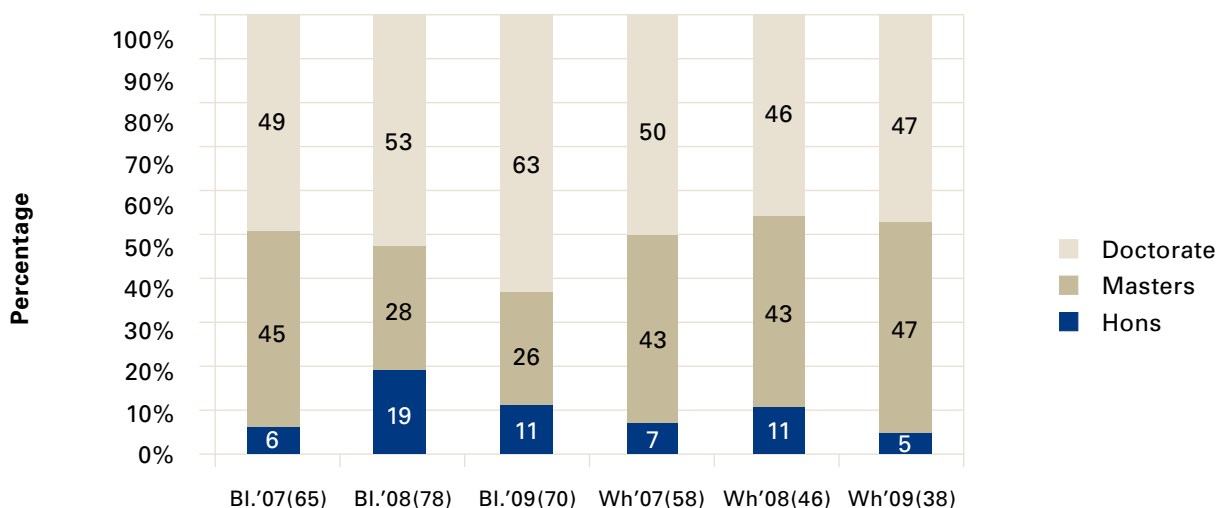


Figure 5: Black employees in employment levels, 2006/07 to 2008/09



In terms of representativeness of research staff (excluding research interns) it is noteworthy that black researchers at 64,8% are outnumbering white researchers overall. African researchers (41,7%) comprise the largest subcategory of professional research staff. Comparative percentages for preceding reporting periods were 64,2% black, 35,8% white (2006/07) and 63,2% black, 36,8% white (2007/08). At 31 March 2009, there were a few more females (55, representing 50,9%) than males (53, representing 49,1%) in this category of research staff, compared with 49,6% female and 51,4% male in the previous year. In terms of qualification levels, Figure 6 shows that the relative percentage of black researchers with PhD degrees is considerably higher than that of white researchers: In the case of black researchers, the percentage is 63% (44 out of 70), whereas it is 47% (18 out of 38) in the case of white researchers.

**Figure 6: Proportions of researchers (excluding interns) with master's or doctoral degrees, 2006/07 to 2008/09**



More detailed information on progress made in relation to staff representativeness, analysed according to race categories, gender and disability, and according to different levels and categories of staff is provided in Table 9, Section 6 of this report.

### 4.3 HSRC corporate social responsibility, research communication and outreach

#### 4.3.1 Corporate social responsibility

The HSRC approved, and is implementing, a code of ethics to inform its business and research activities. The following serve as further examples of the HSRC's ongoing commitment to the economic, social and environmental aspects of the 'triple bottom line', with information provided on the way the HSRC implements its social responsibility commitment:

- intrinsically, as a non-profit public-sector entity, in the execution of its mandate;
- in the public-benefit orientation that informs the way in which it designs and executes projects and disseminates their results;
- in the additional community-oriented activities it might undertake; and
- in the conduct of its business affairs, including its relation to its staff as a public-sector employer, and its responsibility towards the environment, with particular reference to energy-saving measures.

At all four levels, the HSRC is sensitive to the needs and interests of disadvantaged and marginalised groupings, usually by engaging with their representative organisations.

#### *Social-benefit research mandate*

The HSRC has social responsibility obligations as an intrinsic part of its mandate, which is to benefit all South Africans through conducting and fostering policy-relevant social research. The strong focus on public purpose' research activities, as first rubric under PAITECS, underlines this commitment. By planning and undertaking research projects with the involvement of implementation networks, the likelihood of research implementation, intended to improve

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

current conditions of practices, is enhanced. Research activities presented in the HSRC's Annual Report, provide an overview of the HSRC's commitment to undertake its public-purpose research in a socially responsible and beneficial manner.

## *Distinctive research approach*

At the second level, the HSRC's research ethics committee ensures that researchers provide participants in research projects with sufficient, relevant and understandable information before asking them to give or withhold consent to participate.

One of the reasons for establishing a distinct, a cross-cutting Gender and Development (GD) unit, was to help mainstream' gender considerations in the HSRC's research activities and organisational-development priorities. The GD unit has played an important part in institutionalising gender sensitivity training, and the recognition of prior experience in conducting research, or building research capacity with a gender lens.

Participatory approaches in the conception, implementation and dissemination stages of research enable researchers, where it is appropriate, to obtain inputs to adapt their research, recommendations and research implementation strategies to the needs of beneficiaries and users of research.

The HSRC has been adopting extra avenues of disseminating information, to try to improve the uptake of its research by the public and possible beneficiaries: for instance, the issuing of publications free of charge on the Internet; the use of other media such as videos and photographic exhibitions; the distribution to all stakeholders of the quarterly HSRC Review containing accessible information on recent research outputs; and the translation of key parts of its annual report into official languages other than English. Regular engagement with decision-makers, including Parliamentary portfolio committees, also remains a priority. Web-based dissemination strategies are receiving increasing attention.

## *Community-oriented activities*

Several research projects in the HSRC have spawned initiatives aimed at addressing the development needs of communities. So, for instance, the SAHA and CYFSD research programmes have appointed community based counsellors to ensure that people involved in research focusing on social aspects of HIV and AIDS have access to appropriate counselling and support services. Research projects involving considerable fieldwork components create employment opportunities for people serving as fieldworkers and fieldwork managers.

The HSRC through its CYFSD programme runs a rural research field office just outside Pietermaritzburg, called Sweetwaters. The office is an unused bus depot that has been transformed into office space for close to 100 field staff. In addition to the HSRC activities, the Rotary Club of Hilton and Howick ran a daily feeding scheme, adult literacy classes and a crèche from the site. The Rotary Club terminated its activities in the area towards the end of 2008 and a new home had to be found for the crèche. The crèche has been relocated to a local primary school, ensuring greater sustainability for staff and learners and enabling an easier transition for children to formal school in these early years. The HSRC Sweetwaters office provided support to assist the Rotary Club with the relocation and renovation of the crèche.

The HSRC Press has continued with a number of capacity building initiatives. These include opportunities for practical training to selected interns participating in a publishing internship programme administered by the Publishing Association of South Africa (PASA), in association with the Media, Advertising, Publishing Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority (MAPPP SETA) and the universities of the Witwatersrand and Pretoria; offering



training for postgraduate students at the University of the Western Cape and the University of Cape Town aimed at broadening interest in the field of scholarly publishing, and assistance from the editorial board in the development of some publications by providing practical guidelines for revision and supporting authors in developing publishable manuscripts by allowing, and deliberating on, resubmissions of promising work.

The voluntary giving and support from HSRC employees further supported community oriented and outreach activities during 2008/09. Examples of such activities include:

- Staff involvement in the national Casual Day initiative – staff came to work on 5 September in their most casual gear and had to pay R10 to get a sticker. A total amount of R2 230 benefiting the National Council for Persons with Physical Disabilities in South Africa (NCPDPSA) was raised across four participating HSRC offices.
- World AIDS Day outreach – in a joint project with 46664 and the World AIDS Campaign, the HSRC staff in all the six offices went to public places such as market squares, shopping malls, bus and taxi ranks as well as prisons to distribute ribbons and pamphlets with the message encouraging people to be tested and know their status. Some staff from the Pretoria office also went to the World AIDS day celebrations at George Mukhari hospital where they not only distributed said pamphlets but also made a presentation on the World AIDS Campaign theme ‘stop AIDS, take the lead’.
- Gifts to needy communities – towards the end of the 2008 calendar year, the CEO made a call to staff to give back to the needy. In response to this call, staff in the HSRC offices brought numerous gifts for distribution. They were distributed as follows: The Durban and Sweetwaters offices gave their contributions to the Rotary Club which is housed at the Sweetwaters office. The Cape Town office delivered gifts to 60 children at the Friends of Red Cross Hospital Association, and the Pretoria office gave three boxes full of toys, books and clothes to Sizanani home for children with physical disabilities near Bronkhorstspuit. Children from this home were also treated by HSRC staff during their year-end function.
- Support to victims of cholera in Zimbabwe – in response to the outbreak of cholera in Zimbabwe, HSRC staff made voluntary contributions to a central fund that was used to buy supplies for communities in need for support. An amount of R2 500 raised by staff members was supplemented by an allocation from the CEO’s office. These funds were channelled via the Unicef office in South Africa, who procured packs that were sent to communities in the affected areas. These packs contained buckets, jerry cans, soap, washing materials and water treating chemicals.

#### *Business activities*

In its procurement policy and practice the HSRC is committed to the promotion of black economic empowerment and the advancement of black-owned SMMEs.

By implementing supply chain management policies and procedures across the organisation, the disposal of assets and inventory is managed in a socially responsible way. During the year under review, computer equipment was written off the HSRC assets register and donated to NGOs, hospices and a youth development project. Feedback received from beneficiaries of this initiative show that the donated equipment enabled them to kick-start outreach and capacity development projects. Slow-moving book inventory held by the corporate publishing unit, the HSRC Press, was donated to NGOs or under-resourced community libraries where the titles were made available to a broader reading public.

The HSRC is involved in research capacity development through its research intern scheme, and other forms of short-term appointments in a research environment. Support service units such as the library and the HSRC Press provide workplace experience opportunities to other students.

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

## *Environmental responsibility and energy-saving initiatives*

On the environmental side, energy-saving initiatives receive ongoing attention, as described in more detail below. Paper recycling in the Pretoria office is facilitated by the sorting of waste on the point of collection by cleaning service providers, and the collection of paper so generated by a BEE company. The collection and shredding of confidential printed material in all offices is managed with the help of an outsourced service provider. It is estimated that every month some 750kg of confidential waste paper is shredded and removed from all HSRC offices for recycling.

The use of the videoconference centre and telecommunication facilities continues to reduce the need for air and surface travel. These savings also contribute to a cleaner and safer environment.

Energy-saving mechanisms have been in place for several years. Since the installation of a building management system (BMS) in 1996, the HSRC has achieved considerable savings in energy consumption and associated costs. Additional measures were introduced during 2007/08, to assist in meeting the national target of a 12% reduction in energy consumption by 2015 for all economic sectors. The BMS was upgraded in 2008/09 to make it even more efficient. As part of demand-side management (DSM) in the building, the maximum demand peak for electricity in the building is kept under 12000 KVA by means of internal procedures of load shedding managed by the BMS. Further improvement in demand-side management is only possible by improving equipment efficiency, which will require substantial capital expenditure. Energy management training and awareness programmes for building occupants will further contribute to DSM, but can be expected to have a lesser effect.

In addition to the automated DSM, the building management system was programmed in 2008/09 to switch off the air conditioning in the building at 13:00, to switch off all chillers in the building from 16:00 onwards and to switch off all lights in the building at 18:00 on a daily basis. Occupants in the building are able to manually override the automatic switch-off of air conditioners and lights if so required. These interventions have ensured additional energy saving, with consumption dropping further from 11 200Kwh in 2007/08 to about 10 876Kwh per day in 2008/09. This translates into a saving of about 324Kwh per day, or 2,89% over the year 2008/09. Combined with the reduction of 6,67% in 2007/08 (down from 12 000 Kwh average to 11 200 Kwh), the HSRC has already achieved a saving of 9,5% during the first two years. It will be difficult to achieve further savings without an additional investment in capex, since the current levels of savings are already impacting on the convenience of occupants. It should be noted that the average level of daily consumption in 1996, when the BMS was originally installed, was 21 271 Kwh per day, indicating that savings since 1996 amounted to 10 395 Kwh per day, or 48,9%.

The HSRC has less control over energy-saving initiatives in Cape Town, Durban and other offices where premises are leased from private owners. The energy saved there was mainly due to awareness programs educating staff in energy saving techniques, such as switching off office lights and air conditioners when leaving the office for a while, and keeping office windows closed when air conditioning is running. In the Cape Town office, the window-fitted air conditioning units installed by the landlord are on timers already and are switched off in the late afternoon. Further energy management training and awareness programmes are planned for the offices in Cape Town, Durban, Mthatha, Port Elizabeth and Sweetwaters.

## **4.3.2 Research communication and outreach**

At corporate level, units for publishing (the HSRC Press), Information Services and Corporate Communication play key roles in coordinating and facilitating research communication and outreach. These activities are closely related to the vision of the organisation, to become a 'knowledge hub' and further its public-purpose orientation

### *The HSRC Press*

The HSRC Press is a 'public benefit' publisher of works emanating from HSRC research activities. In line with the HSRC mandate outlined in the HSRC act, it also publishes other research-based works of exceptional quality in the fields of social and human sciences. As a not-for-profit publisher, the HSRC Press employs a dual media publishing strategy, publishing simultaneously in print and online electronic formats. Print-based publications are promoted through conventional book distribution channels, while electronic publications are available for free on an open-access basis.

Research publications produced by the HSRC Press range from edited, peer-reviewed books to monographs and client reports. Quality control of published book manuscripts is managed by an independent Editorial Board, which comprises members of the HSRC and external academics representing the broad field of social sciences and humanities research. The chair of the board is an experienced editor of scholarly publications, serving both on national and international editorial associations. Under the guidance of the editorial board, all book manuscripts are subjected to stringent peer review processes, comprising at least two double-blind peer reviews per publication, followed by deliberation at quarterly meetings.

During the 2008/09 financial year, the HSRC Press produced a total of 27 publications with 18 in production at year-end. During the previous financial year the Press produced an identical number of publications with one fewer in production at year-end. These publications comprised a mix of research monographs, occasional papers, and books. For the financial year under review, 16 106 copies of printed publications were sold, an improvement on the 13 204 sold in the previous year. In addition to purchased copies, 14 470 publications were given to stakeholders without cost, a decline from the 17 640 copies given away in the previous year. Therefore over 30 000 copies of the year's output have been disseminated in printed form. The Press held 39 launches or exhibits over the year, a slight decrease from 42 held the previous year.

The downloads of free electronic copies increased to 129 888, a staggering increase from 54 755 of the previous year. Browsers reading online decreased to 418 131 from 488 229, which is still higher than the 316 843 reported two years ago. For the year under review visitors to the HSRC Press came from 192 different countries, which is seven more than reported in 2007/08. This suggests that knowledge generated in South Africa reaches a global audience, helping the HSRC to achieve its goal of becoming a global knowledge contributor.

### *Information services*

The information services unit of the HSRC provides knowledge management services to benefit researchers within and outside the HSRC. This includes networking activities and technical support to benefit the creation, capturing, exchange, use and communication of the HSRC's intellectual capital. During 2008/09, priority attention was given to the development of communities of practice (CoPs) enabling communication and collaboration with and among HSRC researchers, as well as data curation activities.

In July 2008 the IS team, together with the Institute for Development Studies (IDS) of the University of Sussex, UK, co-hosted an international conference dealing with the dissemination of pro-poor evidence-based research. The conference, attended by delegates from 62 countries, was held in Pretoria and funded by the Department for International Development (DFID) (see [www.powerofinbetween.wordpress.com](http://www.powerofinbetween.wordpress.com)).

Virtual CoPs implemented during 2008/09 include a public resource, the African Early Childhood Development (ECD) research which is an early childhood development indicators database, and the only database of its kind on ECD

# Report of the HSRC Board continued

indicators in Africa. Closed CoPs were also developed to provide access to team members of collaborative research projects from within and outside the HSRC, to collaboration spaces to share and circulate working documents.

Data curation has the purpose of ensuring the future survival and usability of research data and related documentation by facilitating the management of datasets to ensure its fitness for contemporary use and the preservation and future usability of these digital datasets. Following a pilot project to support public access to the 2003 SASAS datasets and questionnaires, IS has been contracted to curate the research data of the Birth to Twenty study, which is a longitudinal project undertaken in collaboration with the University of the Witwatersrand and funded by the Wellcome Trust. The HSRC is part of a network of South African institutions that are implementing data curation projects, known as the Network of Data and Information Curation (NeDIC), and also a member of the international Social Science Data Alliance, which is an alliance of social science data archives from Europe, America and Australia.

## *Corporate Communications*

The Corporate Communications unit of the HSRC remains responsible for internal and external communication in the HSRC. It has continued to provide support to the corporate HSRC and add value in raising the profile of the organisation. This was achieved through events, publications, conferences, exhibitions and content management of the HSRC web portal. As the custodian of the HSRC brand, Corporate Communications also manages relations with the print and broadcast media industry. Support to research units and other departments in the HSRC is provided by means of database support, graphics design (posters, brochures and pop up banners) and the selection of information brochures and gifts for visitors.

The HSRC remains aware of the opportunities and challenges of communicating with stakeholders in a diverse society. The highlights from the annual report are regularly translated into more South African languages, to signal its commitment to serve a multilingual society. The HSRC has also been commended by members of the portfolio committee on Science and Technology for the ability of researchers and research managers to communicate in indigenous languages when addressing the broadcast media.

External communication support continued and expanded on the front of support for stakeholder engagement. Apart from support for annual corporate signature events such as the launch of the HSRC Annual Report, Corporate Communications provided support for international conferences and launches arranged by research and support units. Technical support was also provided with the development and design of promotional materials as well as the layout of the communication tool of the International Liaison unit, the International Brief.

The HSRC Review, a quarterly news bulletin which is now entering its seventh year, remains an important vehicle to disseminate information on HSRC research to a broad range of stakeholders. It has grown into a news magazine with an average of 48 pages per edition. Print copies of the publication are distributed to more than 3 700 Parliamentarians, heads and directors of national and provincial government departments, universities, ambassadors, schools, municipalities, and donors and funders. The publication is available on the website and further distributed by means of electronic newsletters to approximately 2 300 recipients. The Review has become an important dissemination tool to the media and a measurable spike in media reports follows every publication.

The media coverage received free media coverage with an advertising value equivalent (AVE) –the monetary value attached to free media coverage – of R65 million for both broadcast and print media during the year under review. This is up from the R 59,3 million recorded in 2007/08. During this period nearly 1 050 articles appeared in the print media, and a total of 1 584 broadcast inserts on TV and radio were recorded. These figures do not include the valuable coverage received from international media.

Also not included in the AVE count was website coverage by the ten top South African electronic news sites. For the last seven months of the financial year, which is the period when the HSRC first requested website monitoring, a total of 146 articles were recorded.

During 2008/09, the HSRC website ([www.hsrc.ac.za](http://www.hsrc.ac.za)) was visited by 219 000 unique visitors based in 217 different countries. This number represents an increase of 40,4% from the previous year, when 156 000 unique visitors entered the site. Close to 500 000 'hits' of the HSRC website were recorded during 2008/09, confirming that the site was also popular from a repeat visit point of view. Most visitors were from South Africa, confirming that the HSRC serves as a national resource. The majority of international visitors came from developed countries including the US, UK, Canada, Australia, Germany, Norway and the Netherlands, with approximately 4 000 visitors from India. The majority of visitors (approximately 60%) reached the HSRC via search engines, indicating that they were looking for information that was available on the HSRC website.

The biggest challenge during 2008/2009 was that of network connectivity, which is related to bandwidth limitations. The HSRC IT department is working with Corporate Communications to try to resolve this issue.

Activities to support internal communication continued during the year. Support was given to a number of events to bring staff together, including the year-end event and activities around important themes, including the annual wellness day and World AIDS Day.

Internal information sharing in the HSRC was facilitated by means of an electronic internal newsletter, HearSay. Published monthly, the newsletter, communicated organisational challenges, organisational programmes and stories of human interest relating to people at the HSRC. Other forms of communication included bulk e-mail messages, and the Intranet. A CEO note serves as electronic communiqué by the CEO to staff, and was used to draw attention to important developments and events in the organisation.

#### *International work*

The International Liaison office provides strategic planning and institutional coordination services to support the profiling and positioning of the HSRC and South African research institutions, through ongoing engagement with counterpart organisations as well as with important international development aid and donor organisations.

During the year under review, the International Liaison office provided support for international stakeholder relationship management through the coordination and management of international MoUs, introducing an electronic management system to ensure knowledge management and coordination thereof, receiving and sharing information on international visit reports, and serving as DST contact point for all bilateral research and technology agreements involving human and social science research. A regular news bulletin, the International Brief was sent to internal as well as external stakeholders to profile international visits from and to HSRC researchers, as well as other important developments in relation to projects with significant levels of international funding.

Strategic support was provided for international conferences, ensuring that HSRC presentations were well profiled internationally as well as locally, HSRC exhibits managed, and follow up action to networking engagements would take place. The World AIDS forum in Mexico serves as example in this regard.

The unit also manages international stakeholder engagement, through the identification of new opportunities, planning of visits and hosting of delegations. For 2008/09, the focus was on Africa (especially by expanding on the MoU with



# Report of the HSRC Board continued

CODESRIA, reported on in Section 3), the USA and China (building on CASS MoU); publication of international briefs and other forms of communication.

## 5. Events between the financial year-end and the publication of this report

- The updated Shareholder's Compact, to cover the 2009/10 budget year, was signed on 14 April 2009.
- The new Minister of Science and Technology, Ms Naledi Pandor, took office in May 2009.
- The appointment of Dr Leickness Simbayi as executive director for the Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health was confirmed.

## 6. Achievement of performance targets

Performance targets for 2008/09 were aligned with the PAITECS strategy and associated indicators of performance. The extent to which the HSRC responded to challenges, and performed against predetermined targets, can be summarised as follows:

According to the PAITECS strategy, the HSRC was meant to focus its activities on the achievement of 14 selected indicators of performance. (Indicators 5, 6, 7 and 8 were treated as a cluster', recognising that the achievement of these indicators is interrelated.) It is clear that the HSRC did well in meeting, or exceeding the majority of these targets for 2008/09. Many of these targets were set at challenging levels from the outset to signal organisational commitment, particularly in relation to equity and transformation at senior research levels.

*Table 8: PAITECS targets and performance, 2008/09*

		Target 2007/08	Perfor- mance 2007/08	Target 2008/09	Perfor- mance 2008/09	Additional comment
<b>P</b>	<b>Public purpose:</b>					
1	Percentage of all research projects that are conducted for the benefit of the public.	90%	93,1%	90%	96,9%	This target has been met.
<b>A</b>	<b>Africa focus:</b>					
2	Percentage of all research projects with a budget of R1m or above, done collaboratively with African researchers in other parts of the continent.	30%	31,3%	30%	25%	This target has not been met. Some of the new, large projects were commissioned with a specific focus on South Africa
3	Number of African research fellows at the HSRC.	12	7	10	6	This target has not been met. An ongoing recruitment drive remains in place.
<b>I</b>	<b>Implementation networking:</b>					
4	Percentage of large research projects with implementation networks.	50%	81,3%	60%	81,1%	This target has been met.

		Target 2007/08	Perfor- mance 2007/08	Target 2008/09	Perfor- mance 2008/09	Additional comment
<b>T Transformation: equity and representativeness:</b>						
5	Percentage of all researchers at senior level (SRS and above) who are African.	40% (or higher)	37,1%	45%	34,9%	This target has not been met. Please note: 5, 6, 7 and 8 are related indicators.
6	Percentage of all researchers at senior level (SRS and above) who are coloured.	9%	10,0%	8%	9,5%	See above.
7	Percentage of all researchers at senior level (SRS and above) who are Indian.	6%	10,0%	7%	12,7%	See above.
8	Percentage of all researchers at senior level (SRS and above) who are white.	45% (or lower)	42,9%	40% (or lower)	42,9%	See above.
9	Attrition of permanent staff at the HSRC.	11% (or lower)	14,6%	12% (or lower)	9,9%	This target has been met.
10	Percentage of (all) staff trained in gender sensitivity.	60%	76,2%	70%	81,6%	This target has been met.
<b>E Excellence:</b>						
11	Peer-reviewed publications in an international journal, per senior researcher (SRS and above).	1,1	0,67	1,3	1,51	This target has been met.
12	Peer-reviewed publication in a recognised journal per junior researcher (RS and lower).	0,5	0,67	0,6	0,81	This target has been met.
<b>C Capacity building:</b>						
13	Number of interns enrolled in a master's programme	40	46	40	41	This target has been met.
14	Number of interns enrolled in a PhD programme	25	35	30	36	This target has been met
15	Number of post-doctoral fellowships	12	10	9	12	This target has been met.
<b>S Sustainability: Contracts and grants obtained:</b>						
16	Percentage of grants that are extra-Parliamentary	61%	59,5%	60%	64,3%	This target has been met.
17	Percentage of all grants that are multi-year (at least three years)	35%	55,4%	40%	72,4%	This target has been met.

Out of 14 different PAITECS indicators, 11 were met or exceeded, the best performance ever for the HSRC as a whole. This is a great improvement compared to the eight out of fourteen in 2007/08. In relation to peer-reviewed publications in internationally-accredited journals for the senior researcher (SRS/SRM or higher) category, the level of performance has almost doubled in relation to the previous year.

Table 9 on pages 165 to 171 contains a slate of detailed performance indicators and associated targets. Some of these detailed targets have been deliberately idealistic. The HSRC Board is satisfied that the HSRC has performed well against each of these targets.

## Report of the HSRC Board continued

With a combined score of 18 out of 30 clusters of performance indicators, the HSRC did well in responding to each of the targets it had set itself in a challenging year. The level of performance is similar to 18 out of 30 achieved in 2007/08, even though some targets had been raised since the previous year. Where targets were missed, the margin is often quite small. With respect to specific indicators or clusters of indicators against which performance has been lower than anticipated, the following should be noted:

- Achievement of external income targets: the HSRC achieved the highest overall turnover in its history. The lower level of external income achieved per staff member may be attributed to the growth in contract staff appointed for one year or longer during 2008/09.
- Representativeness at senior levels: the HSRC has made rapid progress in terms of overall staff representativeness, and remains committed towards achieving the stretch targets it has set for itself.

Table 10 provides an overview of performance ratios over time, as required by the Department of Science and Technology.

Table 9: HSRC performance against comprehensive set of key performance indicators for 2008/09

No	Strategic objective	Key performance indicator	Achievement 2006/07	Achievement 2007/08	Target 2008/09	Achievement 2008/09	Comment
P	Public purpose	(Stakeholder perspective)					
1.		Percentage of all research projects that are conducted for the benefit of the public (regardless of the source of funding)	91,9%	93,1%	90%	96,9%	This target has been met PAITECS
A	Africa focus	(Stakeholder perspective)					
2.		Percentage of all research projects with a budget of R1 million or above that are done collaboratively with African researchers in other parts of the continent	33,3%	31,3%	30%	25%	This target has not been met. Some of the new, large projects were commissioned with a specific focus on South Africa
3.		Number of visiting research fellows from elsewhere in Africa at the HSRC	4	7	10	6	This target has not been met. An ongoing recruitment drive remains in place.
I	Implementation networking	(Internal business processes)					
4.		Percentage of large research projects with implementation networks	70%	81,3%	60%	81,1%	This target has been met PAITECS
5.		Other 'internal business processes'					
		Known successful proportion of total competitive tender/funding applications submitted, at May	52,4%	50%	38%	44%	This target has been met
6.		Free media coverage	R71,9 million	R59,32 million	R50 million	R64,96 million	This target has been met

No	Strategic objective	Key performance indicator	Achievement 2006/07	Achievement 2007/08	Target 2008/09	Achievement 2008/09	Comment
7.		Productivity of HSRC investment in its employees: external research earnings per head (all staff on 'permanent payroll' – indefinite and longer-term contract appointments)	R346 125	R281 091	R418 995	R340 860	This target has not been met. This may be attributed to the growth in fieldwork staff appointed for one year or longer.
8.		Share of payroll spent on researcher salaries	64%	48%	59%	51,8%	This target has not been met, due to the relative higher numbers of administrative and technical support staff required for large projects. This target has been met.
9.		Proportion of researchers in total staff	63,3%	63,6% (research technical staff included with researchers)	50%	57,8% (research technical staff included with researchers)	32% excluding research technical staff
10.		Overhead efficiency: ratio of non-overhead costs to total costs	0,72	0,74	0,58	0,74	This target has been met.
11.		Salaries to total expenditure	53,2%	57,5%	44% (or less)	53,5%	This target has not been met. This may be attributed to the growth in fieldwork staff appointed for one year or longer.



No	Strategic objective	Key performance indicator	Achievement 2006/07	Achievement 2007/08	Target 2008/09	Achievement 2008/09	Comment
T	Transformation: Equity and representativeness	(Transformation')					
12.		Transformation at senior researcher level:				PAITECS	This target has not been met.
		a. % black researchers (SRS/SRM or above)	45,3%	57,1%	60%	57,1%	An ongoing recruitment and capacity development drive remains in place.
		i % African	25,3%	37,1%	45%	34,9%	
		ii % coloured	10,7%	10%	8%	9,5%	
		iii % Indian	9,3%	10%	7%	12,7%	
		iv % white	54,7%	42,9%	40%	42,9%	
		b. % female researchers (SRS/SRM or above)	40,0%	41,4%	40%	44,4%	
		c. % SRS/SRM or above with a disability	2,7%	2,9%	2%	1,6%	
13.		Attrition rate of permanent staff	11,3%	14,1%	12%	9,9%	This target has been met.
14.		Percentage of staff trained in gender sensitivity	57,2%	76,2%	70%	81,6%	This target has been met.
15.		Overall staff representativeness:					This target has been met.
		a. % black staff: overall	70,8 %	77,3%	75%	78,4%	
		i % African	51,4%	60,3%	53%	58,0%	
		ii % coloured	12,8%	11,3%	14%	13,1%	
		iii % Indian	6,7%	5,7%	8%	7,3%	
		iv % white	29,2%	22,7%	25%	21,6%	
		b. % female staff	59,7%	59,9%	54%	64,9%	
		c. % staff with a disability	1,1%	1%	2%	0.4%	

No	Strategic objective	Key performance indicator	Achievement 2006/07	Achievement 2007/08	Target 2008/09	Achievement 2008/09	Comment
16.		Research staff representativeness (interns and research technical staff excluded)					This target has not been met.
		a. % black research staff	a. 64,2%	63,2%	a. 65%	a. 64,8%	An ongoing recruitment and capacity development drive remains in place.
		i. % African	i. 44,2%	42,4%	i. 46%	i. 41,7%	
		ii. % coloured	ii. 10,9%	11,2%	ii. 10%	ii. 11,1%	
		iii. % Indian	iii. 9,1%	9,6%	iii. 9%	iii. 12,0%	
		iv. % white	iv 35,8%	36,8%	iv 35%	iv 35,2%	
		b. % female research staff	b. 52,7%	49,6% (50% if rounded)	b. 52%	b. 50,9%	
		c.					
		d. % research staff with a disability	c. 1,2%	1,6%	c. 2%	c. 0,9%	
17.		Executive management representativeness (EDs, DEDs and CEO)					This target has not been met.
		a. % black executive managers	a. 63,6%	71,4%	a. 80%	71,4%	Progress was made in the subcategory for managers who are coloured and managers who are female.
		i. % African	i. 18,2%	42,9%	i. 40%	35,7%	
		ii. % coloured	ii. 9,1%	0%	ii. 15%	7,1%	
		iii. % Indian	iii. 36,4%	28,6%	iii. 25%	28,6%	
		iv. % white	iv 36,4%	28,6%	iv 20%	28,6%	
		b. % female executive managers	b. 45,5%	42,9%	b. 55%	50%	
		c. % disabled executive managers	c. N/a	N/a	c. N/a	N/a	
E	Excellence	("Learning and growth")					
18.		Peer-reviewed publications in an internationally accredited scientific journal, per senior researcher (SRS/SRM or above)	1,11	0,67	1,30	1,51	This target has been met.
19.		Peer-reviewed publication in a scientific journal per researcher, RS/RM or lower	0,22	0,67	0,60	0,81	This target has been met.

No	Strategic objective	Key performance indicator	Achievement 2006/07	Achievement 2007/08	Target 2008/09	Achievement 2008/09	Comment
20.		Number of books, journal articles, reports (per average researcher head)					This target has not been met by all categories of staff.
		a. All researchers	a. 2,63	a. 3,36	a. 3,8	a. 3,04	More long-term projects led to fewer client reports being published during the year.
		b. Black researchers	b. 2,58	b. 2,47	b. 3,8	b. 2,48	
		i. African	i. 2,60	i. 2,48	i. 3,8	i. 2,37	
		ii. coloured	ii. 3,06	ii. 3,00	ii. 3,8	ii. 4,38	
		iii. Indian	iii. 4,54	iii. 5,17	iii. 3,8	iii. 4,36	
		iv. white	iv. 3,65	iv. 5,24	iv. 3,8	iv. 5,61	
		c. Female researchers	c. 2,70	c. 3,51	c. 3,8	c. 3,49	
21.		Number of refereed journal articles per average researcher head					Overall, this target has been met.
		a. All researchers	a. 0,82	a. 0,87	a. 1,1	a. 1,67	
		b. Black researchers	b. 0,94	b. 0,74	b. 1,1	b. 1,25	
		i. African	i. 1,02	i. 0,73	i. 1,1	i. 1,04	
		ii. coloured	ii. 1,13	ii. 0,79	ii. 1,1	ii. 2,08	
		iii. Indian	iii. 1,77	iii. 1,67	iii. 1,1	iii. 2,45	
		iv. white	iv. 0,98	iv. 1,47	iv. 1,1	iv. 3,18	
		c. Female researchers	c. 0,79	c. 0,84	c. 1,1	c. 1,76	
22.		Human capital: proportion of researchers (excluding interns and fieldworkers) with master's or doctoral degrees					Overall, this target has not been met. An ongoing recruitment and capacity development drive remains in place.
		a. All researchers	a. 93,5%	84,0%	a. 95%	a. 91%	
		b. Black researchers	b. 93,8%	80,0%	b. 95%	b. 89%	
		i. % African	i. 97,3%	i. 81,1%	i. 95%	i. 91%	
		ii. % coloured	ii. 92,9%	ii. 85,7%	ii. 95%	ii. 83%	
		iii. % Indian	iii. 85,7%	iii. 75%	iii. 95%	iii. 85%	
		iv. % white	iv. 93,1%	iv. 89,1%	iv. 95%	iv. 95%	
		c. Female researchers	c. 97,7%	79,0%	c. 95%	c. 91%	

No	Strategic objective	Key performance indicator	Achievement 2006/07	Achievement 2007/08	Target 2008/09	Achievement 2008/09	Comment
C	Capacity building	('Learning and growth')					
23.		Number of interns (research trainees) enrolled in a master's programme	29	46	40	PAITECS	This target has been met.
24.		Number of interns (research trainees) enrolled in a PhD programme	20	35	30	PAITECS	This target has been met.
25.		Number of post-doctoral fellowships (research associates)	4	10	9	12	This target has been met.
26.		Staff enrolled towards relevant further qualifications:	a. 45,2%	a. 34%	a. 50%	a. 37%	This target has not been met in all categories, although progress was made compared with previous years.
		a. Research staff enrolled towards master's or doctoral degrees, as percentage of research staff without such degrees	b. 56,8%	b. 45%	b. 80%	b. 80%	
		b. % of interns enrolled towards master's or doctoral degrees	c. 12,9%	c. 15%	c. 25%	c. 17%	
		c. % of administrative staff enrolled towards higher education qualifications					
S	Sustainability: contracts and grants obtained	('Financial')					
27.		Percentage of (research) grants that are extra-parliamentary	63,8%	47% at HSRC level 59,5% at RP level (after top-slice)	60% at RP level (after top-slice)	PAITECS 64,3%	This target has been met.

No	Strategic objective	Key performance indicator	Achievement 2006/07	Achievement 2007/08	Target 2008/09	Achievement 2008/09	Comment
28.		Percentage of all (research) grants that are multi-year - at least three years	46,2%	55,4%	40	72,4%	This target has been met.
29.		Achievement of income target: external research income	R124,6 million	R114,1 million	R167,6 million	R153,3 million	This target has not been met, but there was an increase in Parliamentary grant income and expenses were contained to be aligned with income.
30.		Variance in budgeted expenditure: surplus or deficit for year as % of turnover (should be lower)	2,1%	-2,0%	5,0%	-0,2%	This target has been met.



# Report of the HSRC Board continued

*Table 10: Selected ratios, over time*

	<b>2004/05</b>	<b>2005/06</b>	<b>2006/07</b>	<b>2007/08</b>	<b>2008/09</b>
Overall independency ratio (all external income – research income plus other income – to total income)	65%	58,5%	56,2%	51,4%	55,7%
Salary to total costs	47%	52%	50,4%	48,1%	40,7%
External research income per staff member	R486 000	R424 630	R346 125	R281 091	R340 860
Total number of staff members	290	280	360	406	450
Current ratio	1,18	1,23	1,07	1,03	0,95

# Statement of financial performance

for the year ended 31 March 2009

	Notes	2009 R'000	2008 R'000
Research Revenue	2	153,388	114,123
Research Costs	2.1	(77,795)	(43,761)
<b>Income available for operations</b>		<b>75,593</b>	<b>70,362</b>
<b>Other Income</b>		<b>171,907</b>	<b>147,472</b>
Parliamentary Grants	2.2	123,111	101,797
Parliamentary Grants ring fenced	2.2	21,035	25,367
Other Revenue	3	27,761	20,308
<b>Funds available for the business</b>		<b>247,500</b>	<b>217,834</b>
<b>Operating expenses</b>		<b>(248,035)</b>	<b>(222,959)</b>
Administrative expenses	4	(83,186)	(70,084)
Staff costs	5	(132,619)	(128,132)
Other operating expenses	6	(26,847)	(20,524)
Depreciation & Amortisation	7	(5,383)	(4,219)
<b>Deficit for the year</b>		<b>(535)</b>	<b>(5,125)</b>

# Statement of financial position

for the year ended 31 March 2009

	Notes	2009 R'000	2008 R'000
<b>ASSETS</b>			
<b>Non-Current Assets</b>			
Property, Plant & Equipment	8.1	170,473	91,503
Intangible assets	8.2	129	417
Prepayments and advances	11	58	-
Operating Lease Accrual	13	1,735	733
		<b>172,395</b>	<b>92,653</b>
<b>Current assets</b>			
Inventories	9	3,517	2,698
Trade & Other Receivables from Non-Exchange Transactions	10	33,321	39,011
Prepayments & Advances	11	1,853	2,827
Cash & Cash Equivalents	12	46,848	46,864
		<b>85,539</b>	<b>91,400</b>
<b>Total Assets</b>		<b>257,934</b>	<b>184,053</b>
<b>NET ASSETS AND LIABILITIES</b>			
Net assets		152,518	84,066
Deferred Income	15	13,849	10,643
		<b>166,367</b>	<b>94,709</b>
<b>Non-Current liabilities</b>			
Operating Lease Commitment	13	1,499	1,120
		<b>1,499</b>	<b>1,120</b>
<b>Current Liabilities</b>			
Trade & Other Payables from Non-Exchange Transactions	16	27,218	31,949
Income received in Advance	17	52,202	46,165
Provisions	18	10,648	10,110
		<b>90,068</b>	<b>88,224</b>
<b>Total Liabilities</b>		<b>91,567</b>	<b>89,344</b>
<b>Total Net Assets &amp; Liabilities</b>		<b>257,934</b>	<b>184,053</b>

# Statement of changes in net assets

for the year ended 31 March 2009

	<b>Surplus Funds R'000</b>	<b>Capital Funds R'000</b>	<b>Deferred Income R'000</b>	<b>Total R'000</b>
<b>Balance as at 01 April 2007</b>	<b>15,621</b>	<b>74,665</b>	<b>3,566</b>	<b>93,852</b>
Net surplus for the year	(5,125)	-	-	(5,125)
Portion of Parliamentary Grants utilised to acquire depreciable fixed assets for the year	-	-	9,720	9,720
Recognition of Deferred Income	-	-	(2,643)	(2,643)
<b>Balance as at 01 April 2008 (as previously reported)</b>	<b>10,496</b>	<b>74,665</b>	<b>10,643</b>	<b>95,804</b>
Effect of prior year errors on surplus	-1,094	-	-	(1,094)
Prior period error (Note 26.6)	-1,167	-	-	(1,167)
Prior period error (Note 26.8)	-50	-	-	(50)
Prior period error (Note 26.8)	294	-	-	294
Prior period error (Note 26.12)	-361	-	-	(361)
Prior period error (Note 26.17)	-109	-	-	(109)
Prior period error (Note 26.18)	299	-	-	299
<b>Net surplus restated at 1 April 2008</b>	<b>9,402</b>	<b>74,665</b>	<b>10,643</b>	<b>94,710</b>
Net surplus for the year	(535)	-	-	(535)
Portion of PG utilised to acquire assets	-	-	7,018	7,018
Recognition of Deferred Income	-	-	(3,812)	(3,812)
Revaluation of land & buildings	-	68,987	-	68,987
<b>Balance as at 31 March 2009</b>	<b>8,866</b>	<b>143,652</b>	<b>13,849</b>	<b>166,368</b>

# Cash flow statement

for the year ended 31 March 2009

	2009	2008
Notes	R'000	R'000
<b>Cash flows from operating activities</b>		
Cash receipts from customers	342,977	270,667
Cash paid to suppliers & employees	(327,905)	(245,581)
Cash generated by operations	<b>15,072</b>	<b>25,086</b>
Interest received	(5,143)	(6,229)
Interest Paid	(11)	-
<b>Net cash inflow from operating activities</b>	<b>9,918</b>	<b>18,857</b>
<b>Cash flows from investing activities</b>		
Proceeds on disposal of Property, Plant and Equipment	22	-
Proceeds from investments	5,143	6,229
Acquisition of Property, Plant and Equipment	(15,098)	(7,614)
<b>Net cash outflow from investing activities</b>	<b>(9,933)</b>	<b>(1,385)</b>
<b>Net (decrease)/increase in cash &amp; cash equivalents</b>	<b>(16)</b>	<b>17,471</b>
<b>Cash &amp; cash equivalents at the beginning of the year</b>	<b>46,864</b>	<b>29,393</b>
<b>Cash &amp; cash equivalents at the end of the year</b>	<b>46,848</b>	<b>46,864</b>



# Accounting policies

for the year ended 31 March 2009

## 1.1 Basis of preparation

The annual financial statements have been prepared on the historical cost basis, except for the measurement of certain financial instruments at fair value and include the following principal accounting policies, which in all material aspects are consistent with those applied in the previous year, except for the change in accounting estimates affected to Intangible Assets during the period under review. Previously these were being amortized over 20 years but are now being amortized over the shorter of the useful life or contract period. The financial statements are prepared in South African Rand (R) and all values are rounded to the nearest thousand (R'000) except where otherwise indicated.

The financial statements have been prepared in accordance with the South African Statements of Generally Accepted Accounting Practice (GAAP) including any interpretations of such statements issued by the Accounting Practices Board, with the prescribed Standards of Generally Recognised Accounting Practices (GRAP) issued by the Accounting Standards Board replacing the equivalent GAAP Statement as follows:

### Standard of GRAP

GRAP 1: Presentation of financial statements  
GRAP 2: Cash flow statements  
GRAP 3: Accounting policies, changes in accounting estimates and errors

### Replaced Statement of GAAP

AC101: Presentation of financial statements  
AC118: Cash flow statements  
AC103: Accounting policies, changes in accounting estimates and errors

Currently the recognition and measurement principles in the above GRAP and GAAP do not differ or result in material differences in items presented and disclosed in the financial statements. The implementation of GRAP 1, 2 and 3 has resulted in the following changes in the presentation of financial statements.

#### (a) Terminology differences

### Standard of GRAP

Statement of financial performance  
Statement of financial position  
Statement of changes in net assets  
Net assets  
Surplus/deficit for the period  
Accumulated surplus/deficit  
Contributions from owners  
Distributions to owners  
Reporting date

### Replaced Statement of GAAP

Income statement  
Balance sheet  
Statement of changes in equity  
Equity  
Profit/loss for the period  
Retained earnings  
Share capital  
Dividends  
Balance sheet date

#### (b) The cash flow statement can only be prepared in accordance with the direct method.

#### (c) Specific information such as:

- (i) receivables from non-exchange transactions, including taxes and transfers;
  - (ii) taxes and transfers payable;
  - (iii) trade and other payables from non-exchange transactions;
- must be presented separately on the statement of financial position.

# Accounting policies continued

for the year ended 31 March 2009

The amount and nature of any restrictions on cash balances is required to be disclosed. Paragraph 11 - 15 of GRAP1 has not been implemented as the budget reporting standard is in the process of being developed by the international and local standard setters. Although the inclusion of budget information would enhance the usefulness of the financial statements, non-disclosure will not affect fair presentation.

## **1.2 Revenue recognition**

Revenue is recognised to the extent that it is probable that the economic benefits will flow to HSRC and revenue can be reliably measured. Revenue is measured at fair value of the consideration receivable on an accrual basis. Revenue includes investment and non-operating income exclusive of value added taxation, rebates and discounts. The following specific recognition criteria must also be met before revenue is recognized:

### ***Research revenue***

Revenue that resulted from the rendering of research and related services is recognised at the stage of completion, determined according to the percentage cost to date in relation to the total estimated cost of the project.

### ***Other revenue***

Revenue from the sale of goods is recognised when significant risk and rewards of ownership of goods are transferred to the buyer. Sale of goods includes publications, sale of food and parking. Revenue from royalties is recognised on an accrual basis in accordance with the substance of the relevant agreement. Rental income is recognised in accordance with the stipulations of the rental agreement.

### ***Interest income***

Revenue is recognised as interest accrued using the effective interest rate, and is included in other revenue in the statement of financial performance.

### ***Parliamentary grants***

Parliamentary Grants are recognised in the year to which they relate, once reasonable assurance has been obtained that all conditions of the grants have been complied with and the grants have been received. When the grant relates to an expense item, it is recognised as income over the period necessary to match the grant on a systematic basis to the costs that it is intended to compensate. Where the entity receives non-monetary grants, the asset and that grant are recorded at nominal amounts and released to the statement of financial performance over the expected useful life of the relevant asset by equal annual installments.

Current year Parliamentary grants in respect of depreciable assets (excluding buildings) are allocated to income over the period of and in proportion to the depreciation, which is written off against such assets. A corresponding amount in respect of the relevant non-depreciable assets disposed of during the year is also allocated to income in the period in which it is disposed of. The balance of the Parliamentary grants not recognised in the statement of financial performance is disclosed as deferred income.

Parliamentary grants in respect of non-depreciable assets are allocated to income when received. A corresponding amount is then transferred from income funds to capital funds as an appropriation of accumulated funds per the statement of changes in net assets.

### **1.3 Taxes**

HSRC is a public entity as defined in sec 3A at the PFMA and as such is not subject to current income tax and deferred tax.

### **1.4 Property, plant and equipment**

Plant and equipment are shown at cost, net of accumulated depreciation and/ or accumulated impairment losses, if any. Such cost includes the cost of replacing part of the property plant and equipment if the recognition criteria are met. Likewise when a major inspection is performed, its cost is recognised in the carrying amount of the property plant and equipment as a replacement if the recognition criteria are satisfied. All other repairs and maintenance costs are recognised in the statement of financial performance as incurred. The present value of the expected cost for the decommissioning of the asset after its use is included in the cost of the respective asset if the recognition criteria for a provision are met.

Land and buildings are measured at fair value less accumulated depreciation on buildings and impairment losses recognised after the date of the revaluation. Valuations of owner occupied property are performed every three years based on the income capitalisation method. The market value is determined from the ability of the property to generate rental income taking into account the related expenses, the rental income which is capitalised at a market-related rate and taking into account the risk, age and condition of the property with existing buildings. Any surpluses that occur due to the revaluation of land and buildings are allocated to capital funds, except to the extent that it reverses a revaluation decrease of the same asset previously recognised in the statement of financial performance, in which case it is recognised in the statement of financial performance. A revaluation deficit is recognised in the statement of financial performance, except to the extent that it offsets an existing surplus on the same asset recognised in the asset revaluation reserve.

An annual transfer from the asset revaluation reserve to the net assets is made for the difference between depreciation based on the revalued carrying amount of the assets and depreciation based on the assets original cost. Additionally, accumulated depreciation as at the revaluation date is eliminated against the gross carrying amount of the asset and the net amount is restated to the revalued amount of the asset. Upon disposal, any revaluation reserve relating to the particular asset being sold is transferred to net assets.

Depreciation is applied on a straight line basis, as follows:

#### ***Freehold land***

Land has an unlimited useful life and therefore is not depreciated but stated at fair value.

#### ***Freehold buildings***

- The HSRC identified the following major components of buildings.
- Lifts
- Telephone system
- Fixtures
- Buildings

# Accounting policies continued

for the year ended 31 March 2009

## **Freehold buildings (continued)**

The annual depreciation rates applied to the various components of buildings are:

- Lifts 20 years
- Telephone system 10 years
- Fixtures 15 years
- Building 100 years

## **Equipment, Motor Vehicles and Artwork**

The annual depreciation rates applied to the various categories of equipment are:

- Office equipment 15 years
- Motor vehicle 5 years
- Computer and other equipment 5 years
- Library books and manuscripts 20 years
- Artwork is considered to be an investment and is not depreciated; it is carried at fair value.

All assets that were bought with donor funds or grants except freehold land and buildings and that were donated to the community, on termination of the project, are depreciated fully over the lifetime of the project.

An item of property, plant and equipment is derecognised upon disposal or when no future economic benefits are expected from its use or disposal. Any gain or loss arising on derecognition of the asset (calculated as the difference between the net disposal proceeds and the carrying amount of the asset) is included in the statement of financial performance in the year the asset is derecognised.

The assets residual values, useful lives and methods of depreciation are reviewed at each financial year end, and adjusted prospectively if appropriate.

## **1.5 Intangible assets**

Software is classified as intangible assets. Initial expenditure on software is recognized at cost and capitalized. Subsequent expenditure is capitalised only when it increases the future economic benefits embodied in the asset to which it relates. The amortization is calculated at a rate considered appropriate to reduce the cost of the asset less residual value over the shorter of its estimated useful life or contractual period. Residual values and estimated useful lives are revised annually.

## **1.6 Impairment of non financial - assets**

The HSRC assesses at each reporting date whether there is any indication that an asset may be impaired. If any such indication exists, the entity estimates the recoverable amount of the individual asset. If it is not possible to estimate the recoverable amount of the individual asset, the recoverable amount of the cash-generating unit to which the asset belongs is determined.

The recoverable amount of an asset or a cash-generating unit is the higher of its fair value less costs to sell and its value in use. If the recoverable amount of an asset is less than its carrying amount, the carrying amount of the asset is reduced to its recoverable amount. That excess is an impairment loss and it is charged to the statement of the financial performance.

An impairment loss of assets carried at cost less any accumulated depreciation or amortization is recognized immediately in the statement of financial performance. Any impairment deficit of a revalued asset is treated as a revaluation decrease in the capital funds.

The HSRC assesses at each reporting date whether there is any indication that an impairment loss recognized in prior periods for assets may no longer exist or may have decreased. If any such indication exists, the recoverable amounts of those assets are estimated and matched against their carrying values and any excess of the recoverable amounts over their carrying values is reversed to the extent of the impairment loss previously charged in the statement of financial performance.

## **1.7 Inventory**

Inventories are valued at the lower of cost price or net realisable value. The net realisable value is the net of the selling price, during normal business, less any completion costs or selling costs. Cost is determined on the weighted average method. Inventories are made up of two categories, namely publications and cafeteria.

## **1.8 Operating leases**

Lease agreements are classified as operating leases where substantially the entire risks and rewards incident to ownership remain with the lessor. Payments and receipts of operating leases are recorded in the statement of financial performance. Costs incurred in earning lease income are charged against income. Initial direct costs incurred specifically to obtain the operating lease are written off when incurred. The classification of the lease is determined using IAS 17 (AC105) Leases.

## **1.9 Retirement benefit costs**

### ***Pension funds***

Pensions are provided for employees by means of three separate pension funds to which contributions are made. With regard to the HSRC Pension Fund (HSRCPF), and with effect from 1 April 1992, previous and current service costs and adjustments based on experience and additional funding for retired employees are acknowledged in the statement of financial performance as soon as the liability is known. With regard to the Associated Institutions Pension Fund (AIPF) and the Temporary Employees Pension Fund (TEPF), only the Council's contributions to the respective pension funds are recognised in the statement of financial performance.

### ***Post-retirement medical aid benefits***

The HSRC contributed voluntarily to post-retirement medical aid benefits of specific employees who opted to remain on the previous conditions of service when the benefit was terminated. The HSRC does not provide for post-retirement medical aid benefits to any other category of employees.

# Accounting policies continued

for the year ended 31 March 2009

## **1.10 Deferred income**

Parliamentary grants in respect of certain depreciable assets are allocated to income over the period of, and in proportion to, the depreciation written off against such assets. A corresponding amount in respect of the relevant non-depreciable assets disposed of during the year is allocated to income in the period in which it is disposed of. The balance of Parliamentary grants not recognised in the Statement of Financial Performance is disclosed as deferred income. Other funds, including prior period surplus funds that are utilised in respect of the acquisition of depreciable assets, are not treated as deferred income.

## **1.11 Foreign currency transactions**

Transactions in foreign currencies are accounted for at the rate of exchange ruling on the date of the transaction. Liabilities in foreign currencies are translated at the rate of exchange ruling at the reporting date or at the forward rate determined in forward exchange contracts. Exchange differences arising from translations are recognised in the statement of financial performance in the period in which they occur.

## **1.12 Capital fund**

A Parliamentary grant in respect of non-depreciable assets is allocated to income when it is received. A corresponding amount is then transferred from income funds to capital funds as an appropriation of accumulated funds per the statement of changes in net assets. Other funds, including prior period surplus funds that are utilised in respect of the acquisition of non-depreciable assets are not accounted for in capital funds.

## **1.13 Provisions**

Provisions are raised when a present legal or constructive obligation exists as a result of a past event and it is probable that an outflow of resources will be required to settle the obligation and a reliable estimate can be made of the amount of the obligation. Where HSRC expects some or all of a provision to be reimbursed, for example under an insurance contract, the reimbursement is recognised as a separate asset but only when the reimbursement is virtually certain. The expense relating to any provision is presented in the statement of financial performance net of any reimbursement. If the effect of the time value of money is material, provisions are discounted using a current pre-tax rate that reflects, where appropriate, the risk specific to the liability. Where discounting is used, the increase in the provision due to the passage of time is recognised as a finance cost.

## **1.14 Financial instruments**

### ***Financial Assets***

#### *Initial recognition*

Financial assets within the scope of IAS 39 are classified as financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit, loans and receivables, held-to-maturity investments, available-for-sale financial assets, or as derivatives designated as hedging instruments in an effective hedge, as appropriate. The entity determines the classification of its financial assets at initial recognition.



Financial Assets are recognised initially at fair value plus, in the case of investments not at fair value through surplus or deficit, directly attributable transaction costs.

Purchase or sales of financial assets that require delivery of assets within a time frame established by regulation or convention in the marketplace (regular purchases) are recognised on the trade date, i.e., the date the entity commits to purchase or sell the asset.

The entity's financial assets include cash and short term deposits, trade and other receivables, loan and other receivables, and unquoted financial instruments, and derivative financial instruments.

#### *Subsequent measurement*

The subsequent measurement of financial assets depends on their classification as follows:

##### *Financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit*

Financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit include financial assets held for trading and financial assets designated upon initial recognition at fair value through surplus or deficit. Financial assets are classified as held for trading if they are acquired for the purpose of selling in the near term. This category includes derivative financial instruments entered into by the entity that do not meet the hedge accounting criteria defined by IAS 39. Derivatives, including separated embedded derivatives are also classified as held for trading unless they are designated as effective hedging instruments. Financial assets at fair value through surplus or deficit are carried in the statement of financial performance at fair value with gains or losses recognised in the statement of financial performance.

##### *Loans and receivables*

Loans and receivables are non-derivative financial assets with fixed or determinable payments that are not quoted in an active market. After initial measurement, loans and receivables are carried at amortised cost using the effective interest method less any allowance for impairment. Gains and losses are recognised in surplus or deficit when the receivables are derecognised or impaired.

##### *Held to maturity investments*

Non derivative financial assets with fixed or determinable payments and fixed maturities are classified as held-to-maturity when the entity has the positive intention and ability to hold it to maturity. After initial measurement held-to-maturity investments are measured at amortised cost of using the effective interest method. This method uses an effective interest rate that discounts estimated future cash receipts through the expected life of the financial asset to the net carrying amount of the financial asset. Gains and losses are recognised in the statement of financial performance when the investments are derecognised or impaired.

##### *Available for sale financial assets*

Available for sale financial assets are non derivative financial assets that are designated as available for sale or are not classified in any of the three preceding categories. After initial measurement, available for sale financial assets are measured at fair value with unrealised gains or losses recognised directly in net assets until the investment is derecognised, at which time the cumulative gain or loss recorded in net assets is recognised in the statement of financial performance, or determined to be impaired, at which time the cumulative loss recorded in net assets is recognised in the statement of financial performance.

# Accounting policies continued

for the year ended 31 March 2009

## **Financial Liabilities**

### *Initial recognition*

Financial liabilities within the scope of IAS 39 are classified as financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit, loans and borrowings, or as derivatives designated as hedging instruments in an effective hedge, as appropriate. The entity determines the classification of its financial liabilities at initial recognition. Financial liabilities are recognised initially at fair value and in the case of loans and borrowings, directly attributable transaction costs.

The entity's financial liabilities include trade and other payables, bank overdraft, loans and borrowings, financial guarantee contracts, and derivative financial instruments.

### *Subsequent measurement*

The measurement of financial liabilities depends on their classification as follows:

#### *Financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit*

Financial liabilities at fair value through surplus or deficit includes financial liabilities held for trading and financial liabilities designated upon initial recognition as at fair value through surplus or deficit. Financial liabilities are classified as held for trading if they are acquired for the purpose of selling in the near term. This category includes derivative financial instruments entered by the entity that do not meet the hedge accounting criteria as defined by IAS 39. Gains or losses on liabilities held for trading are recognised in the statement of financial performance.

#### *Loans and borrowings*

After initial recognition, interest bearing loans and borrowings are subsequently measured at amortised cost using the effective interest rate method. Gains and losses are recognised in the statement of financial performance when the liabilities are derecognised.

#### *Offsetting of financial instruments*

Financial assets and financial liabilities are offset and the amount reported in the statement of financial position only if there is a currently enforceable legal right to offset the recognised amounts and there is an intention to settle on a net basis, or to realise the assets and settle the liabilities simultaneously.

#### *Fair value of financial instruments*

For financial instruments where there is no active market, fair value is determined using valuation techniques. Such techniques may include using recent arm's length market transactions; reference to the current fair value of another instrument that is substantially the same; discounted cash flow analysis or other valuation models.

#### *Assets carried at amortised cost*

In relation to trade receivables, a provision for impairment is made when there is objective evidence (such as the probability of insolvency or significant financial difficulties of the debtor) that the HSRC will not be able to collect all of the amounts due under the original terms of the invoice. The carrying amount of the receivable is reduced through use of an allowance account. Impaired debts are derecognised when they are assessed as uncollectible.

#### *Impairment of financial assets*

HSRC assesses at each statement of financial statement date whether there is any objective evidence that a financial asset or a group of financial assets is impaired. A financial asset or a group of financial assets is deemed to be impaired only if there is objective evidence of impairment as a result of one or more events that has occurred after the initial recognition of the asset, an incurred 'loss event', and that loss event has an impact on the estimated future cash flows of the financial asset or the group of financial assets that can be reliably estimated. Evidence of impairment may include indications that the debtors or a group of debtors is experiencing significant financial difficulty, default or delinquency in interest or principal payments, the probability that they will enter bankruptcy or other financial reorganisation and where observable data indicate that there is measurable decrease in the estimated future cash flows, such as changes in arrears or economic conditions that correlate with defaults.

#### *Cash and cash equivalents*

Cash and short-term deposits in the statement of financial position comprise of cash at banks and on hand and short-term deposits with an original maturity of three months or less. For the purpose of the cash flow statement, cash and cash equivalents consist of cash and cash equivalents as defined above, net of outstanding bank overdrafts.

### **1.15 Related parties**

The HSRC operates in an economic sector currently dominated by entities directly or indirectly owned by the South African Government. As a consequence of the constitutional independence of the three spheres of government in South Africa, only entities within the national sphere of government are considered to be related parties.

Key management is defined as being individuals with the authority and responsibility for planning directing and controlling the activities of the entity. We regard all individuals from the level of Executive Director and Council Members as key management per the definition of the financial reporting standard.

Close family members of key management personnel are considered to be those family members who may be expected to influence, or be influenced by key management individuals, in their dealings with the entity.

### **1.16 Comparative figures**

Where necessary, comparative figures have been adjusted to conform to changes in presentation in the current period.

### **1.17 Significant accounting judgments, estimates and assumptions**

The preparation of HSRC financial statements requires management to make judgments, estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of revenues, expenses, assets and liabilities, and the disclosure of contingent liabilities, at the reporting date. However, uncertainty about these assumptions and estimates could result in outcomes that require a material adjustment to the carrying amount of the asset or liability affected in future periods.

# Accounting policies continued

for the year ended 31 March 2009

## **Judgments**

In the process of applying the HSRC accounting policies, management has made the following judgments which have the most significant effect on the amounts recognised in the financial statements:

### *Operating Lease Commitments - HSRC as Lessor*

HSRC has entered into commercial property leases on buildings. HSRC has determined, based on evaluation of the terms and conditions of the arrangements, that it retains all the significant risks and rewards of ownership of these properties and so accounts for these contracts as operating leases.

## **Estimates and Assumptions**

The key assumptions concerning the future and other key sources of estimation uncertainty at the balance sheet date, that have significant risk of causing material adjustment to the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities within the next financial year are discussed below:

### *Revaluation of Property, Plant and Equipment*

HSRC measures its land and buildings at revalued amounts with changes in fair value being recognised in statement of changes in net assets. The entity engaged independent valuation specialists to determine fair value as at 31 March 2009. The key assumptions used to determine the fair value of the land and buildings are further explained in Note 8.

### *Fair value of Financial Instruments*

Where the fair value of financial assets and financial liabilities recorded in the statement of financial performance cannot be derived from active markets, they are determined using valuation techniques including the discounted cash flows model. The inputs to these models are taken from observable markets where possible, but where this is not feasible, a degree of judgment is required in establishing fair values. The judgments include considerations of inputs such as liquidity risk, credit risk and volatility. Changes in assumptions about these factors could affect the reported fair value of financial instruments.

### *Pension Benefits*

The cost of defined benefit pension plans and other post employment medical benefits as well as the present value of the pension obligation is determined using actuarial valuations. The actuarial valuation involves making assumptions about discount rates, expected rates of return of assets, future salary increases, mortality rates and future pension increases. All assumptions are reviewed at each reporting date.

Future salary increases and pension increases are based on expected future inflation rates. For details about the assumptions used are given in Note 13.

### 1.18 Standards issued but not yet effective

At the date of authorisation of these financial statements, the following accounting standards of Generally Recognised Accounting Principles (GRAP) were in issue, but not yet effective:

GRAP 4	-	The Effects of changes in Foreign Exchange Rates (not applicable)
GRAP 5	-	Borrowing Costs (not applicable)
GRAP 6	-	Consolidation and Separate Financial Statements (not applicable)
GRAP 7	-	Investments in Associate (not applicable)
GRAP 8	-	Interest in Joint Ventures (not applicable)
GRAP 9	-	Revenue from Exchange Transactions (not applicable)
GRAP 10	-	Financial Reporting in Hyperinflationary Economies (not applicable)
GRAP 11	-	Construction Contracts (not applicable)
GRAP 12	-	Inventories
GRAP 13	-	Leases
GRAP 14	-	Events after the reporting date
GRAP 16	-	Investment Property (not applicable)
GRAP 17	-	Property, Plant and Equipment
GRAP 18	-	Segment Reporting (not applicable)
GRAP 19	-	Provisions, Contingent Liabilities and Contingent Assets
GRAP 23	-	Revenue from Non-exchange Transactions (Taxes and Transfers) (not applicable)
GRAP 24	-	Presentation of Budget Information in Financial Statements
GRAP 100	-	Non-current Assets held for Sale and Discontinued Operations (not applicable)
GRAP 101	-	Agriculture (not applicable)
GRAP 102	-	Intangible Assets

Management believes that the adoption of these standards in future periods will have no material impact on the financial statements of the HSRC as most of them are not yet effective and those that are effective are to a greater extent similar in application and disclosure as the GAAP standards applied currently.

The above-mentioned statements will be implemented on 1 April 2009.

# Notes to the annual financial statements

for the year ended 31 March 2009

	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>
	<b>R'000</b>	<b>R'000</b>
<b>2 Research Revenue</b>		
Private sector	3,421	2,949
Public corporations	5,309	10,647
Public sector	8,346	31,088
International funding agencies	112,191	67,444
National funding agencies	3,812	1,525
Professional services	232	470
Innovation fund	595	-
Other Research Grants	19,482	-
	<b>153,388</b>	<b>114,123</b>
<b>2.1 Research Costs</b>		
Direct labour expense	(30,081)	(10,507)
Direct research cost	(47,714)	(33,254)
	<b>(77,795)</b>	<b>(43,761)</b>
<b>2.2 Parliamentary Grants</b>		
Parliamentary grants received	119,299	101,603
Deferred portion recognised	3,812	194
	123,111	101,797
Parliamentary grants ring fenced	21,035	25,367
less: Roll over portion	28,053	36,527
Deferred income	-	(11,160)
Special parliamentary grants	(7,018)	-
	<b>144,146</b>	<b>127,164</b>
<b>3 Other Revenue</b>		
Rental income	12,247	8,724
Publication sales	1,424	1,330
Interest Received	5,143	6,229
Parking and Cafeteria Income	8,752	3,822
Royalties received	195	203
	<b>27,761</b>	<b>20,308</b>

The HSRC's rental income is derived from rental of office space and parking by the Department of Social Development as well as from rental of conference facilities. Publication sales are earned from the selling of books in the publication department whilst interest is earned on investments of income received in advance.



	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>
	<b>R'000</b>	<b>R'000</b>
<b>4 Administrative Costs</b>		
General expenses	(6,062)	(13,450)
Skill Development Levy	(1,225)	(977)
Insurance	(1,119)	(1,542)
Sundry Operating Expenses	(3,098)	(4,004)
Hire of equipment	(3,280)	(1,940)
Consumable goods	(4,429)	(1,196)
Printing and photocopying	(4,352)	(4,018)
Postal, telecom and delivery fees	(7,167)	(6,202)
Work farmed out	(44,560)	(30,168)
Publicity functions and conferences	(5,316)	(5,014)
Auditor's remuneration	(3,007)	(1,496)
Audit fees - external	(2,376)	(875)
- internal	(631)	(621)
Net foreign exchange gains/(loss)	429	(77)
	<b>(83,186)</b>	<b>(70,084)</b>
<b>5 Staff Costs</b>		
Wages and Salaries	(122,047)	(118,728)
Defined contribution plan	(10,103)	(8,900)
Social contributions (employer's contributions)		
- official unions & associations	(72)	(62)
Post - retirement medical benefit	(397)	(442)
Direct labour expense(research costs)	(30,081)	(10,507)
	<b>(162,700)</b>	<b>(138,639)</b>
Direct labour expense(research costs)	30,081	10,507
<b>Total</b>	<b>(132,619)</b>	<b>(128,132)</b>

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

for the year ended 31 March 2009

## 6 Other Operating Costs

	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>
	<b>R'000</b>	<b>R'000</b>
Staff training & development	(4,224)	(1,167)
Legal fees	(364)	(298)
Maintenance, repairs & running costs	(17,870)	(14,665)
- Property & buildings	(9,295)	4
- Machinery & equipment	-	(4,910)
- Other maintenance repairs & running costs	(8,575)	(7,593)
Entertainment	(485)	(759)
Interest paid	(11)	-
Profit/Loss on disposal of assets	1	(45)
Bad debts written off	(3,721)	(1)
Operating Lease expenses	(75)	(300)
Non - research related expenses	(98)	(3,335)
	<b>(26,847)</b>	<b>(20,524)</b>

## 7 Depreciation & Amortization

Lifts	(142)	(158)
Telephone system	(54)	(72)
Fixtures	(151)	(3)
Building	(681)	(655)
Leasehold property	(986)	(379)
Motor vehicles	(237)	(196)
Office equipment	(386)	(1,011)
Computer & other equipment	(2,368)	(1,718)
<b>Total Depreciation</b>	<b>(5,005)</b>	<b>(4,192)</b>
Software (Amortisation)	(23)	(27)
Impairment of Intangible Assets	(355)	-
<b>Total Depreciation &amp; Amortisation</b>	<b>(5,383)</b>	<b>(4,219)</b>

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

as at 31 March 2009

## 8 Non Current Assets

### 8.1 Property, plant & Equipment

2009	Total	Land	Lifts	Telephone systems	Fixtures	Buildings	Leasehold Property	Art-Work	Motor Vehicles	Office Furniture	Computer and other equipment	Library books manuscripts
	R000	R000	R000	R000	R000	R000	R000	R000	R000	R000	R000	R000
<b>Opening net carrying amount</b>	<b>91,503</b>	<b>5,138</b>	<b>2,844</b>	<b>545</b>	<b>2,099</b>	<b>67,159</b>	<b>2,027</b>	<b>197</b>	<b>839</b>	<b>4,132</b>	<b>6,523</b>	-
Gross carrying amount	128,546	5,138	3,334	765	2,109	69,210	3,213	197	1,397	5,820	32,637	4,726
Accumulated depreciation	(37,043)	-	(490)	(220)	(10)	(2,051)	(1,186)	-	(558)	(1,688)	(26,114)	(4,726)
<b>Additions &amp; Revaluations</b>	<b>84,085</b>	<b>17,862</b>	-	-	<b>2,212</b>	<b>53,185</b>	<b>818</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>371</b>	<b>1,139</b>	<b>8,482</b>	-
Additions	15,098	-	-	-	2,212	2,060	818	16	371	1,139	8,482	-
Revaluation	68,987	17,862	-	-	-	51,125	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Disposals &amp; Adjustments</b>	<b>(110)</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(90)	(20)	-
-Carrying Amount	(119)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(90)	(29)	-
-Accumulated Depreciation	9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	9	-
Depreciation	(5,005)	-	(142)	(54)	(151)	(681)	(986)	-	(237)	(386)	(2,368)	-
<b>Closing net carrying amount</b>	<b>170,473</b>	<b>23,000</b>	<b>2,702</b>	<b>491</b>	<b>4,160</b>	<b>119,663</b>	<b>1,859</b>	<b>213</b>	<b>973</b>	<b>4,795</b>	<b>12,617</b>	-
Gross carrying amount	212,512	23,000	3,334	765	4,321	122,395	4,031	213	1,768	6,869	41,090	4,726
Accumulated depreciation	(42,039)	-	(632)	(274)	(161)	(2,732)	(2,172)	-	(795)	(2,074)	(28,473)	(4,726)

The carrying amount of assets under the historical cost would have been R 86,092 (2007 : R 91,029)

The land is registered as Stand 3242 Pretoria, measuring 7 655 m<sup>2</sup>, Registration division JR, Transvaal and is situated at 134 Pretorius Street, Pretoria. The building consists of a reception area, offices, parking area, conference centre and a cafeteria built on land as mentioned above. The valuation was conducted in March 2009 by an independent valuer, Mr L Nel of Dijalo Valuation Services Management Pty Ltd, using the income capitalisation method. Transactions involving the sale of other buildings were investigated as an alternative basis of valuation but were not used because of uncertain comparability. Under the income capitalisation method, the market value is determined from the ability of the property to produce a rental income, taking into account the expense to produce the rental income, capitalised at a market-related rate, taking into account the risk, age and condition of the property with existing buildings.

The rental income is based on the ability of the building to produce market-related income stream, based on market-related rentals, and it is determined on a five-year lease period with an escalation of 10% per year.

## 8.1 Property, plant &amp; Equipment (continued)

2008	Total	Land	Lifts	Telephone systems	Fixtures	Buildings	Leasehold property	Art-work	Motor vehicles	Office furniture	Computer and other equipment	Library books
	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000	R'000
<b>Opening net carrying amount</b>	<b>88,243</b>	<b>5,138</b>	<b>3,002</b>	<b>617</b>	<b>44</b>	<b>67,316</b>	<b>642</b>	<b>240</b>	<b>706</b>	<b>3,657</b>	<b>6,881</b>	-
- Gross carrying amount	124,005	5,138	3,334	765	51	68,712	1,449	240	1,263	7,219	31,108	4,726
- Accumulated depreciation	(35,762)	-	(332)	(148)	(7)	(1,396)	(807)	-	(557)	(3,562)	(24,227)	(4,726)
Additions	7,614	-	-	-	2,058	498	1,764	-	587	711	1,996	-
Disposal and adjustments	(162)	-	-	-	-	-	-	(43)	(258)	102	37	-
- Carrying amount	(3,215)	-	-	-	-	-	-	(43)	(453)	(2,110)	(609)	-
- Accumulated depreciation	3,053	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	195	2,212	646	-
Depreciation	(4,192)	-	(158)	(72)	(3)	(655)	(379)	-	(196)	(338)	(2,391)	-
<b>Closing net carrying amount</b>	<b>91,503</b>	<b>5,138</b>	<b>2,844</b>	<b>545</b>	<b>2,099</b>	<b>67,159</b>	<b>2,027</b>	<b>197</b>	<b>839</b>	<b>4,132</b>	<b>6,523</b>	-
- Gross carrying amount	128,404	5,138	3,334	765	2,109	69,210	3,213	197	1,397	5,820	32,637	4,726
- Accumulated depreciation	(36,901)	-	(490)	(220)	(10)	(2,051)	(1,186)	-	(558)	(1,688)	(26,114)	(4,726)

The land is registered as Stand 3242 Pretoria, measuring 7 655 m<sup>2</sup>, Registration division JR, Transvaal and is situated at 134 Pretorius Street, Pretoria. The building consists of a reception area, offices, parking area, conference centre and a cafeteria built on land as mentioned above. The valuation was conducted in March 2006 by an independent valuer, Mr Nico Fenwick of Fenwick Valuations, using the income capitalisation method. Transactions involving the sale of other buildings were investigated as an alternative basis of valuation but were not used because of uncertain comparability. Under the income capitalisation method, the market value is determined from the ability of the property to produce a rental income, taking into account the expense to produce the rental income, capitalised at a market-related rate, taking into account the risk, age and condition of the property with existing buildings.

The rental income is based on the ability of the building to produce market-related income stream, based on market-related rentals, and it is determined on a five-year lease period with an escalation of 10% per year.

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

as at 31 March 2009

	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>
	<b>R'000</b>	<b>R'000</b>
<b>8.2 Intangible Assets</b>		
<b>Intangible assets</b>		
<b>Software</b>		
Opening net carrying amount	417	444
- Gross carrying amount	544	544
- Accumulated amortisation	(127)	(100)
Additions	90	-
Amortisation	(23)	(27)
Impairment	(355)	-
Closing net carrying amount	129	417
- Gross carrying amount	634	544
- Accumulated amortisation & Impairment Loss	(505)	(127)

## 9 Inventories

Finished Goods	2,867	2,698
Publication books	2,790	2,698
Cafeteria	77	-
Work In Progress *	650	-
	<b>3,517</b>	<b>2,698</b>

The amount of write down of inventories recognised as an expense is R54,113 (2007: R0).

\*Work in progress consists of books in production

## 10 Trade and Other Receivables

Trade receivables	26,945	26,462
Other Receivables	5,715	14,822
Less: Impairment allowance	(3,867)	(4,557)
Trade receivables (Net)	28,793	36,727
VAT input	4,528	2,284
<b>Total</b>	<b>33,321</b>	<b>39,011</b>

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

as at 31 March 2009

	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>
	<b>R'000</b>	<b>R'000</b>
<b>11 Prepayments and Advances</b>		
Prepayments and Advances (Short Term)	1,853	2,827
Prepayments and Advances (Long Term)	58	-
Total	<b>1,911</b>	<b>2,827</b>

The long term portion of prepayments is in respect of computers warranties.

## **12 Cash and Cash Equivalents**

Cash at bank	5,212	14,576
Cash on hand	44	30
Short term Investments*	41,592	32,258
Total	<b>46,848</b>	<b>46,864</b>

\* Included in the short term investments are funds invested on behalf of donors

As required in sections 7(2) and 7(3) of the Public Finance Management Act, the National Treasury has approved the local bank where bank accounts are held.



	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>
	<b>R 000</b>	<b>R 000</b>
<b>13 Operating Lease Accruals and Commitments</b>		
Operating Lease Accruals	2,016	877
Movement for the year	(281)	(144)
Balance at Year end	<b>1,735</b>	<b>733</b>
Operating Lease Commitments	2,340	1,233
Movement for the year	(841)	(113)
Balance at Year end	<b>1,499</b>	<b>1,120</b>

### 13.1 Operating Lease arrangements as the Lessee:-

#### 13.1.1 Future minimum lease payments

	<b>Up to 12</b>		<b>1 year to 5</b>	
	<b>months</b>		<b>years</b>	
	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>
	<b>R000</b>	<b>R000</b>	<b>R000</b>	<b>R000</b>
Capetown Lease	2,309	2,067	3,826	6,135
Durban Lease	56	656	-	56
Umtata Lease	97	-	-	-
Motor Vehicle Lease	76	76	95	171
PE Lease	118	-	173	-
Sweetwaters Lease	67	61	234	300
Minolta Operating Lease	2,300	650	2,449	1,696
Innovent Operating Lease	1,765	1,028	1,638	1,728
	<b>6,788</b>	<b>4,538</b>	<b>8,415</b>	<b>10,086</b>

#### 13.1.2 Other Disclosures

##### Capetown Lease

The HSRC has leased office space from Old Mutual Assurance Company ( South Africa) Limited at Plein Street, Capetown, portions of the 10th, 14th and 16th floors and the entire 12th and 13th floors for a period of seven years, effective from 1 October 2006. The lease payment is R0.235 million per month (tax ex). The contract is expected to include an annual escalation of 9% in the rental.

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

as at 31 March 2009

## **Durban Lease**

The HSRC has also leased property in Durban from Alliance Properties. The lease agreement is for three years commencing on 1 May 2007 and expiring on 30 April 2009

The lease payment has an escalation clause of 10%. The lease payments per Month are R0.06 million per Month, tax excluded.

## **Umtata Lease**

The HSRC has also leased property from Diversified Properties 2 (Proprietary) Limited at the corner of York and Sutherland Street, Umtata. The lease is effective from 1 October 2008 and will expire on 30 September 2009. The lease payment is R0.014 million per Month.

## **Motor Vehicle Lease**

A lease agreement was signed with Standard Bank for lease of a vehicle, a Ford territory 4.0 AWD: the agreement was made effective from 1 July 2006 and expires on 13 June 2011. The lease payment is R0.007 million per month Including VAT.

## **PE Lease**

The HSRC is leasing a property from the Masig Family Trust, 44 Pickering Street, Newton Park, Port Elizabeth. The lease arrangement commenced on 30th of August 2008 and expires on the 30th day of July 2011 with an option to renew. The Lease payment is R0.001 per Month plus VAT.

## **Sweetwaters Lease**

A Lease agreement was signed between HSRC and MR.FA Bhalya in respect of a property referred to as Sweetwaters Bus Depot. The agreement came into operation on 1 March 2008 and is valid for 5 years. Rental payments were R0.005m per annum.

## **Minolta Operating Lease**

This is an agreement between HSRC and Minolta whereby Minolta leases copier machines for a Monthly rental. The lease payments and contract periods are varied.

## **Innovent Operating Lease**

This is an agreement between HSRC and Innovent whereby computer equipment is leased to HSRC. The lease periods are over 36 Months.

	<b>Up to 12 months 2009 R000</b>	<b>2008 R000</b>	<b>1 year to 5 years 2009 R000</b>	<b>2008 R000</b>
<b>13.2 Operating Lease arrangements as the Lessor:-</b>				
<b>13.2.1 Future minimum lease payments</b>				
National Department of Public Works Lease(Pretoria)	11,217	10,291	941	12,159

**13.2.2 Other Disclosures  
Department of Public Works Lease(Pretoria)**

The operating lease undertaken between the HSRC, as the lessor and the Department of Public Works, as the lessee, is conducted currently on a Monthly basis.

The lease contract is for a period of three years, effective from 1 May 2007. The lease payment is R0.864 million per month (tax excluded) with an annual escalation of 9%.

**14. Post-retirement medical benefits**

**14.1 Defined contribution plan**

As from 1 August 1997, post-retirement medical benefits were provided by membership of a Provision Fund administered by Liberty Group Limited.

The HSRC, for staff who did not belong to the medical aid scheme on 1 August 1997, contributes a monthly amount of R100 to the Fund on behalf of the members. The HSRC, for staff who joined the service of the HSRC after 1 April 1998, irrespective of whether they joined the medical aid scheme or not, contributes an amount of R100 per month to the Fund on behalf of the members.

**14.2 Voluntary contributions**

Currently the HSRC contributes voluntarily to the current continuation 86 members (2008: 88) an average amount of R494 (2008: 492) per month. There is one member in active employment who is entitled to this contribution after continuation as at 31 March 2008. If this contribution was guaranteed by the HSRC, the actuarial accrued liability would have been R3,683 million (2008: R3,759 million).

**14.3 Liabilities**

- The liability in respect of existing continuation members
- The liability in respect of members in active employment

For the members in active employment, the total liability is normally assumed to accrue evenly over the full potential period of active membership starting from the date of joining the HSRC up to the date of death, disability or retirement.

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

as at 31 March 2009

The result of these calculations is an estimate of the cost of these subsidies, based on assumptions regarding the future experience, and does not influence the actual cost of these subsidies. The actual cost will be determined by the actual experience in the future.

The previous assessment of the liability with regard to subsidies in respect of continuation member health care costs was done on 31 March 2008. The next assessment of the liabilities needs to be performed at the next financial year-end.

## 14.4 Particulars of the liabilities

In respect of the members in active employment, the employer subsidises 50% of the subscription (excluding contributions towards a medical savings account) to the applicable Discovery Health Comprehensive Plan at retirement. The subsidy amount will not increase after retirement. However, at death of the member or the member's spouse, whichever occurs first, the subsidy will reduce to the same percentage of the subscription for a single life as at the date of retirement. It has been assumed that this member will belong to the Discovery Health Comprehensive Essential Plan at retirement.

Continuation members of the HSRC do not receive a certain percentage subsidy of each member's medical aid premium after retirement, but receive a fixed amount based on an actuarial calculation when the member retires. This amount does not increase annually and the full subsidy is payable to the member's dependant on death of the member or to the member on death of the member's dependant, if any.

The membership details of the members in active employment and who are entitled to a subsidy after continuation as at reporting date:

## 14.5 Post-retirement medical benefits

	<b>Number of members 2009</b>	<b>2008</b>	<b>Average past service - years 2009</b>	<b>2008</b>
Male members	1	1	18.3	17.3
Female members	-	-	-	-
<b>Total/weighted average</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>18.3</b>	<b>17.3</b>

#### 14.5 Post-retirement medical benefits(continued)

The average age of these members was 39.6 years as at reporting date, compared to 38.5 years in respect of the active members as at 31 March 2008.

Details of the continuation members as at reporting date:

	Number of members		Average subsidy per month- R's		Average weighted age - years	
	2009	2008	2009	2008	2009	2008
Male members	41	41	588	588		73.2
Female members	45	47	408	411		76.0
<b>Total/weighted average</b>	<b>86</b>	<b>88</b>	<b>498</b>	<b>500</b>		<b>74.6</b>

#### 14.5 Valuation results

The results of the current valuation compared to the results as at 31 March 2008 are as follows:

	2009 R'000	2008 R'000
--	---------------	---------------

##### 14.5.1 Accrued liabilities

Liabilities in respect of:

Members in active employment	98	86
Current continuation members	3,585	3,673
<b>Total</b>	<b>3,683</b>	<b>3,759</b>

The calculation of liabilities is based on the subsidies that are to be paid in the future, and not based on the expected medical utilisation. Assuming that the current level of cross subsidisation between active and continuation members under the medical scheme will continue into the future, the calculated liability represents the employer liability in this regard.

Costs for the period 1 April 2008 to 31 March 2009:

	Interest cost R'000	Service cost R'000
Members in active employment	8	10
Current continuation members	342	-
<b>Total</b>	<b>350</b>	<b>10</b>

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

as at 31 March 2009

## 14.5 Valuation results (continued)

### 14.5.2 Accrued liabilities (continued)

The accrued liabilities of active members increased, by approximately 13,9% (2008: 5%) during the current period. This increase is as a net result of the following factors:

- The change in the average age and average accrued service of the active members qualifying for the subsidy led to additional liabilities of approximately 15,5% (2008: 14%).
- The liabilities have increased by approximately 3% (2008: 2%) due to higher than expected increases in the monthly subsidies.
- The net change in the assumption in respect of the discount rate and the medical inflation rate has decreased the liabilities by approximately 4,6% (2008: 11%).

The decrease observed in respect of the accrued liabilities of current continuation members of approximately 2,4% (2008: 15%) is the net result of the following factors:

- The change in the assumption in respect of the discount rate has decreased the liabilities by approximately 2,1% (2008: 8%).
- Two new members exited during the valuation period which led to a decrease in accrued liabilities of approximately 1,9%.
- The ageing of the continuation member population as well as the higher than expected decrease in the continuation members led to a reduction in accrued liabilities of approximately 2,6% (2008: 8%).

In order to show the sensitivity of the key assumption used in calculating the liabilities in respect of the active members, the effect was calculated on an increase or decrease of 100 basis points in the medical inflation assumption. The results are as follows:

<b>Assumption</b>	<b>Variation</b>	<b>Accrued liability in respect of active members R'000</b>	<b>% change in total accrued liability %</b>
Medical inflation +	100 basis points	118	19,9
Medical inflation -	100 basis points	82	(16,4)

The liability in respect of current continuation members remains R3 585 000 (2008: R3 673 000) under both scenarios, since it is not affected by medical inflation.

The effect of assumed future subsidy increases of 1%, 3% and 5% annually was calculated in order to show the sensitivity of this key assumption. The results are as follows:



<b>Accrued liabilities</b>	<b>1% increase R'000</b>	<b>3% increase R'000</b>	<b>5% increase R'000</b>
Liabilities in respect of:			
Members in active employment	107	130	163
Current continuation members	3,796	4,301	4,960
<b>Total</b>	<b>3,903</b>	<b>4,431</b>	<b>5,123</b>

## 14.6 Valuation results (continued)

### 14.6.1 Mortality

No mortality rates have been used in respect of the period before retirement. In respect of the period after retirement, the published PA90 (ultimate) mortality tables for males and females respectively were used.

### 14.6.2 Interest and inflation rate

The basis for the valuation should be based on current market conditions. The future investment return assumption, taking into account the average term of the liabilities, should be based on the yield of the R186 (2008: R186) government bond, as at 31 March 2009). The inflation rate is based on the difference between an appropriate index-linked bond, the R197 (2008: R197), and the R186 (2008: R186) government bond. Medical inflation is expected to exceed general inflation by 3% (2008: 3%) per annum and no provision for future increases in respect of continuation members are allowed for.

The following valuation assumptions were used compared to the assumptions as at 31 March 2008 which are consistent with the requirements of IAS19:

	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>
	<b>% per annum</b>	
Discount rate	8.9	9.3
Expected investment return	9.9	10.8
General inflation rate	5.9	6.8
Medical inflation rate	8.9	9.8
Subsidy increase rate, in respect of continuation members	-	-

### 14.6.3 Withdrawals

No withdrawal assumptions were used for the valuation.

### 14.6.4 Early retirements

An average age was assumed at retirement of 60 years in respect of all members and that the full subsidy will be paid irrespective of the number of years' service.

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

as at 31 March 2009

## 14.6 Valuation results (continued)

### 14.6.5 Number of Dependants

HSRC has assumed that at retirement the member will have one dependant, being a spouse. HSRC has used the actual number of dependants of the continuation members as provided. HSRC has also assumed that a wife will be 5 years younger than her husband.

### 14.6.6 Amount of Subsidy

For the continuation members, I used the monthly subsidies as at 31 March 2009 provided by HSRC.

For the active member, I have projected the monthly subscription (excluding contributions towards a medical savings account) as at 31 March 2009 using the subscription at 1 January 2009, together an assumption of 8,9% per annum for medical inflation between 1 January 2009 and 31 March 2009. The resultant values are as follows:

Discovery Health - Comprehensive Essential Plan

Member	R1 560
Member + 1 dependant	R3 035

## 15 Deferred Income

Government grants received, to be recognised in future accounting periods

	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>
	<b>R 000</b>	<b>R 000</b>
Balance at the beginning of the year	10,643	3,566
Portion of grant used to acquire depreciable assets	7,018	9,720
Grants recognised in income	(3,812)	(2,643)
Balance at the end of the year	<b>13,849</b>	<b>10,643</b>

## 16 Trade & Other Payables

Trade creditors	5,026	990
Accruals	22,192	30,843
Deposits	-	116
<b>Total</b>	<b>27,218</b>	<b>31,949</b>

The HSRC considers that the carrying amount of trade and other payables approximates their fair value.

	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>
	<b>R 000</b>	<b>R 000</b>
<b>17 Income received in advance</b>		
DST	1,279	5,204
RNE	-	2,484
WK Kellogg Foundation	-	1,317
World Bank	871	4,035
Other funding agencies	50,052	33,125
	<b>52,202</b>	<b>46,165</b>

Income received in advance relates to research work still to be completed in the new financial year.

## 18 Provisions

<b>Balance at the beginning of the year</b>	<b>10,110</b>
Utilised	(8,126)
Leave paid	(1,267)
Days taken	(6,859)
Provision for the year	8,664
<b>Balance at the end of the year</b>	<b>10,648</b>

The 'Provisions' balance includes leave pay and bonus provisions which relate to the HSRC's estimated liabilities arising as a result of services rendered by employees.

## 19 Net cash outflows from operating activities

<b>Surplus/(Loss) for the year</b>	<b>(535)</b>	<b>(5,125)</b>
Adjusted for:		
- Depreciation on property, plant and equipment	5,383	4,219
- (Profit)/Loss on disposal of property, plant and equipment	(1)	162
- Interest paid	11	-
- Increase in provisions	538	362
- Adjustment for deferred Income recognised in revenue	3,206	7,077
<b>Operating cash inflows before working capital changes</b>	<b>8,602</b>	<b>6,695</b>
<b>Working capital changes</b>	<b>6,470</b>	<b>18,391</b>
- (Increase)/Decrease in inventories	(819)	570
- Decrease/(Increase) in receivables	5,690	(5,564)
- (Decrease)/Increase in payables	(4,731)	12,345
- Decrease/(Increase) in Prepayments	916	(1,881)
- Increase in income received in advance	6,037	13,148
- Movement in Lease Accruals	(1,002)	(1,048)
- Movement in Lease Commitments	379	821
<b>Net cash inflows from operating activities</b>	<b>15,072</b>	<b>25,086</b>

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

for the year ended 31 March 2009

	2009 R'000	2008 R'000
<b>20. Capital expenditure</b>		
Approved by management, but not yet contracted	2,500	14,017
The capital expenditure is to be financed as follows:		
Internally-generated funds and grants approved for capital expenditure	<b>2,500</b>	<b>14,017</b>

## 21. Financial instruments

Financial assets

	Historical Cost		Fair Value	
	2009 R'000	2008 R'000	2009 R'000	2008 R'000
Cash and cash equivalents	46,848	46,864	46,848	46,864
Trade receivables	33,321	39,011	33,321	39,011
<b>Total financial assets</b>	<b>80,169</b>	<b>85,875</b>	<b>80,169</b>	<b>85,875</b>

Financial liabilities

Trade payables	27,218	31,949	27,218	31,949
<b>Total financial liabilities</b>	<b>27,218</b>	<b>31,949</b>	<b>27,218</b>	<b>31,949</b>

## 22. Financial risk management

The main risks arising from the HSRC's financial instruments are market risk, liquidity risk, credit risk and foreign exchange risk.

### **Credit risk**

The HSRC trades only with recognised, creditworthy third parties. It is the HSRC's policy that all customers who wish to trade on credit terms are subject to credit verification procedures. In addition, receivables balances are monitored on an ongoing basis with the result that the HSRC's exposure to bad debts is not significant. The maximum exposure is the carrying amounts as disclosed in Note 10. There are no significant concentration of credit risk within the HSRC.

With respect to credit risk arising from the other financial assets of the HSRC, which comprise cash and cash equivalents, the HSRC's exposure to credit risk arises from default of the counterparty, with a maximum exposure equal to the carrying amount of these instruments. The HSRC's cash and cash equivalents are placed with high credit quality financial institutions, therefore the credit risk with respect to cash and cash equivalents is limited.

### Exposure to credit risk

The maximum exposure to credit risk at the reporting date from financial assets was:

	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>
	<b>R000</b>	<b>R000</b>
Cash and cash equivalents	46,848	46,864
Trade and other receivables	33,321	39,011
<b>Total</b>	<b>80,169</b>	<b>85,875</b>

### Concentration of credit risk

The maximum exposure to credit risk for financial assets at the reporting date by credit rating category was as follows:

<b>2009</b>	<b>AAA and government</b>	<b>Unrated</b>
	<b>R'000</b>	<b>R'000</b>
Cash and cash equivalents	46,848	
Trade and other receivables		33,321
<b>2008</b>	<b>AAA and government</b>	<b>Unrated</b>
	<b>R'000</b>	<b>R'000</b>
Cash and cash equivalents	46,864	
Trade and other receivables		39,011

The following table provides information regarding the credit quality of assets which may expose the HSRC to credit risk:

<b>2009</b>	<b>Neither past due nor impaired</b>	<b>0 - 2 months</b>	<b>More than 2 months</b>	<b>Carrying value</b>
	<b>R'000</b>		<b>R'000</b>	
Cash and cash equivalents	46,848			46,864
Trade and other receivables	33,321	33,321	-	33,321
<b>2008</b>	<b>Neither past due nor impaired</b>	<b>0 - 2 months</b>	<b>More than 2 months</b>	<b>Carrying value</b>
	<b>R'000</b>			<b>R'000</b>
Cash and cash equivalents	46,864			46,864
Trade and other receivables	39,011	30,282	8,729	39,011

### Market risk

Market risk is the risk that changes in market prices, such as the interest rate will affect the value of the financial assets of the HSRC.

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

for the year ended 31 March 2009

## **Interest rate risk**

The HSRC's exposure to interest risk is managed by investing, on a short-term basis, in current accounts.

## **Liquidity risk**

Liquidity risk is the risk that the HSRC would not have sufficient funds available to cover future commitments. The HSRC regards this risk to be low; taking into consideration the HSRC's current funding structures and availability of cash resources.

The following table reflects the HSRC's exposure to liquidity risk from financial liabilities:

<b>2009</b>	<b>Carrying amount</b>	<b>Total cash flow</b>	<b>Contractual cash flow within 1 year</b>
Other financial liabilities	27,218	27,218	27,218

<b>2008</b>	<b>Carrying amount</b>	<b>Total cash flow</b>	<b>Contractual cash flow within 1 year</b>
Other financial liabilities	31,949	31,949	31,949

## **Net gains and losses on financial instruments**

The following table presents the total net gains or losses for each category of financial assets and financial liabilities:

<b>2009</b>	<b>Designated at fair value</b>	<b>Total</b>
	<b>R'000</b>	<b>R'000</b>
Interest income	5,143	5,143
Foreign exchange losses	-	-
<b>Total net gains recognised in the statement of financial performance</b>	<b>5,143</b>	<b>5,143</b>

<b>2008</b>	<b>Designated at fair value</b>	<b>Total</b>
	<b>R'000</b>	<b>R'000</b>
Interest income	6,868	6,868
Foreign exchange gains	-77	-77
<b>Total net gains recognised in the statement of financial performance</b>	<b>6,791</b>	<b>6,791</b>



### **Foreign exchange risk management**

The Council does not hedge foreign exchange transactions due to the contractual arrangement which effectively designates transactions in ZAR. Most invoices are processed in ZAR to avoid these differences.

### **Sensitivity analysis**

The HSRC is exposed to interest rate changes in respect of returns on its investments with financial institutions and interest payable on finance leases contracted with outside parties.

## **23. Related parties**

The HSRC is a schedule 3A National Public Entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act (Act 1 of 1999 as amended) and therefore falls within the national sphere of government. As a consequence the HSRC has a significant number of related parties being entities that fall within the national sphere of government.

Unless specifically disclosed, these transactions are concluded on an arm's length basis. There are no restrictions in the HSRC's capacity to transact with any entity.

### **23.1 Transactions with related entities**

**The following is a summary of transactions with related parties during the year and balances due at year-end:**

	Services rendered		Services received		Amounts due from	
	2009 R'000	2008 R'000	2009 R'000	2008 R'000	2009 R'000	2008 R'000
ARC Roodeplaat	-	6	-	-	-	6
Center for Education policy development *	3,637	-	-	-	-	-
The Development Bank of Southern Africa Limited	1,290	-	19	-	-	-
Film and Publications Board	-	250	-	-	-	-
Independent Development Trust	1	246	-	-	-	-
Industrial Development Corp. of South Africa Limited	-	473	-	-	-	-
Medical Research Council	80	68	102	-	-	-
SA Medical Research	-	-	6	-	-	-
MINTEK	-	-	-	-	-	-
National Development Agency	-	753	-	-	-	-
National Heritage Council	-	35	-	-	-	-
National Advisory Council on Innovation	-	572	-	-	-	-
National Electronic Media Inst.	-	4	-	-	-	-
SASSETA	-	2,000	-	-	-	-
Stats SA	-	268	-	-	-	-

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

for the year ended 31 March 2009

	Services rendered		Services received		Amounts due from	
	2009 R'000	2008 R'000	2009 R'000	2008 R'000	2009 R'000	2008 R'000
South African Revenue Services Agency (SITA)	1,325	-	-	-	-	-
Agency of SA SAQA	-	-	1,504	-	-	-
SAQA	-	2	-	-	-	-
SA Post Office	67	-	78	-	-	-
Telkom SA	-	-	12	-	-	-
Umgeni Water Board	-	-	228	-	-	-
Commission for gender equity Consultative Council	4	-	-	-	-	-
Department of Trade and Industry	4	-	-	-	-	-
The Independent Electoral Commission	1,998	-	-	-	-	-
The Water Research Commission	4,702	-	-	-	-	-
Bubesi Registrars (Pty) Ltd **	-	68	-	-	-	-
	-	-	4,470	-	-	-
<b>Total</b>	<b>13,108</b>	<b>4,949</b>	<b>6,419</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>6</b>

\* A board member of the HSRC is a CEO of Centre for Education Policy Development

\*\* An employee of Bubesi was seconded to the HSRC in the position of Acting Finance Director to facilitate skills transfer

## 23.2 Related parties (continued)

National government business enterprises

CSIR - African Advanced Institute for information	-	-	-	-	-	-
CSIR - BioSciences	-	-	-	40	-	-
CSIR - Built Environment Unit	491	1,824	-	-	-	574
CSIR - Central Library Service	-	11	-	-	-	-
CSIR - Defence, Peace, Safety and Security	-	109	-	-	-	90
CSIR - Environmentech Pretoria	-	89	-	-	-	134
CSIR - Meraka	-	120	-	-	-	-
CSIR - Natural Resources and the Environment	-	-	-	156	-	-
<b>Total</b>	<b>491</b>	<b>2,153</b>		<b>196</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>798</b>
Provincial public entities	-	-	-	-	-	-
Eastern Cape Socio-Economic Consultative Council (ECSECC)	35	-	-	-	-	-
	-	315	-	-	-	158
<b>Total</b>	<b>35</b>	<b>315</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>158</b>
<b>Grand total</b>	<b>13,634</b>	<b>7,417</b>	<b>6,419</b>	<b>196</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>962</b>

**23.3 Fees paid to council members and Executive management salaries:-**

Council Members	Council Fees	Projects	2009		Total	2008 Total
			Executive Management Salaries			
	R	R	R	R	R	R
Gerwel G.J.	6,022	-	-	6,022		11,204
Morrow W.E.	2,240	-	-	2,240		28,043
Motala M.E.	12,116	-	-	12,116		36,447
Ntombela-Nzimande P.	4,480	-	-	4,480		14,108
Pityana S.M.	10,502	-	-	10,502		-
Sisulu M.V.	4,480	-	-	4,480		12,262
Gasa N	2,240	-	-	2,240		2,083
Gobodo-Madikizela P	-	-	-	-		-
Webster EC	4,480	-	-	4,480		8,354
Shisana O (ex officio as CEO)	-	-	1,836,753	1,836,753		1,677,400
Executive Directors	-	-	10,345,312	10,345,312		7,928,563
	<b>46,560</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>12,182,065</b>	<b>12,228,625</b>		<b>9,718,464</b>
<b>2008 Total</b>	<b>134,691</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>9,605,963</b>	<b>9,740,654</b>		<b>9,740,654</b>

**23.4 The following is a list of Executive Directors for the years ended 31 March 2008 and 2009**

**2009**

Dr M Altman  
 Mr Martin Fox (Resigned)  
 Dr KM Kondlo  
 Prof. D Labadarios  
 Dr A Kanjee  
 Dr T Masilela  
 Dr U Pillay  
 Prof. LM Richter  
 Prof. L Simbayi (Acting)  
 Dr V Reddy  
 Prof MJ Kahn (Retired)

**2008**

Dr M Altman  
 Mr MJ de Klerk (Resigned)  
 Prof. AM Habib (until 31/08/2007)  
 Prof. MJ Kahn  
 Dr A Kanjee  
 Dr T Masilela  
 Dr U Pillay  
 Prof. LM Richter  
 Dr L Rispel (Resigned)  
 Dr AH Kraak (01/04/07 to 30/04/07)  
 Prof. S Makoni (01/07/07 to 30/11/07)  
 Mr G Makakane (01/07/07 to 20/03/08)  
 Dr KM Kondlo  
 Dr V Reddy

**24. Income tax exemption**

The HSRC is currently exempt from Income Tax in terms of section 10(1)(a) of "receipts and accruals of the government or any provincial administration" of the Income Tax Act, 1962.

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

for the year ended 31 March 2009

## 25. Critical management assumptions and judgments

### *Accumulated surpluses*

As at 31st May 2009, the HSRC had not received a response from National Treasury with respect to their request to retain the accumulated surplus to cover future expenditure. The HSRC assumes that approval will be granted to retain its surplus funds and has therefore not made any provision for the repayment of surplus funds of (2008: R97 905) or any portion thereof to Treasury.

### *Ring-fenced Grants received*

The HSRC has not provided for the repayment of the unspent portion of ring-fenced grants received during the year in respect of capital investment and expenditure. The HSRC has already committed the majority of the funds on capital investments.

### *Provision for doubtful debts*

The HSRC has provided for doubtful debts and is of the opinion that the provision raised is reasonable and sufficient to cover any potential irrecoverable amounts in respect of services rendered.

## 26. Prior Period Errors - Adjustments

The following prior period errors have been identified and the specific effect on financial statements. These errors have been corrected and comparatives restated accordingly. Effect on 2008 financial statements are as follows:

These prior period errors have no tax effect as the HSRC is exempt in terms of the Income Tax Act.

### 26.1 Understated Cost of Sales and Expenses

*During the financial period ended 31 March 2009, the entity identified prior year expenses which had not been accounted for in the correct accounting, being year ended 31 March 2008.*

The effect of these adjustments being:

Increase in Administration Expenses	6314
Increase in Operating Expenses	906
Increase in Cost of Sales	2,798
Increase in Trade & Other Payables	10,018
Decrease in Surplus	(10,018)

### 26.2 Understated Prepayments

*Prepaid amounts for expenses relating to the financial period ending 31 March 2009 were recognised as an expense in the period ended 31 March 2008.*

Decrease in Operating Costs	(141)
Decrease in Administration Expenses	(866)
Increase in Prepayments	1,007
Increase in Surplus	1,007

**26.3 Incorrect valuation of inventory**

*An incorrect inventory valuation basis was applied resulting in an overstatement of inventory balance reported in the year ended 31 March 2008.*

Increase In Administration Expenses	933
Increase In Inventory	933
Decrease in Surplus	(933)

**26.4 Understated Revenue**

*Revenue for publication sales was not accrued at 31 March 2008, resulting in understatement of revenue for the period then ended.*

Increase in debtors	74
Increase in Publication Income	74
Increase in Surplus	74

**26.5 Lease Expenses**

*The entity identified that lease actualisation computations performed for the year ended 31 March 2008 were either incorrect or incomplete. Correction of these anomalies resulted in the following adjustment:*

Increase in Lease Expenses	300
Increase in Lease equalisation liability	300
Decrease in Surplus	(300)

**26.6 Intangible Assets**

*There was recognition of an intangible asset, in the period ended 31 March 2006, when the item procured did not meet recognition criteria, as defined.*

Decrease in Accumulated Depreciation	(82)
Decrease in Intangible Assets	(1,249)
Decrease in Retained Earnings	(1,167)

**26.7 Depreciation and Amortisation Expense**

*The incorrect recognition noted under note 29.6, resulted in an overstatement of Depreciation and Amortisation expense in the financial year ended 31 March 2008.*

Decrease in Accumulated Depreciation & Amortisation	(55)
Decrease in Amortisation & Depreciation Expense	(55)
Increase in Surplus	55

**26.8 Intangible Asset expensed**

*An intangible procured in the financial period ended 31 March 2006 was expensed when it met the intangible asset recognition criteria. The asset and respective accumulated depreciation was reinstated.*

Increase in Intangible Assets	294
Increase in accumulated depreciation	50
Increase in Surplus	244

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

for the year ended 31 March 2009

## 26.9 Depreciation and Amortisation Expense

*The depreciation and amortisation expense relating to intangible asset, note 29.8 , for the financial period ended 31 March 2008 was adjusted as follows:*

Increase in Depreciation & Amortisation Expense	15
Increase in Accumulated depreciation	15
Decrease in Surplus	(15)

## 26.10 Property, Plant & Equipment

*During the financial year ended 31 March 2008, computer equipment procured was expensed as consumable goods. Computer equipment was reinstated to property, plant and equipment.*

Increase in Computer Equipment	83
Increase in Office Furniture	175
Decrease in Consumable Expenses	258

## 26.11 Depreciation and Amortisation Expense

*The depreciation and amortisation expense relating to Computer Equipment, note 29.10 , for the financial period ended 31 March 2008 was adjusted as follows:*

Increase in Depreciation Expense	22
Increase in Accumulated Depreciation	22

## 26.12 Lease Equalisation Liability Adjustment

*The entity identified that lease actualisation computations performed for the year ended 31 March 2007 were either incorrect or incomplete. Correction of these anomalies resulted in the following adjustment:*

Increase in Lease Expenses	361
Increase in Lease Equalisation account	361

## 26.13 Bad debts provision

*The entity identified bad debts relating to year ended 31 March 2007, which were incorrectly written off against income in the year ended 31 March 2008. Correct entries were processed as follows:*

31 March 2008 adjustment	
Increase in Trade & Other Receivables	495
Increase in Revenue	495
31 March 2007 adjustment	
Decrease in bad debts provision	(495)
Decrease in accounts receivables	(495)

## 26.14 Bad debts provision

*The entity identified bad debts relating to year ended 31 March 2008, which were incorrectly written off against income in the year ended 31 March 2009. Correct entries were processed as follows:*

31 March 2009 adjustment	
Increase in Trade & Other Receivables	47
Increase in Revenue	47



31 March 2008 adjustment	
Decrease in bad debts provision	(47)
Decrease in accounts receivables	(47)

**26.15 Retention of surplus for skills development**

*Part of the reported Surplus funds for the year ended 31 March 2008 was used to fund Internship training program in the subsequent financial year ended 31 March 2009. The funding was recognised as income in the year ended 31 March 2008.*

Decrease in Revenue	(3,300)
Increase in Liability	3,300
Decrease in Surplus	(3,300)

Prior Period Errors - Reclassifications

**26.16 Income Received in Advance (Innovent)**

*Ring fenced funds, received in advance, relating to financial year ended 31 March 2008 were incorrectly classified as deferred income. These funds were earmarked for rental of computer equipment from Innovent.*

Decrease In Deferred Income	(3,026)
Increase in Income Received Advance	3,026

**26.17 Computer Equipment**

*Computer equipment was initially recognised as an intangible asset at date of purchase. Reallocation was done to computer equipment and depreciation recomputed and restated at rates applicable to the category.*

Increase in computer equipment (Cost)	142
Decrease in Intangible Assets (Cost)	(142)
Increase in Accumulated Depreciation	142
Decrease in Retained Earnings	(109)
Increase in Accumulated Depreciation	109

**26.18 Computer Equipment and Office Furniture**

*Assets which had been incorrectly written in the financial year ended 31 March 2007 and are still in use were reinstated into the asset register.*

Increase in Office Furniture	160
Increase in Computer Equipment	269
Increase in accumulated depreciation-Office Furniture	61
Increase in accumulated depreciation-Computer Equipment	69
Increase in Retained earnings	299

# Notes to the annual financial statements continued

for the year ended 31 March 2009

**26.19** *The reinstatement of the assets noted in 26.18 above resulted in additional depreciation expense in the financial year ended 31 March 2008*

Increase in Depreciation and Amortisation Expense - Office Furniture	10
Increase in Depreciation and Amortisation Expense - Computer Equipment	51
Increase in Accumulated Depreciation - Office Furniture	10
Increase in Accumulated Depreciation - Computer Equipment	51

**26.20 Reclassification of debit balances**

*Debit balances were disclosed under Trade and Other payables in the financial period ended 31 March 2008. These were corrected as follows:*

Increase in Trade and Other Receivables	2,313
Increase in Trade and Other Payables	2313

**26.21 Reclassification of credit balances**

*Credit balances were disclosed under Trade and Other Receivables in the financial period ended 31 March 2008.*

*These were corrected as follows:*

Increase in Trade and Other Receivables	131
Increase in Trade and Other Payables	131

<b>31 March 2009</b>	<b>31 March 2008</b>
<b>R'000</b>	<b>R'000</b>

**27 Fruitless & Wasteful Expenditure and Irregular Expenditure**

**Fruitless & Wasteful Expenditure**

**Reconciliation of fruitless and wasteful expenditure**

Opening balance	-	-
Fruitless and wasteful expenditure – Interest Paid	12	-
Fruitless and wasteful expenditure - employee dismissal	104	-
	<b>116</b>	<b>-</b>

**Analysis of Current Fruitless and wasteful expenditure**

**Incident**

**Disciplinary steps taken/criminal proceedings**

Other Fruitless and Wasteful expenditure consists of Interest paid to Department of Labour and Telkom for late payments.	In progress
--	-------------

**Incident****Disciplinary steps taken/criminal proceedings**

An employee was dismissed without following proper procedures. The matter was referred to CCMA and ruled in his favour. An out of court settlement was agreed and was paid during the period under review.

In progress

**31 March 2009**    **31 March 2008**  
**R'000**                      **R'000**

**Irregular Expenditure****Reconciliation of irregular expenditure**

Opening balance

Irregular expenditure – current year (Suppliers not on HSRC Data Base)

Irregular expenditure - employee suspended

Irregular expenditure condoned

Transfer to receivables for recovery

Irregular expenditure awaiting condonement

	5,838	45,856
	248	
	<b>6,086</b>	<b>45,856</b>

**Analysis of Current irregular expenditure****Incident****Disciplinary steps taken/criminal proceedings**

Irregular expenditure relates to approved expenditure to suppliers which was not on HSRC's Supplier data base and for which no contract or Service Level Agreement was in place. This was due to late implementation of the Supply Chain Management which was only introduced in September 2007.

In progress

**Incident****Disciplinary steps taken/criminal proceedings**

An employee was suspended, with full benefits for 10 months, without adhering to code of conduct stipulations.

Employee reinstated. Disciplinary action in progress

# The Human Sciences Research Council report of the Audit Committee

Report of the Audit Committee required by Treasury Regulations 27.1.7 and 27.1.10 (b) and (c) issued in terms of the Public Finance Management Act 1 of 1999, as amended by Act 29 of 1999 for the year ended as at 31 March 2009

We are pleased to present our report for the financial year ended 31 March 2009.

## Audit Committee members and attendance

The Audit Committee of the HSRC (the Committee') consists of the members listed hereunder and is required to meet at least three times per annum as per its approved terms of reference. During the year under review, three meetings were held.

<b>Name of member</b>	<b>Number of meetings attended</b>
Mr SM Pityana (Chair)	2
Mr A Mashifane	3
Mr RJ Page-Shipp	3
Ms RN Xaba	3
Professor WE Morrow (until 11 February 09)	-
Dr O Shisana (CEO)	3

The Committee's meetings have regularly included the internal auditors and representatives from the Auditor-General's Office.

## Audit Committee responsibility

The Committee confirms that it has adopted appropriate formal terms of reference as its charter. The Committee also confirms that it has regulated its affairs in compliance with this charter and has discharged all its responsibilities as contained therein.

Accordingly, the Committee operates in accordance with the terms of the said charter and is satisfied that it has discharged its responsibilities in compliance therewith.

The Committee further confirms that it has complied with its responsibilities arising from section **51(1)(a) of the Public Finance Management Act** (the PFMA') and **Treasury Regulation 27.1.**

## The effectiveness of internal control

The system of control is designed to provide cost-effective assurance that assets are safeguarded and that liabilities and working capital are efficiently managed. In line with the PFMA and the King II

Report on Corporate Governance requirements, Internal Audit is required to provide the Committee and management with assurance that the internal controls are appropriate and effective. This is achieved by means of a risk management process, as well as the identification of corrective actions and suggested enhancements to the controls and processes. The HSRC engages an outsourced service provider to deliver the required specialized internal audit services.

The Audit Committee has noted concerns raised in the Auditor General's report on financial statements specifically regarding deficiencies in the design and implementation of internal controls in respect of financial and risk management; and the lack of an approved internal audit plan and the fact that the internal audit function did not substantially fulfill its responsibilities during the year. During the year under review, the HSRC secured the services of a new outsourced internal auditor after having followed due procurement process. It was agreed at the Committee meeting of 24 July 2008 that the new service provider would initially function according to an interim plan, with the development of a three-year rolling strategic internal audit plan and an annual plan based on a detailed risk assessment as first deliverables for this period. By 31 March this process had not been concluded. This resulted in the HSRC not having an approved internal audit plan for the full financial year and also not meeting requirements of the Treasury Regulation 27.2. Subsequent to year-end, after due consideration by management and with the concurrence of the Committee, a decision was taken to terminate the outsourced internal audit service contract by mutual agreement.

The Committee is committed to ensuring compliance with laws and regulations and has obtained assurance that there is no significant breakdown in the functioning of internal controls of the HSRC's control environment from a review of various reports of the risk compliance function and the Auditor General (including their management letter). The Committee has also noted recommendations of the Auditor General with regard to ways to enhancing good practices in financial management and internal controls.

### **The quality of in-year management and monthly/quarterly reports submitted in terms of the PFMA and the Division of Revenue Act**

The Audit Committee is satisfied with the content and quality of quarterly reports prepared and issued by the Accounting Authority of the HSRC during the year under review.

### **Evaluation of Financial Statements**

The Audit Committee has:

- reviewed and discussed the audited Annual Financial Statements to be included in the annual report, with the Auditor-General and the Accounting Authority;
- reviewed the Auditor-General's management letter and management's response thereto;
- reviewed the appropriateness of the accounting policies and practices; and
- reviewed all adjustments resulting from the audit.

The Audit Committee having considered the financial position of the entity, the report of the Board, and the audit report of the Auditor General concurs with the adoption of the going concern premise in the preparation of the financial statements is appropriate.

The Audit Committee concurs and accepts the Auditor-General's conclusions on the Annual Financial Statements, and is of the opinion that the audited Annual Financial Statements be accepted and read together with the report of the Auditor-General.

# Abbreviations and Acronyms

AERC	African Economic Research Consortium	ESSD	Education, Science and Skills Development
AICAD	African Institute for Capacity Development	EU	European Union
AMA	African Migration Alliance	EUFP7	European Union Seventh Framework Programme
ANSA	Affiliated Network for Social Accountability	FIVIMS	Food Insecurity and Vulnerability Information and Mapping
ASAP	Africa's Social Accountability Profile	GCIS	Government Communication and Information System
ASGISA	Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa	GD	Gender and Development
AVE	advertising value equivalent	GIS	Geographical Information System
BEE	Black Economic Empowerment	HAPS	HIV and Alcohol Prevention in Schools
BMS	Building Management System	HR	human resource
CARLI	Classroom Assessment Resources for Learning Improvement	HSRC	Human Sciences Research Council
CASP	Centre on Africa's Social Progress	IBSA	India-Brazil-South Africa
CASS	Chinese Academy of Social Science	IDRC	International Development Research Centre
CD	Capacity Development	IFAS	French Institute of South Africa
CEO	chief executive officer	ILO	International Labour Organization
CeSTII	Centre for Science, Technology and Innovation Indicators	IPDM	Integrated Planning, Development and Modelling project
CFO	chief financial officer	IT	information technology
CHAMP	Collaborative HIV/AIDS and Adolescent Mental Health Project	JLICA	Joint Learning Initiative on Children and HIV/AIDS
COHORTS	Collaboration on Health Outcome Research in Transitional Societies	KPI	key performance indicators
COO	chief operating officer	KS	Knowledge Systems
CRC	Citizen Report Card	LNP	Literacy and Numeracy Project
CRO	chief risk officer	M&E	monitoring and evaluation
CSIR	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research	MAPPP SETA	Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority
CUBES	Centre for the Urban Built Environment Study (Wits University)	MDG	Millennium Development Goal
CUTS	Consumer Unity and Trust Society	MDP	Municipal Development Partnership
CYFSD	Child, Youth, Family and Social Development	MHAPP	Mental Health and Poverty Project
CODESRIA	Council for the Development of Social Science Research in Africa	MOST	Management of Social Transformation
D&G	Democracy and Governance	MoU	Memorandum of Understanding
DBSA	Development Bank of Southern Africa	MSM	men having sex with men
DFID	Department for International Development	MTEF	medium-term expenditure framework
DoE	Department of Education	Nepad	New Partnership for Africa's Development
DoH	Department of Health	NALA	National Assessment of Learner Achievement
DSD	Department of Social Development	NEQI	National Education Quality Initiative
DPLG	Department of Provincial and Local Government	NGO	non-governmental organisation
DSM	Demand Side Management	NIAAA	National Institute of Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism
DST	Department of Science and Technology	NIF	National Indicator Framework
DWAF	Department of Water Affairs and Forestry	NIH	National Institutes of Health
ED	executive director	NIMH	National Institute of Mental Health
ECD	Early Childhood Development	NIS	national innovation systems
EGDI	Employment, Growth and Development Initiative	NRF	National Research Foundation
EPN	Employment Policy Network	NSP	National Strategic Plan
ESRC	Economic and Social Research Council	OECD	Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development



OVC	orphans and vulnerable children	SANPAD	South Africa-Netherlands Research Programme on Alternatives in Development
PACE	Policy Analysis and Capacity Enhancement	SARS	South African Revenue Service
PASA	Publishers' Association of South Africa	SASAS	South African Social Attitudes Survey
PAU	Policy Analysis Unit	S&T	Science & Technology
PAITECS	Public purpose, Africa focus, Implementation networking, Transformation, Excellence, Capacity development, Sustainability	SEKN	Social Exclusion Knowledge Network
PEPFAR	President's Emergency Plan for AIDS Relief	SES	socio-economic survey
PFMA	Public Finance Management Act	SETA	Sector Education and Training Authority
PLAAS	The Institute for Poverty, Land and Agrarian Studies	SET	science, engineering and technology
PLWHA	people living with HIV/AIDS	SETI	Science, Engineering and Technology Institution
PMTCT	prevention of mother-to-child transmission	SMME	small, medium and micro enterprises
PRAESA	Project for the Study of Alternative Education in South Africa	SOE	state-owned enterprise
PSA	Public Service Association	SOFIs	State of the Future Indices
R&D	Research & Development	TCAM	traditional complementary and alternative medicines
RAPCAN	Resources Aimed at the Prevention of Child Abuse and Neglect	TECL	Towards the Elimination of Child Labour in South Africa
RBM	Research Business Meetings	TIA	Technology Innovation Agency
RCO	Risk and Compliance Officer	UNAIDS	The Joint United Nations Programme on HIV/AIDS
REC	Research Ethics Committee	UNESCO	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation
RMS	Research Management System	UNFPA	United Nations Population Fund
RNE	Royal Netherlands Embassy	UNICEF	United Nations Children's Fund
RP	research programme	URED	Urban, Rural and Economic Development
SADC	Southern African Development Community	WHO	World Health Organization
SAGE	Study on Global Ageing and Adult Health	VCT	voluntary counselling and testing
SAHA	Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health	YPI	Youth Policy Initiative
SAHARA	Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS Research Alliance		
SANAC	South African National AIDS Council		

# Notes:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---